FREE

pull-out

grammar

reference

pocket

auide

Essential Grammar in Use

CAMBRIDGE

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English

with answers

THIRD EDITION

Raymond Murphy



Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English

with answers

THIRD EDITION

Raymond Murphy



CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town, Singapore, São Paulo, Delhi, Tokyo, Mexico City

Cambridge University Press

The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

www.cambridge.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9780521675802

© Cambridge University Press 2007

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1990 Second edition 1997 Third edition 2007 11th printing 2011

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-0-521-67580-2 Edition with answers

ISBN 978-0-521-67581-9 Edition without answers

ISBN 978-0-521-67543-7 Edition with answers and CD-ROM

ISBN 978-0-521-67544-4 CD-ROM for Windows (single user)

ISBN 978-0-521-67545-1 Network CD-ROM (30 users)

ISBN 978-3-12-539538-1 Klett edition with CD-ROM

ISBN 978-3-12-539536-7 Klett Edition

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Thanks vii To the student viii To the teacher x Present 1 am/is/are 2 am/is/are (questions) 3 I am doing (present continuous) 4 are you doing? (present continuous questions) 5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple) 6 I don't ... (present simple negative) 7 Do you ...? (present simple questions) 8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple) 9 I have ... and I've got ... Past 10 was/were 11 worked/got/went etc. (past simple) 12 I didn't ... Did you ...? (past simple negative and questions) 13 I was doing (past continuous) 14 I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple) Present perfect 15 I have done (present perfect 1) I've already ... I haven't ... yet (present perfect 2) 16 I've just ... 17 Have you ever ... ? (present perfect 3) 18 How long have you ...? (present perfect 4) 19 for since ago 20 I have done (present perfect) and I did (past) Passive 21 is done was done (passive 1) 22 is being done has been done (passive 2) Verb forms 23 be/have/do in present and past tenses 24 Regular and irregular verbs Future 25 What are you doing tomorrow? 26 I'm going to ... 27 will/shall 1 28 will/shall 2 Modals, imperative etc. 29 might 30 can and could

31 must mustn't don't need to

- 32 should
- 33 I have to ...
- 34 Would you like ... ? I'd like ...
- 35 Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!
 - 36 I used to ...

There and it

- 37 there is there are
- 38 there was/were there has/have been there will be
- 39 It ...

Auxiliary verbs

- 40 I am, I don't etc.
- 41 Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.
- 42 too/either so am I / neither do I etc.
- 43 isn't, haven't, don't etc. (negatives)

Questions

- 44 is it ... ? have you ... ? do they ... ? etc. (questions 1)
- 45 Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)
- 46 Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)
- 47 What ... ? Which ... ? (questions 4)
- 48 How long does it take ...?
- 49 Do you know where ...? I don't know what ... etc.

Reported speech

50 She said that ... He told me that ...

-ing and to ...

- 51 work/working go/going do/doing
- 52 to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)
- 53 I want you to ... I told you to ...
- 54 I went to the shop to ...

Go, get, do, make and have

- 55 go to ... go on ... go for ... go -ing
- 56 get
- 57 do and make
- 58 have

Pronouns and possessives

- 59 I/me he/him they/them etc.
- 60 my/his/their etc.
- 61 Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.
- 62 I/me/my/mine
- 63 myself/yourself/themselves etc.
- 64 -'s (Kate's camera / my brother's car etc.)

A and the

- 65 a/an ...
- 66 train(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)
- 67 a bottle / some water (countable/uncountable 1)
- 68 a cake / some cake / some cakes (countable/uncountable 2)
- 69 a/an and the
- 70 the ...
- 71 go to work go home go to the cinema
- 72 I like music I hate exams
- 73 the ... (names of places)

Determiners and pronouns

- 74 this/that/these/those
- 75 one/ones
- 76 some and any
- 77 not + any no none
- 78 not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing
- 79 somebody/anything/nowhere etc.
- 80 every and all
- 81 all most some any no/none
- 82 both either neither
- 83 a lot much many
- 84 (a) little (a) few

Adjectives and adverbs

- 85 old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)
- 86 quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)
- 87 old/older expensive / more expensive
- 88 older than ... more expensive than ...
- 89 not as ... as
- 90 the oldest the most expensive
- 91 enough
- 92 too

Word order

- 93 He speaks English very well. (word order 1)
- 94 always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)
- 95 still yet already
- 96 Give me that book! Give it to me!

Conjunctions and clauses

- 97 and but or so because
- 98 When ...
- 99 If we go ... If you see ... etc.
- 100 If I had ... If we went ... etc.
- 101 a person who ... a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1)
- 102 the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)

```
Prepositions
```

on Monday in April 103 at 8 o'clock

for until since 104 from ... to

while during 105 before after

on (places 1) 106 in at

107 in on (places 2) at

at (places 3) 108 to in

109 under, behind, opposite etc.

110 up, over, through etc.

with about 111 on at by

112 afraid of ..., good at ... etc. of/at/for etc. (prepositions) + -ing

113 listen to ..., look at ... etc. (verb + preposition)

Phrasal verbs

114 go in, fall off, run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)

115 put on your shoes put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)

Appendices

Appendix 1 Active and passive 243

Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs 244

Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups 245

Appendix 4 Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.) 246

Appendix 5 Spelling 248

Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (take off / give up etc.) 250

Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (put out a fire / give up your job etc.) 251

Additional exercises 252

Study quide 271

Key to Exercises 283

Key to Additional exercises 310

Key to Study guide 313

Index 315

Thanks

For their help in producing this third edition of Essential Grammar in Use, I would like to thank Liz Driscoll, Jessica Roberts and Alison Sharpe. I would also like to thank the teachers and reviewers from various countries who provided me with feedback on the previous edition.

Illustrations by Kate Charlesworth, Richard Deverell, Gillian Martin, Roger Penwill, Lisa Smith, Ian West and Simon Williams

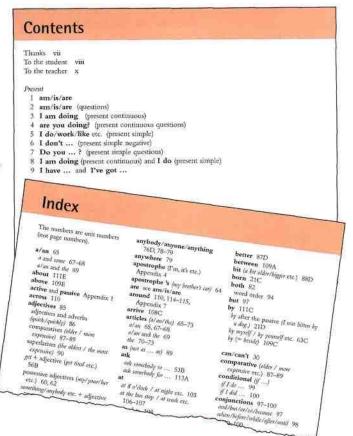
Design by Kamae Design

To the student (working without a teacher)

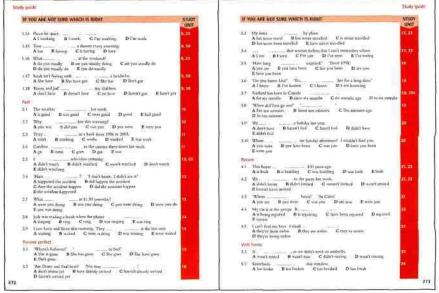
This is a grammar book for elementary students of English. There are 115 units in the book and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (*Contents*).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you *need* to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (*I have been*, *he has done* etc.), study Units 15–20.

Use the *Contents* or the *Index* (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) that you need.

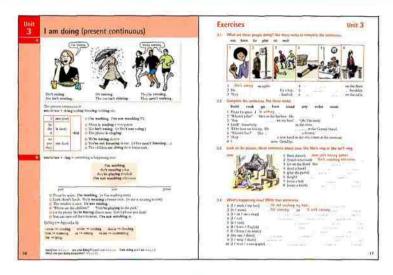


If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the *Study guide* at the back of the book.



Study guide (pages 271-282)

Each unit is two pages. The information is on the left-hand page and the exercises are on the right:



Information

Exercises

Study the left-hand page (information), and then do the exercises on the right-hand page.

Use the Key to check your answers. The Key is on pages 283-309.

Study the left-hand page again if necessary.



Don't forget the seven *Appendices* at the back of the book (pages 243–251). These will give you information about active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.

There are also Additional exercises at the back of the book (pages 252–270). There is a list of these exercises on page 252.



CD Rom

You can buy this book with or without a CD Rom. On the CD Rom there are more exercises on all the units, and these are different from the exercises in the book. There are also more than 600 test questions.



To the teacher

The most important features of this book are:

- ☐ It is a grammar book. It does not deal with other aspects of the language.
- □ It is for elementary learners. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at elementary level.
- It is a reference book with exercises. It is not a course book and is not organised progressively.
- ☐ It is addressed to learners and intended for self-study.

Organisation of the book

There are 115 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organised in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions and articles. Units are not ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should not be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the *Contents* and there is a comprehensive *Index* at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven *Appendices* (pages 243–251) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students' attention to these.

At the back of the book there is a set of *Additional exercises* (pages 252–270). These exercises provide 'mixed' practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (especially those concerning verb forms). There are 35 exercises in this section and there is a full list on page 252.

Also at the back of the book there is a *Study guide* to help students decide which units to study – see page 271.

Finally, there is a Key (pages 283–309) for students to check their answers to all the exercises in the book. An edition without the Study guide and Key is available for teachers who would prefer it for their students.

Level

The book is for elementary learners, i.e. learners with very little English, but not for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for elementary students who are beyond the early stages of a beginners' course. It could also be used by low-intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of basic grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the elementary learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

Using the book

The book can be used by students working alone (see *To the student*) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as an elementary grammar book.

When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.

In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for teachers to present the grammar point in their preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.

CD Rom

The book is sold with or without a CD Rom. This contains further exercises on all the units in the book, as well as a bank of more than 600 test questions from which users can select to compile their own tests. The CD Rom is also available separately.

Essential Grammar in Use Third Edition

This is a new edition of Essential Grammar in Use. The differences between this edition and the second edition are:

- ☐ The book has been redesigned with new colour illustrations.
- ☐ There is one new unit (Unit 35) and some reorganisation, so that most units have different numbers from the previous edition.
- ☐ There are many (usually minor) revisions to the explanations, examples and exercises.
- ☐ There are two new pages of Additional exercises (pages 252–270).
- ☐ There is a new *Study guide* at the back of the book to help users decide which units to study.
- ☐ There is a new CD Rom with further exercises to accompany the book.

am/is/are

A



В

positive

1	am	(I 'm)
he she it	is	(he's) (she's) (it's)
we you they	are	(we 're) (you 're) (they 're)

negative

1	am not	(I'm not)		
he she it	is not	The state of the s	or	he isn't) she isn't) it isn't)
we you they	are not	(we're not (you're not (they're not	or	you aren't)

short form

short forms

- I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?
- ☐ I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
- □ Steve is ill. He's in bed.
- ☐ My brother is afraid of dogs.
- ☐ It's ten o'clock. You're late again.
- ☐ Ann and I are good friends.
- Your keys are on the table.
- I'm tired, but I'm not hungry.
- ☐ Tom **isn't** interested in politics. He's interested in music.
- ☐ Jane isn't a teacher. She's a student.
- ☐ Those people aren't English. They're Australian.
- ☐ It's sunny today, but it isn't warm.

that's = that is there's = there is here's = here is

- ☐ Thank you. That's very kind of you.
- □ Look! There's Chris.
- "Here's your key." 'Thank you.'



I'm afraid of dogs.

C

1.1	Write the short form (she's	we aren't etc.).		
	1 she is she's	3 it is not		5 I am not	77
	2 they are	4 that is		6 you are not	
1.2	Write am, is or are.				
	1 The weather nice to 2 I not rich. 3 This bag heavy. 4 These bags heavy.	6 My br 7 Emily	ThereCother and Iat homea taxi driver.	good tennis j Her children	at school.
1.3	Complete the sentences.				
	1 Steve is ill. He's in bed 2 I'm not hungry, but 3 Mr Thomas is a very old ma 4 These chairs aren't beautiful 5 The weather is nice today. 6 late. 'No, 7 Catherine isn't at home. 8 your coat.'	n. thirsty. n. w. j but w. l'm not. I'm earl	comfortable. arm and sunny. y!' ork.		
1.4	Look at Lisa's sentences in 1	A. Now write s	entences about	yourself.	
	1 (name?) My 2 (from?) I 3 (age?) I 4 (job?) I		My6 (interested in		
1.5	Write sentences for the pict	ures. Use:			
	afraid angry cold	hot hu	ngry thirsty	/-	
		3	4	5	6
	1 She's thirsty.	2 Lla		5	
	2 They	me. All exceptions		6	
1.6	Write true sentences, positiv		llse islisn't or a	re/aren't	
1.0	1 (it / hot today) 2 (it / windy today) It 3 (my hands / cold) My 4 (Brazil / a very big country) 5 (diamonds / cheap) 6 (Toronto / in the US)	It isn't hot	today. or		ay.
	Write true sentences, positiv	e or negative.	Use I'm / I'm no	ot.	
	7 (tired) 8 (hungry) 9 (a good swimmer) 10 (interested in football)		or I'm no		

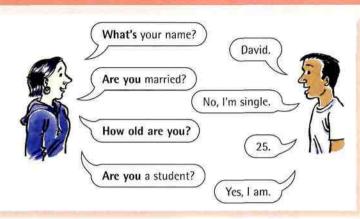
Unit 2

am/is/are (questions)

Α

I	am
he	
she	is
it	
we	
you	are
they	

am	I?
is	he? she?
are	we? you? they?



- 'Am I late?' 'No, you're on time.'
- 'Is your mother at home?' 'No, she's out.'
- 'Are your parents at home?' 'No, they're out.'
- ☐ 'Is it cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'
- Your shoes are nice. Are they new?

We say:

В

- ☐ Is she at home? / Is your mother at home? (not Is at home your mother?)
- ☐ Are they new? / Are your shoes new? (not Are new your shoes?)

Where ... ? / What ... ? / Who ... ? / How ... ? / Why ... ?

- □ Where is your mother? Is she at home?
- "Where are you from?" 'Canada.'
- 'What colour is your car?' 'It's red.'
- ☐ 'How old is Joe?' 'He's 24.'
- □ How are your parents? Are they well?
- ☐ These postcards are nice. How much are they?
- ☐ This hotel isn't very good. Why is it so expensive?

what's = what is who's = who is how's = how is where's = where is

□ What's the time?

□ Who's that man?

□ Where's Lucy?

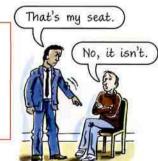
□ How's your father?

C Short answers

	I	am.
Yes,	he she it	is.
	we you they	are.

	ľm	
No,	he's she's it's	not.
	we're you're they're	

or	No,	he she it	isn't.
		we you they	aren't.



- ☐ 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I'm not, but I'm thirsty.'
- 'Is your friend English?' 'Yes, he is.'
- ☐ 'Are these your keys?' 'Yes, they are.'
- That's my seat.' 'No, it isn't.'

1 Where's the camera?	A London.	1 6
2 Is your car blue?	B No, I'm not.	2
3 Is Linda from London?	C Yes, you are.	3
4 Am I late?	D My sister.	4
5 Where's Ann from?	E Black.	5
6 What colour is your bag?	F No, it's black.	6
7 Are you hungry?	G In your bag.	7
8 How is George?	H No, she's American.	8
9 Who's that woman?	I Very well.	9
Make questions with these wor	ds.	
(is / at home / your mother)	Is your mother at hon	ne
2 (your parents / are / well)	Are your parents well	
3 (interesting / is / your job)		
the shops / are / open today)		
5 (from / where / you / are)		
6 (interested in sport / you / are)		
7 (is / near here / the post office)		
3 (at school / are / your children)		
you / are / late / why)		
3	these oranges? your favourite sport?	At the end of the stree Five, six and ten. £1.50 a kilo. Skiing.
5 the r	The state of the s	That's my father.
7	your new snoes?	Black.
Write the questions.		PAL
(name?) What's your nam		- A C.
(American?)		No, I'm Australian.
2 (American?)		No, I'm Australian. I'm 30.
(American?) (how old?) (a teacher?)		No, I'm Australian. I'm 30. No, I'm a lawyer.
(American?) (how old?) (a teacher?) (married?)		No, I'm Australian. I'm 30. No, I'm a lawyer. Yes, I am.
(American?) (how old?) (a teacher?) (married?) (wife a lawyer?)		No, I'm Australian. I'm 30. No, I'm a lawyer. Yes, I am. No, she's a designer
(American?) (how old?) (a teacher?) (married?)		No, I'm Australian. I'm 30. No, I'm a lawyer. Yes, I am. No, she's a designer She's Italian.

2 Are you thirsty?

3 Is it cold today?

5 Is it dark now?

6 Are you a teacher?

I am doing (present continuous)

A



She's eating.
She isn't reading.



It's raining.
The sun isn't shining.



They're running. They aren't walking.

The present continuous is: am/is/are + doing/eating/running/writing etc.

I	am (not)	
he she it	is (not)	-ing
we you they	are (not)	

- ☐ I'm working. I'm not watching TV.
- Maria is reading a newspaper.
- ☐ She isn't eating. (or She's not eating.)
- The phone is ringing.
- □ We're having dinner.
- ☐ You're not listening to me. (or You aren't listening ...)
- ☐ The children are doing their homework.

B am/is/are + -ing = something is happening now:

I'm working she's wearing a hat they're playing football I'm not watching television

nas

nou

future

- □ Please be quiet. I'm working. (= I'm working now)
- □ Look, there's Sarah. She's wearing a brown coat. (= she is wearing it now)
- ☐ The weather is nice. It's not raining.
- "Where are the children?" "They're playing in the park."
- (on the phone) We're having dinner now. Can I phone you later?
- ☐ You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

come → coming write → writing dance → dancing run → running sit → sitting swim → swimming lie → lying

am/is/are \rightarrow Unit 1 are you doing? (questions) \rightarrow Unit 4 I am doing and I do \rightarrow Unit 8 What are you doing tomorrow? \rightarrow Unit 25

3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

eat have lie play sit wait 1 2 3 4 5 6 1 She's eating an apple. 4 on the floor. 2 He _____ for a bus. 5 breakfast. 3 They _____ football. 6 _____ on the table. Complete the sentences. Use these verbs: 3.2 build cook go have swim stand stay work 1 Please be quiet. I 'm working ... 2 'Where's John?' 'He's in the kitchen. He 3 'You _____ on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.' 4 Look! Somebody ______ in the river. 5 We're here on holiday. We ______at the Central Hotel. 'She _____ a shower.' 6 'Where's Sue?' 7 They _____ a new hotel in the city centre at the moment. 8 I ______ now. Goodbye. Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane, Use She's -ing or She isn't -ing. 3.3 1 (have dinner) Jane isn't having dinner. 2 (watch television) She's watching television. 3 (sit on the floor) She 4 (read a book) 5 (play the piano) 6 (laugh) 7 (wear a hat) 8 (write a letter) Jane What's happening now? Write true sentences. 3.4 I'm not washing my hair. 1 (I / wash / my hair) It's snowing. or It isn't snowing. 2 (it / snow) 3 (I / sit / on a chair) 4 (I / eat) 5 (it / rain) 6 (I / learn / English) 7 (I / listen / to music) 8 (the sun / shine) 9 (I / wear / shoes)

10 (I / read / a newspaper)

Unit 4

are you doing? (present continuous questions)

A

I	am	
he she it	is	doing working going
we you they	are	staying etc

am	I	
is	he she it	doing? working? going?
are	we you they	staying? etc



- Are you feeling OK?' 'Yes, I'm fine, thanks.'
- ☐ 'Is it raining?' 'Yes, take an umbrella.'
- □ Why are you wearing a coat? It's not cold.
- ☐ 'What's Paul doing?' 'He's reading the newspaper.'
- "What are the children doing?" 'They're watching television."
- □ Look, there's Emily! Where's she going?
- □ Who are you waiting for? Are you waiting for Sue?

B S

Study the word order:

	Is	he	working today?
	Is	Paul	working today? (not Is working Paul today?)
Where			going?
Where	are	those people	going? (not Where are going those people?)

C

Short answers

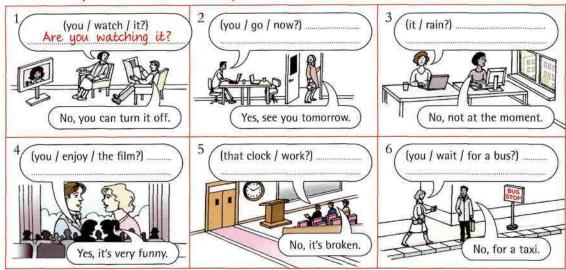
	I	am.
Yes,	he she it	is.
	we you they	are.

	I'm	
No,	he's she's it's	not.
	we 're you 're they 're	

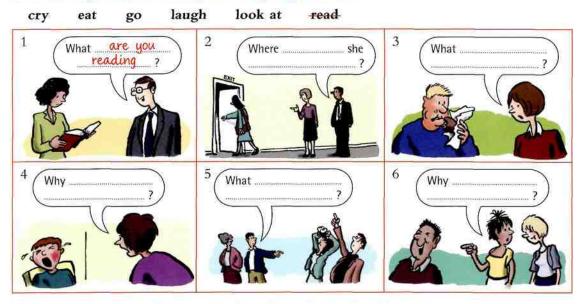
or	No,	he she it	isn't.
		we you they	aren't.

- ☐ 'Are you going now?' 'Yes, I am.'
- ☐ 'Is Paul working today?' 'Yes, he is.'
- ☐ 'Is it raining?' 'No, it isn't.'
- ☐ 'Are your friends staying at a hotel?' 'No, they aren't. They're staying with me.'

4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.



4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use:



4.3 Make questions from these words. Put the words in the right order.

1	(is / working / Paul / today) 15 Paul working today	?
2	(what / the children / are / doing) What are the children doing	?
3	(you / are / listening / to me)	?
4	(where / your friends / are / going)	?
5	(are / watching / your parents / television)	?
6	(what / Jessica / is / cooking)	?
7	(why / you / are / looking / at me)	?
8	(is / coming / the bus)	?

4.4 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't. etc.).

	The second secon		2 Shipperson
1	Are you watching TV? No. I'm not.	4	Is it raining?
2	Are you wearing a watch?	5	Are you sitting on the floor?
3	Are you eating something?	6	Are you feeling well?

I do/work/like etc. (present simple)

A



They're looking at their books.

They read a lot.



He's eating an ice-cream.

They read / he likes / I work etc. = the present simple:

I/we/you/they	read	like	work	live	watch	do	have
he/she/it	reads	likes	works	lives	watches	does	has

Remember:

he works / she lives / it rains etc.

- ☐ I work in a shop. My brother works in a bank. (not My brother work)
- Lucy lives in London. Her parents live in Scotland.
- It rains a lot in winter.

I have → he/she/it has:

□ John has a shower every day.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

В

We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:

- I like big cities.
- ☐ Your English is good. You speak very well.
- Tim works very hard. He starts at 7.30 and finishes at 8 o'clock in the evening.
- ☐ The earth **goes** round the sun.
- We do a lot of different things in our free time.
- ☐ It costs a lot of money to build a hospital.

C

always/never/often/usually/sometimes + present simple

- ☐ Sue always gets to work early. (not Sue gets always)
- ☐ I never eat breakfast. (not I eat never)
- □ We often go away at weekends.
- Mark usually plays football on Sundays.
- □ I sometimes walk to work, but not very often.

I don't ... (negative) \rightarrow Unit 6 Do you ... ? (questions) \rightarrow Unit 7 I am doing and I do \rightarrow Unit 8 always/usually/often etc. (word order) \rightarrow Unit 94

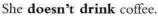
5.1	Write these verbs with -s or -es.
	1 (read) she reads 3 (fly) it 5 (have) she 2 (think) he 4 (dance) he 6 (finish) it
5.2	Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use:
	eat go live play play sleep
	Tennis is my favourite we love films. NIGHT
	1 He plays the piano. 4 tennis. 2 They in a very big house. 5 to the cinema a lot. 3 a lot of fruit. 6 seven hours a night.
5.3	Complete the sentences. Use:
	boil close cost cost like like meet open speak teach wash
	1 Maria
5.4	Write sentences from these words. Use the right form of the verb (arrive or arrives etc.).
	1 (always / early / Sue / arrive) Sue always arrives early. 2 (to the cinema / never / I / go) I 3 (work / Martina / hard / always) 4 (like / chocolate / children / usually) 5 (Julia / parties / enjoy / always) 6 (often / people's names / I / forget) 7 (television / Tim / watch / never) 8 (usually / dinner / we / have / at 7.30) 9 (Jenny / always / nice clothes / wear)
5.5	Write sentences about yourself. Use always/never/often/usually/sometimes.
	1 (watch TV in the evening) 1 (watch TV in the evening. 2 (read in bed) I 3 (get up before 7 o'clock) 4 (go to work/school by bus) 5 (drink coffee in the morning)

I don't ... (present simple negative)

A

The present simple negative is don't/doesn't + verb:







He doesn't like his job.

positive

1	work
we	like
you	do
they	have
he she it	works likes does has

negative

we you they	don't (do not)	work like
he she it	doesn't (does not)	do have

- □ I drink coffee, but I don't drink tea.
- ☐ Sue drinks tea, but she doesn't drink coffee.
- ☐ You don't work very hard.
- ☐ We don't watch television very often.
- ☐ The weather is usually nice. It doesn't rain very often.
- Gary and Nicole don't know many people.

В

Remember:

I/we/you/they don't ... he/she/it doesn't ...

- I don't like football.
- ☐ He doesn't like football.
- ☐ I don't like Fred and Fred doesn't like me. (not Fred don't like)
- □ My car doesn't use much petrol. (not My car don't use)
- ☐ Sometimes he is late, but it doesn't happen very often.

C

We use don't/doesn't + infinitive (don't like / doesn't speak / doesn't do etc.):

- □ I don't like washing the car. I don't do it very often.
- ☐ Sarah speaks Spanish, but she doesn't speak Italian. (not doesn't speaks)
- □ Bill doesn't do his job very well. (not Bill doesn't his job)
- ☐ Paula doesn't usually have breakfast. (not doesn't ... has)

b. I	write the negative.		74		
	1 I play the piano ver 2 Jane plays the piano			t play the piano very well.	000000000000000000000000000000000000000
	3 They know my pho				
	4 We work very hard				
	5 He has a bath every				
	6 You do the same th	ing every day.		×0.140.001.1101.1101.1101.1101.1101.1101	
6.2	Study the information	on and write s	entences	with like.	
	4		S	 Ben and Sophie like classical m 	usic.
				Kate	
	Do you		(*	Iclassica	l music.
	like ?	BEN AND Sophie Kat	E You	2 P 15 15	
		SOPHIE KAI	E 100	2 Ben and Sophie Kate	
	1 classical music?	yes no	' <mark>う</mark>	I	
	2 boxing?	no ye	s S		***************************************
	3 horror films?	yes no	,	3	
				3.11-11-2-11	
				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
6.3	Write about yoursel	f Hen			
0.5	0.000		2020 N	dende como estado	
				don't very often.	
	1 (watch TV)			y often. or I never watch TV.	or
		I often wat	an IV.		
	2 (go to the theatre) 3 (ride a bicycle)	((11)			
	4 (eat in restaurants)	***************************************			
	5 (travel by train)				T
6.4		nces. All of the	m are ne	gative. Use don't/doesn't + these verb	s:
	cost go kr	iow read	see	use wear	
	1 I buy a newspaper of	every day but so	metimes	I don't read it	
	2 Paul has a car, but h				
	3 Paul and his friends	like films, but	they	to the cinema very	often.
	4 Amanda is married,		(C)		
	5 I	much	about pol	itics. I'm not interested in it.	Contract Con
				much to stay there.	
	7 Brian lives very nea	r us, but we		him very often.	
6.5	Put the verb into the	e correct form	, positive	or negative.	
	1 Margaret speaks	four languag	es – Engli	ish, French, German and Spanish. (speak)	
	2 I don't like m				
	4 Sue is a very quiet	person. She	***********************	very much. (talk)	
	5 Andy	a	lot of tea.	It's his favourite drink. (drink)	
	6 It's not true! I			Windows Programmed Control of the Co	
				it very much. (like)	
	8 Mark is a vegetaria	n. He		meat. (eat)	

Do you ... ? (present simple questions)

A

We use do/does in present simple questions:

I	work
we	like
you	do
they	have
he	works
she	likes
SHE	does

do	I	
	we	
	you	work?
	they	like?
does	he	do? have?
	she	Have.
	it	



В

Study the word order:

has

do/does + subject + infinitive

	Do	you	work	on Sundays?
	Do	your friends	live	near here?
	Does	Chris	play	tennis?
Where	do	your parents	live?	
How often	do	you	wash	your hair?
What	does	this word	mean?	
How much	does	it	cost	to fly to Rome?

Questions with always/usually/often:

		Do	you	always	have	breakfast?
1		Does	Chris	often	phone	you?
7.4	What	do	you	usually	do	at weekends?

What do you do? = What's your job?

☐ 'What do you do?' 'I work in a bank.'

C Remember:

do I/we/you/they ... □ Do they like music? □ Does he like music?

D

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they do.	No.	I/we/you/they don't.	
105,	he/she/it does.	140,	he/she/it doesn't.	

- □ 'Do you play tennis?' 'No, I don't.'
- Do your parents speak English?' 'Yes, they do.'
- Does Gary work hard?' 'Yes, he does.'
- Does your sister live in London.' 'No, she doesn't.'

	1 I like chocolate. How about you?	Do you like chocolate
	2 I play tennis. How about you?	you
	3 You live near here. How about Lucy?	Lucy
	4 Tom plays tennis. How about his friends?	Lucy
	5 You speak English. How about your brother	
	6 I do yoga every morning. How about you?	
	7 Sue often goes away. How about Paul?	
	8 I want to be famous. How about you?	
	9 You work hard. How about Anna?	
1.2	Make questions from these words + do/doe	
	1 (where / live / your parents)	Where do your parents live
	2 (you / early / always / get up)	Do you always get up early
	3 (how often / TV / you / watch)	
	4 (you / want / what / for dinner)	
	5 (like / you / football)	
	6 (your brother / like / football)	
	7 (what / you / do / in your free time)	
	8 (your sister / work / where)	
	THE THEOREM SPECIAL SECTION OF STREET, WINDOWS	
	10 (what / mean / this word)	
	A STATE OF THE STA	
	12 (go / usually / to bed / what time / you)	
	The cost of the product of the cost of the	
	13 (how much / to phone New York / it / cost	
		,
	14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what)	
2	14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what)	
.3	14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what) Complete the questions. Use these verbs:	
.3	14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what)	
.3	14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what) Complete the questions. Use these verbs:	
.3	14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what) Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go	like start teach work
.3	14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what) Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go	
.3	14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what) Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go What	like start teach work do you do ? I work in a bookshop.
.3	14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what) Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go	like start teach work do you do ? I work in a bookshop. It's OK.
.3	Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go What	like start teach work do you do ? it? I work in a bookshop. It's OK. At 9 o'clock.
.3	Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go What What What	like start teach work do you do ? it? it? OK. At 9 o'clock. Sometimes.
.3	Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go What What What What	like start teach work do you do ? it? I work in a bookshop. It's OK. At 9 o'clock. Sometimes. to work? Usually by bus.
.3	Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go What What time How	like start teach work do you do ? it? it? I work in a bookshop. It's OK. At 9 o'clock. Sometimes. Usually by bus. He's a teacher.
1.3	Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go What What How And your husband. What	like start teach work do you do ? it? it? in the morning? on Saturdays? to work? Usually by bus. He's a teacher. Science.
1.3	Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go What What How And your husband. What What	like start teach work do you do ? it? it? in the morning? on Saturdays? to work? to work? ? He's a teacher. Science.
.4	Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go What What How And your husband. What What	like start teach work do you do ? it? it? I work in a bookshop. It's OK. At 9 o'clock. Sometimes. Usually by bus. He's a teacher. Science. Yes, he loves it.
	Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go What What time How And your husband. What What Write short answers (Yes, he does. / No, I do	like start teach work do you do ? it? it? I work in a bookshop. It's OK. At 9 o'clock. Sometimes. Usually by bus. He's a teacher. Science. Yes, he loves it.
	Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go What What time How And your husband. What What Write short answers (Yes, he does. / No, 1 do 1 Do you watch TV a lot?	like start teach work do you do ? it? it? in the morning? on Saturdays? to work? to work? ? ? his job? I work in a bookshop. It's OK. At 9 o'clock. Sometimes. Usually by bus. He's a teacher. Science. Yes, he loves it.
	Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go What What time How And your husband. What What Write short answers (Yes, he does. / No, 1 do 1 Do you watch TV a lot? 2 Do you live in a big city?	like start teach work do you do ? it? it? OK. At 9 o'clock. Sometimes. Usually by bus. He's a teacher. Science. Yes, he loves it. on't. etc.). ton't. or Yes, I do.
	Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go What What time How And your husband. What What Do you watch TV a lot? Do you live in a big city? Do you often ride a bicycle?	like start teach work do you do ? it? it? OK. At 9 o'clock. Sometimes. Usually by bus. He's a teacher. Science. Yes, he loves it.

Unit 8

I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)

A

Jack is watching television.

He is not playing the guitar.

But Jack has a guitar.

He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jack plays the guitar,

but he is not playing the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar?

Does he play the guitar?

No, he isn't.

(present continuous)

Yes, he does. (present simple)

В

Present continuous (I am doing) = now, at the time of speaking:

I'm doing

past now future

- ☐ Please be quiet. I'm working. (not I work)
- ☐ Tom is having a shower at the moment. (not Tom has)
- ☐ Take an umbrella with you. It's raining.
- You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.
- ☐ Why are you under the table? What **are** you doing?

C Pre

Present simple (I do) = in general, all the time or sometimes:

I do

past now future

- □ I work every day from 9 o'clock to 5.30.
- ☐ Tom **has** a shower every morning.
- ☐ It rains a lot in winter.
- ☐ I don't watch television very often.
- □ What **do** you usually **do** at the weekend?

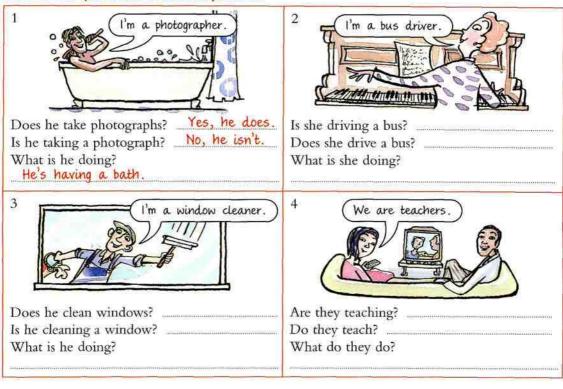
We do not use these verbs in the present continuous (I am -ing):

like love want know understand remember depend prefer hate need mean believe forget

Use only the present simple with these verbs (I want / do you like? etc.):

- ☐ I'm tired. I want to go home. (not I'm wanting)
- □ 'Do you know that girl?' 'Yes, but I don't remember her name.'
- □ I don't understand. What do you mean?

Answer the questions about the pictures.



Complete the sentences with am/is/are or do/don't/does/doesn't. 8.2

1	Excuse me, do you speak English?
	'Where's Kate?' 'Iknow.'
3	What's funny? Why you laughing?
4	'What your sister do?' 'She's a dentist.'
5	It raining. I want to go out in the rain.
6	'Where you come from?' 'Canada.'
7	How much it cost to send a letter to Canada?
8	Steve is a good tennis player, but he play very often.

8.3

P	ut the verb in the present continu	ious (I am doing) or the present simple (I do).
1	Excuse me, do you speak (you	u/speak) English?
2	'Where's Tom?' 'He's having	(he/have) a shower.'
3	I don't watch (I/not/watch) t	relevision very often.
4	Listen! Somebody	
5		(she/want) to go home now.
6	How often	(you/read) a newspaper?
7	'Excuse me, but	(you/sit) in my place.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
8		(I/not/understand). Can you speak more slowly?
9	It's late.	(I/go) home now.
	(you/come) with me?	
10	What time	(your father / finish) work every day?
11	You can turn off the radio.	(I/not/listen) to it.
12	'Where's Paul?' 'In the kitchen.	(he/cook) something.'
		(not/usually/drive) to work. He
	(us	sually/walk).
14	Sue (no	t/like) coffee. (she/prefer) tea.

I have ... and I've got ...

A You can say I have or I've got, he has or he's got:

I	
we	have
you	nave
they	
he	
she	has
it	

I (I've got) we (we've got) or have got (you've got) vou they (they've got) he (he's got) or (she's got) she has got (it's got) it

short form



- ☐ I have blue eyes. or I've got blue eyes.
- Tim has two sisters. or Tim has got two sisters.
- Our car has four doors. or Our car has got four doors.
- □ Sarah isn't feeling well. She has a headache. or She's got a headache.
- ☐ They like animals. They have a horse, three dogs and six cats. or They've got a horse ...

I haven't got / have you got? etc.

negative

I we you they	have not (haven't)	got
he she it	has not (hasn't)	

question

have	I we you they	got?
has	he she it	

short answers

Yes, No,	I we you they	have. haven't.
Yes, No,	he she it	has. hasn't.

- I've got a motorbike, but I haven't got a car.
- ☐ Tracey and Jeff haven't got any children.
- ☐ It's a nice house, but it hasn't got a garden.
- "Have you got a camera?" 'No, I haven't.'
- ☐ 'What have you got in your bag?' 'Nothing. It's empty.'
- ☐ 'Has Helen got a car?' 'Yes, she has.'
- □ What kind of car has she got?

I don't have / do you have? etc.

In negatives and questions you can also use do/does ...:

- ☐ They don't have any children. (= They haven't got any children.)
- ☐ It's a nice house, but it **doesn't have** a garden. (= it **hasn't got** a garden)
- □ Does Helen have a car? (= Has Helen got a car?)
- □ What do you have in your bag? (= What have you got in your bag?)

C

Write the short form with got (we've got / he hasn't got etc.).
1 we have got we've got 3 they have got 5 it has got
2 he has got 4 she has not got 6 I have not got
Have you got a car? Have you got a computer? Have you got a mobile phone? Have you got a watch? Have you got any brothers or sisters? What about you? Write sentences with I've got or I haven't got. He hasn't got a car. Yes. No. Mark No. Yes. Yes. Yes. Yes, two brothers and a sister. What about you? Write sentences with I've got or I haven't got. (a computer) (a computer)
10 (brothers/sisters)
Write these sentences with got (I've got / have you got etc.). The meaning is the same. 1 They have two children. 2 She doesn't have a key. 3 He has a new job. 4 They don't have much money. 5 Do you have an umbrella? 6 We have a lot of work to do. 7 I don't have your phone number. 8 Does your father have a car? 9 How much money do we have?
Write have got ('ve got), has got ('s got), haven't got or hasn't got.
1 Sarah hasn't got a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle. 2 They like animals. They 've got three dogs and two cats. 3 Charles isn't happy. He a lot of problems. 4 They don't read much. They many books. 5 'What's wrong?' 'I something in my eye.' 6 'Where's my pen?' 'I don't know. I it.' 7 Julia wants to go to the concert, but she a ticket.
Complete the sentences. Use have/has got or haven't/hasn't got with:
a lot of friends four wheels a headache six legs a garden much time a key 1 I'm not feeling well. I 've got a headache. 2 It's a nice house, but it hasn't got a garden. 3 Most cars 4 Everybody likes Tom. He 5 I can't open the door. I 6 An insect

was/were

A



Now Robert is at work.

At midnight last night he wasn't at work.

He was in bed. He was asleep.

am/is (present) → was (past):

- □ I am tired. (now)
- ☐ Where is Kate? (now)
- ☐ The weather **is** good today.

are (present) → were (past):

- ☐ You are late. (now)
- ☐ They aren't here. (now)

I was tired last night.

Where was Kate yesterday?

The weather was good last week.

You were late yesterday.

They weren't here last Sunday.

В

positive I	
he	was
she	was
it	
we	
you	were
they	

negative

I he she it	was not (wasn't)
we you they	were not (weren't)

question

was	I? he? she? it?
were	we? you? they?

- Last year Rachel was 22, so she is 23 now.
- ☐ When I was a child, I was afraid of dogs.
- ☐ We were hungry after the journey, but we weren't tired.
- ☐ The hotel was comfortable, but it wasn't expensive.
- □ Was the weather nice when you were on holiday?
- ☐ Your shoes are nice. Were they expensive?
- □ Why were you late this morning?

C

Short answers

Yes,	I/he/she/it	was.
res,	we/you/they	were.

NI.	I/he/she/it wasn't.
No,	we/you/they weren't.

- "Were you late?" 'No, I wasn't.'
- "Was Ted at work yesterday?" 'Yes, he was."
- ☐ 'Were Sue and Steve at the party?' 'No, they weren't.'

Exercises Unit 10

10.1 Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?



1	Gary was in bed.	4	
2	Jack and Kate	5	
2	Corn	6	And you? I

10.2 Write am/is/are (present) or was/were (past).

- 5 Where _____ you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
- 6 Don't buy those shoes. They _____ very expensive.
- 7 I like your new jacket. it expensive?
- 8 This time last year I in Paris.
- 9 'Where _____ here a few minutes ago.'

10.3 Write was/were or wasn't/weren't.

- We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room was very small and it wasn't clean.

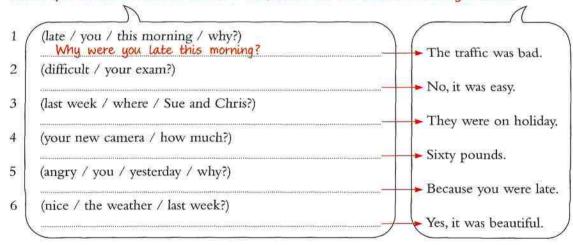
 Mark at work last week because he ill. He's better now.

 Yesterday a public holiday, so the banks closed. They're open today.

 Kate and Bill at the party? 'Kate there, but Bill ?

 'Where are my keys?' 'I don't know. They on the table, but they're not there now.'

 You at home last night. Where you?
- 10.4 Write questions from these words + was/were. Put the words in the right order.



worked/got/went etc. (past simple)

A

They watch television every evening.

(present simple)

They watched television yesterday evening. (past simple)

watched is the past simple:

watched
V



В

The past simple is often -ed (regular verbs). For example:

```
work → worked dance → danced clean → cleaned start → started need → needed
```

- ☐ I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I cleaned my teeth.
- ☐ Terry worked in a bank from 1996 to 2003.
- ☐ Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
- ☐ We **enjoyed** the party last night. We **danced** a lot and **talked** to a lot of people. The party **finished** at midnight.

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

C

Some verbs are irregular (= not regular). The past simple is not -ed. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 2–3):

begin -	→ began	fall -	→ fell	leave -	→ left	sell -	> sold
break	broke	find	found	lose	lost	sit	sat
bring	brought	fly	flew	make	made	sleep	slept
build	built	forget	forgot	meet	met	speak	spoke
buy	bought	get	got	pay	paid	stand	stood
catch	caught	give	gave	put	put	take	took
come	came	go	went	read	read (red)*	tell	told
do	did	have	had	ring	rang	think	thought
drink	drank	hear	heard	say	said	win	won
eat	ate	know	knew	see	saw	write	wrote

* pronounced 'red'

- □ I usually get up early, but this morning I got up at 9 o'clock.
- □ We did a lot of work yesterday.
- ☐ Caroline went to the cinema three times last week.
- ☐ James came into the room, took off his coat and sat down.

11.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box	11.1	Complete	the	sentences.	Use	a verb	from	the	box
--	------	----------	-----	------------	-----	--------	------	-----	-----

	clean die enjoy finish happen open rain start stay	want
	1 I cleaned my teeth three times yesterday. 2 It was hot in the room, so I the window. 3 The film was very long. It at 7.15 and at 10 4 When I was a child, I to be a doctor. 5 The accident last Sunday afternoon. 6 It's a nice day today, but yesterday it all day. 7 We our holiday last year. We at a very nice part of the strength of the strength of the strength of the window. 8 Anna's grandfather when he was 90 years old.	
11.2	Write the past simple of these verbs.	
	1 get got 4 pay 7 go 10 know 2 see 5 visit 8 think 11 put 3 play 6 buy 9 copy 12 speak	,
11.3	Read about Lisa's journey to Madrid. Put the verbs in the correct form.	
	AIRPORT BEPARTURES CHECK - IN DEPARTURES DEPARTURES	MADRID AIRPORT
	up at 6 o'clock in the morning and (3) a cup of coffee. At 6.30 she (4) home and (5) to the airport. When she (6) there, she (7) the car, (8) to the airport building, and (9) in. Then she (10) breakfast at a cafe and (11) for her flight. The plane (12) on time and	ly, get nave eave, drive get, park, walk check, have vait, depart rrive, take
11.4	Write sentences about the past (yesterday / last week etc.).	
and the same	1 James always goes to work by car. Yesterday he went to work by car. 2 Rachel often loses her keys. She	last week.
11 E	The state of the s	iast i fludy.
11.5	Write sentences about what <u>you</u> did yesterday. 1 I went to the theatre. 4	
	2 5	

Unit 12

I didn't ... Did you ... ? (past simple negative and questions)

A

We use did in past simple negatives and questions:

infinitive	positive	
play	I	played
start	we	started
watch	you	watched
have	they	had
see	he	saw
do	she	did
go	it	went

. I		play
we	did not (didn't)	start
you		watch
they		have
he		see
she		do
it		go

	I	play?
	we	start?
	you	watch?
did	they	have?
	he	see?
	she	do?
	it	go?

В

do/does (present) → did (past):

- ☐ I don't watch television very often.
 I didn't watch television yesterday.
- □ Does she often go away?
 Did she go away last week?

C

We use did/didn't + infinitive (watch/play/go etc.):

I watched but I didn't watch (not I didn't watched) they went he had you did they go? (not did they went?) he didn't have did you do?

- ☐ I played tennis yesterday, but I didn't win.
 - Did you do the shopping?' 'No, I didn't have time.'
- □ We went to the cinema, but we didn't enjoy the film.

D

Study the word order in questions:

did + subject + infinitive

	Did	your sister	phone	you?
What	did	you	do	last night?
How	did	the accident	happen?	
Where	did	your parents	go	for their holiday?

F

Short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they	did.
of the same	he/she/it	1000000

No,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	didn't.
-----	----------------------------	---------

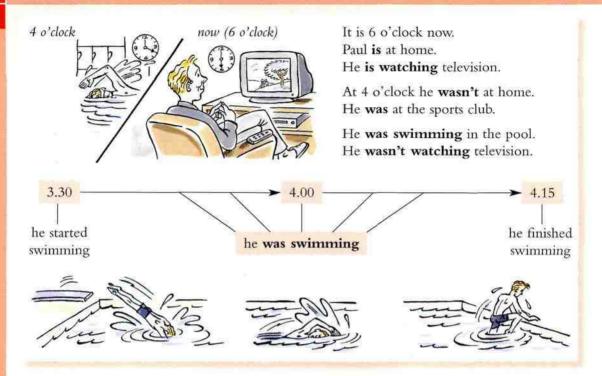
- □ 'Did you see Joe yesterday?' 'No, I didn't.'
- □ 'Did it rain on Sunday?' 'Yes, it did.'
- □ 'Did Helen come to the party?' 'No, she didn't.'
- ☐ 'Did your parents have a good holiday?' 'Yes, they did.'

Exercises Unit 12

12.1	Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.				
	1 I saw Barbara, but I didn't see Jane. 2 They worked on Monday, but they 3 We went to the post office, but we 4 She had a pen, but she 5 Jack did French at school, but he	to the bank. any paper.			
12.2	Write questions with Did ?				
	2 I enjoyed the party. How about you? 3 I had a good holiday. How about you? 4 I finished work early. How about you?	Did you watch TV last night ? ? ? ? ? ?			
12.3	What did you do yesterday? Write positive o	r negative sentences.			
	2 (get up before 7 o'clock) I	or I didn't watch TV.			
12.4	Write B's questions. Use:				
		appen have a nice time stay win			
	1 A: We went to New York last month. B: Where did you stay ? A: With some friends.	5 A: We came home by taxi. B: How much ? A: Ten pounds.			
	2 A: I was late for the meeting. B: What time? A: Half past nine.	6 A: I'm tired this morning. B: ? A: No, but I didn't sleep very well.			
	3 A: I played tennis this afternoon. B: ? A: No, I lost.	7 A: We went to the beach yesterday. B: ? A: Yes, it was great.			
	4 A: I had a nice holiday. B: Good. Where ? A: To the mountains.	8 A: The window is broken. B: How? A: I don't know.			
12.5	Put the verb in the correct form – positive, r 1 We went to the cinema, but the film wasn't ve				
	2 Timsome new clothes yeste				
		it was a nice day.' (rain)			
	4 We were tired, so we	The state of the s			
	5 It was very warm in the room, so I	a window. (open)			
	6 'Did you phone Chris this morning?' 'No,				
	7 'I cut my hand this morning.' 'How	(P)/T			
	8 'Why weren't you at the meeting yesterday?'	'I about it.' (know)			

I was doing (past continuous)

A



B was/were + -ing is the past continuous:

positive

I he was doing watching playing swimming living they etc.

negative

Ι he was not doing she (wasn't) watching it playing swimming we were not living you (weren't) they etc.

question

was	I he she it	doing? watching? playing?
were	we you they	swimming? living? etc.

- □ What were you doing at 11.30 yesterday? Were you working?
- "What did he say?" 'I don't know. I wasn't listening."
- It was raining, so we didn't go out.
- ☐ In 2001 we were living in Canada.
- ☐ Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she was wearing trousers.
- ☐ I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining and the birds were singing.

Spelling (live \rightarrow living / run \rightarrow running / lie \rightarrow lying etc.) \rightarrow Appendix 5

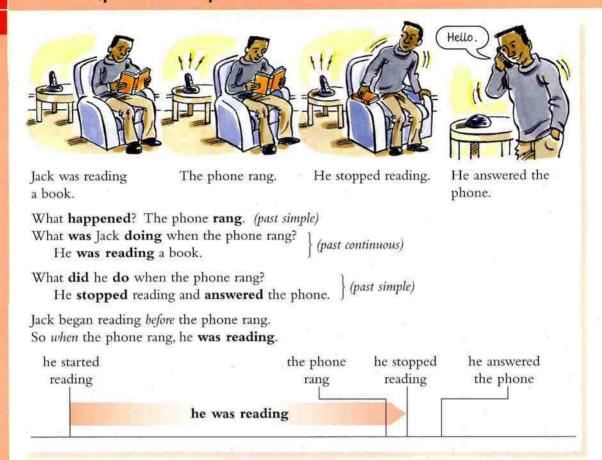
am/is/are + -ing (present) → was/were + -ing (past):

present

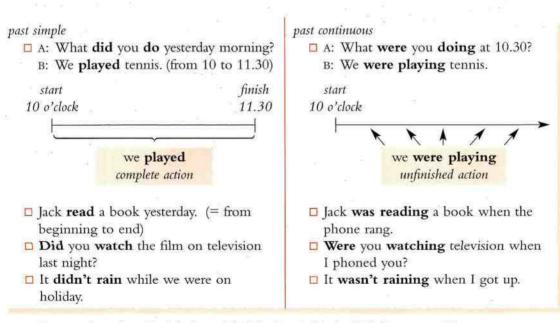
- ☐ I'm working (now).
- ☐ It isn't raining (now).
- □ What are you doing (now)?
- past
 - □ I was working at 10.30 last night.
 - ☐ It wasn't raining when we went out.
 - □ What were you doing at three o'clock?

I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)

A

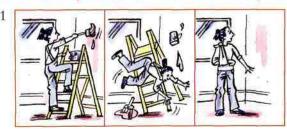


В



- ☐ I started work at 9 o'clock and finished at 4.30. At 2.30 I was working.
- ☐ It was raining when we went out. (= it started raining before we went out)
- □ I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They were waiting at the bus stop.
- ☐ Kelly **fell** asleep while she **was reading**.

14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the correct form, past continuous or past simple.



Lucy broke (break) her arm last week.

It (happen) when she (paint) her room. She (fall) off the ladder.



The train _____ (arrive) at the station and Paula _____ (get) off. Two friends of hers, Jon and Rachel, _____ (wait) to meet her.



Yesterday Sue (walk) along the road when she (meet) James. He (go) to the station to catch a train and he (carry) a bag.

They (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

14.2 Put the verb into the past continuous or past simple.

1 A: What were you doing (you/do) when the phone rang (ring)? B: I was watching (watch) television. 2 A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her? B: Yes, she _____ (study). 3 A: What time _____ (the post / arrive) this morning? B: It ______ (come) while I _____ (have) breakfast. 4 A: Was Tracey at work today? B: No, she _____ (not/go) to work. She was ill. 5 A: How fast (you/drive) when the police B: I'm not sure, but I ______ (stop) you? (not/drive) very fast. 6 A: (your team / win) the football match yesterday? B: The weather was very bad, so we _____ (not/play). 7 A: How _____ (you/break) the window? B: We (play) football. I (kick) the ball and it _____ (hit) the window. 8 A: (you/see) Jenny last night? B: Yes, she _____ (wear) a very nice jacket. 9 A: What _____ (you/do) at 2 o'clock this morning? B: I was asleep. B: How _____ (you/get) into your room? A: I ______ (climb) in through a window.

I have done (present perfect 1)

A



His shoes are dirty.



He is cleaning his shoes.



He has cleaned his shoes. (= his shoes are clean now)



They are at home.



They are going out.



They **have gone** out. (= they are not at home *now*)

В

has cleaned / have gone etc. is the present perfect (have + past participle):

we you they	have ('ve) have not (haven't)	cleaned finished started lost
he she it	has ('s) has not (hasn't)	done been gone

have	I we you they	cleaned? finished? started? lost?
has	he she it	done? been? gone?

ierogulae work

regular verbs

irregular verbs

↑ past participle

Regular verbs The past participle is -ed (the same as the past simple):

clean → I have cleaned finish → we have finished start → she has started

Irregular verbs The past participle is not -ed.

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same:

buy → I bought / I have bought have → he had / he has had

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different:

break → I broke / I have broken see → you saw / you have seen fall → it fell / it has fallen see → you saw / you have seen go → they went / they have gone

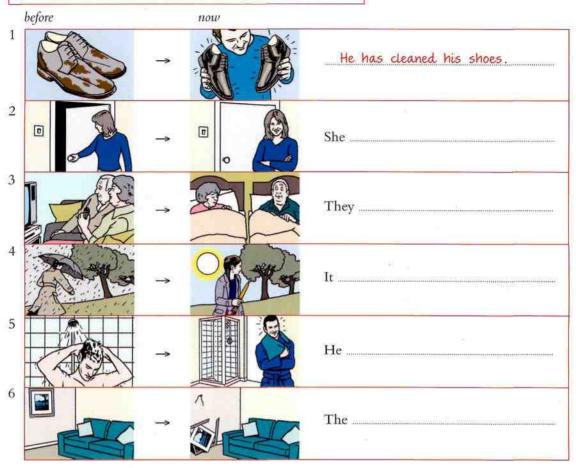
C

We use the present perfect for an action in the past with a result now:

- ☐ I've lost my passport. (= I can't find my passport now)
- □ 'Where's Rebecca?' 'She's gone to bed.' (= she is in bed now)
- □ We've bought a new car. (= we have a new car now)
- □ It's Rachel's birthday tomorrow and I haven't bought her a present. (= I don't have a present for her now)
- □ 'Bob is away on holiday.' 'Oh, where has he gone?' (= where is he now?)
- □ Can I take this newspaper? Have you finished with it? (= do you need it now?)

15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Choose from the box.

go to bed	clean his shoes	stop raining
close the door	fall down	have a shower



15.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box.

break	buy	decide	finish	forget	go	go
invite	read	see	not/see	take	tell	not/tell

1	'Can I have a look at your newspaper?' 'Yes, I 've finished with it.'
2	I some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
3	'Where is Liz?' 'She's not here. Sheout.'
4	I'm looking for Paula you her?
5	Look! Somebody that window.
6	'Does Lisa know that you're going away?' 'Yes, I her.'
7	I can't find my umbrella. Somebody it.
8	'Where are my glasses?' 'I don't know. I them.'
9	I'm looking for Sarah. Where ?
10	I know that woman, but I her name.
11	Sue is having a party tonight. She a lot of people.
	What are you going to do? you?
13	A: Does Bill know about the meeting tomorrow?
	B: I don't think so. I him.

14 'Do you want this magazine?' 'No, I _______it, thanks.'

Unit I've just ... I've already ... 16 I haven't ... yet (present perfect 2)

A

I've just ...

just = a short time ago

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?
 - B: Yes, they've just arrived.
- ☐ A: Are you hungry?
 - B: No, I've just had dinner.
- ☐ A: Is Tom here?
 - B: No, I'm afraid he's just gone. (= he has just gone)



They have just arrived.

I've already ...

already = before you expected / before I expected

- A: What time are Diane and Paul coming?
 - B: They've already arrived. (= before you expected)
- ☐ It's only 9 o'clock and Anna has already gone to bed. (= before I expected)
- ☐ A: Jon, this is Emma.
 - B: Yes, I know. We've already met.



I haven't ... yet / Have you ... yet?

vet = until now

We use yet in negative sentences and questions. Yet is usually at the end.

yet in negative sentences (I haven't ... yet)

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?
 - B: No, they haven't arrived yet. (but B expects Diane and Paul to arrive soon)
- ☐ A: Does James know that you're going away?
 - B: No, I haven't told him yet. (but B is going to tell him soon)
- ☐ Silvia has bought a new dress, but she hasn't worn it yet.



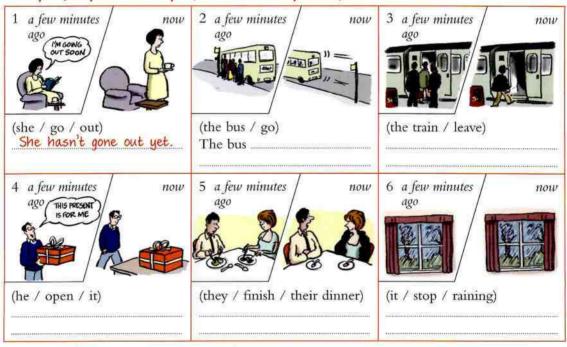
The film hasn't started yet.

yet in questions (Have you ... yet?)

- □ A: Have Diane and Paul arrived yet?
 - B: No, not yet. We're still waiting for them.
- ☐ A: Has Nicole started her new job yet?
 - B: No, she starts next week.
- A: This is my new dress.
 - B: Oh, it's nice. Have you worn it yet?



Exercises Write a sentence with just for each picture. This is our new car. START everybody NEW CARS They've just arrived. 3 They 2 He 4 The race 16.2 Complete the sentences. Use already + present perfect. He's already arrived. What time is Paul arriving? 2 Do your friends want to see the film? No, they 3 Don't forget to phone Tom. I management and a second seco 4 When is Martin going away? He 5 Do you want to read the newspaper? When does Sarah start her new job? She 6 16.3 Write a sentence with just (They've just ... / She's just ... etc.) or a negative sentence with yet (They haven't ... yet / She hasn't ... yet etc.). 1 a few minutes now 2 a few minutes now 3 a few minutes now ago

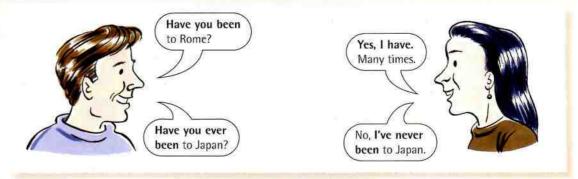


16.4 Write questions with yet.

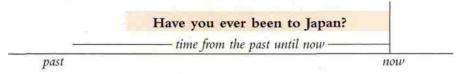
- 1 Your friend has got a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her: Have you started your new job yet?
- 2 Your friend has some new neighbours. Perhaps he has met them. You ask him:
- 3 Your friend must pay her phone bill. Perhaps she has paid it. You ask her:
- 4 Tom was trying to sell his car. Perhaps he has sold it. You ask a friend about Tom;

Have you ever ... ? (present perfect 3)

A



We use the *present perfect* (have been / have had / have played etc.) when we talk about a time from the past until now – for example, a person's life:



- ☐ 'Have you been to France?' 'No, I haven't.'
- I've been to Canada, but I haven't been to the United States.
- Mary is an interesting person. She has had many different jobs and has lived in many places.
- ☐ I've seen that woman before, but I can't remember where.
- ☐ How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?
- "Have you read this book?" 'Yes, I've read it twice.' (twice = two times)
- present perfect + ever (in questions) and never:
 - 'Has Ann ever been to Australia?' 'Yes, once.' (once = one time)
 - ☐ 'Have you ever played golf?' 'Yes, I play a lot.'
 - ☐ My sister has never travelled by plane.
 - I've never ridden a horse.
 - "Who is that man?" 'I don't know. I've never seen him before."

gone and been



Compare:

- ☐ I can't find Susan. Where **has** she **gone**? (= where is she now?)
- Oh, hello Susan! I was looking for you. Where have you been?

17.1 You are asking Helen questions beginning Have you ever ... ? Write the questions.



	1 (London?) 2 (play / golf?) 3 (Australia?) 4 (lose / your passport?) 5 (fly / in a helicopter?) 6 (win / a race?) 7 (New York?) 8 (drive / a bus?) Have you ever been to London? Have you ever played golf? Yes, many times. Yes, once. No, never. Yes, a few times. No, never. Yes, twice. No, never.
	9 (break / your leg?) Yes, once.
17.2	Write sentences about Helen. (Look at her answers in Exercise 17.1.) 1 (New York) She's been to New York twice. 2 (Australia) She 3 (win / a race) 4 (fly / in a helicopter)
	Now write about yourself. How often have you done these things? 5 (New York) I
17.3	Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done? have be do write travel meet all over the world many different jobs ten books married three times
	She has had many different jobs. She She She She She She She Sh
17.4	Write gone or been. 1 Bill is on holiday at the moment. He'sgone to Spain. 2 'Where's Jane?' 'She's not here. I think she's to the bank.' 3 Hello, Sue. Where have you ? Have you to the bank? 4 'Have you ever to Mexico?' 'No, never.' 5 My parents aren't at home at the moment. They've out. 6 There's a new restaurant in town. Have you to it? 7 Rebecca knows Paris well. She's there many times. 8 Helen was here earlier, but I think she's now.

How long have you ... ? (present perfect 4)

A

Jane is on holiday in Ireland.

She is there now.

She arrived in Ireland on Monday.

Today is Thursday.

How long has she been in Ireland?

She has been in Ireland since Monday. for three days.



Compare is and has been:

She is in Ireland now.

is = present

She has been in Ireland for

since Monday. for three days.

has been = present perfect

Monday

now Thursday

Compare:

present simple

present perfect simple (have been / have lived / have

known etc.)

Dan and Kate are married.

They have been married for five years.

Are you married?

(not They are married for five years.)

How long have you been married?

(not How long are you married?)

Do you know Lisa?

How long have you known her? (not How long do you know her?)

I know Lisa.

I've known her for a long time.

(not I know her for ...)

Vicky lives in London.

How long has she lived in London?

She has lived there all her life.

I have a car.

How long have you had your car?

I've had it since April.

present continuous

present perfect continuous (have been + -ing)

I'm learning German.

How long have you been learning German?

(not How long are you learning German?)

I've been learning German for two years.

David is watching TV.

How long has he been watching TV?

H

He's been (= He has been) watching TV since 5 o'clock.

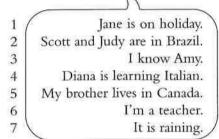
It's raining.

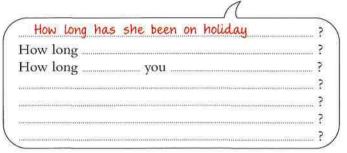
It's been (= It has been) raining all day.

18.1 Complete these sentences.

- 1 Jane is in Ireland. She has been in Ireland since Monday.
- 2 I know Lisa. I have known her for a long time.
- 3 Sarah and Andy are married. They _____ married since 1999.
- 4 Brian is ill. He _____ ill for the last few days.
- 5 We live in Scott Road. We _____ there for a long time.
- 6 Catherine works in a bank. She ______ in a bank for five years.
- 7 Alan has a headache. He ______ a headache since he got up this morning.
- 8 I'm learning English. I English for six months.

18.2 Make questions with How long ... ?





18.3



Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:

for ten minutes	all day	all her life
for ten years	since he was 20	since Sunday

- 1 They have been married for ten years.
- 2 She
- 3 They_____
- 4 The sun
- 5 She _____
- 6 He

18.4 Which is right?

- 1 Mark lives / has lived in Canada since April. (has lived is right)
- 2 Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her very well.
- 3 Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her for a long time.
- 4 A: Sorry I'm late. How long are you waiting/ have you been waiting?
 B: Not long. Only five minutes.
- 5 Martin works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
- 6 Ruth is reading the newspaper. She is reading / She has been reading it for two hours.
- 7 'How long do you live / have you lived in this house?' 'About ten years.'
- 8 'Is that a new coat?' 'No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time.'
- 9 Tom is / has been in Spain at the moment. He is / He has been there for the last three days.

for since ago

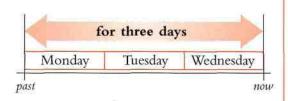
A

for and since

We use for and since to say how long:

☐ Jane is in Ireland. She has been there { for three days. since Monday.

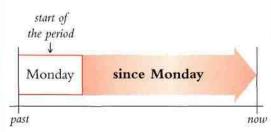
We use **for** + a period of time (**three days** / **two years** etc.):



1	for
three days	ten minutes
an hour	two hours
a week	four weeks
a month	six months
five years	a long time

- □ Richard has been in Canada **for six months**. (*not* since six months)
- ☐ We've been waiting **for two hours**. (*not* since two hours)
- ☐ I've lived in London for a long time.

We use **since** + the start of the period (**Monday** / **9 o'clock** etc.):



since		
Monday	Wednesday	
9 o'clock	12.30	
24 July	Christmas	
January	I was ten years old	
1985	we arrived	

- ☐ Richard has been in Canada since

 January. (= from January to now)
- ☐ We've been waiting since 9 o'clock. (= from 9 o'clock to now)
- ☐ I've lived in London since I was ten years old.

В

ago

ago = before now:

- ☐ Susan started her new job three weeks ago. (= three weeks before now)
- "When did Tom go out?" "Ten minutes ago." (= ten minutes before now)
- ☐ I had dinner an hour ago.
- Life was very different a hundred years ago.

We use ago with the past (started/did/had/was etc.).

Compare ago and for:

- ☐ When did Jane arrive in Ireland?

 She arrived in Ireland three days ago.
- How long has she been in Ireland?
 She has been in Ireland for three days.

19.1	Write for or since.	
	1 Jane has been in Ireland for three days. 2 Jane has been in Ireland for three days. 3 My aunt has lived in Australia 15 years. 4 Jennifer is in her office. She has been there 7 o'clock. 5 India has been an independent country 1947. 6 The bus is late. We've been waiting 20 minutes. 7 Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty many year Michael has been ill along time. He has been in hospital	
19.2	Answer these questions. Use ago.	
	1 When was your last meal? 2 When was the last time you were ill? 3 When did you last go to the cinema? 4 When was the last time you were in a car? 5 When was the last time you went on holiday?	
19.3	Complete the sentences. Use for or ago with these words.	
	1 Jane arrived in Ireland three days ago. 2 Jane has been in Ireland for three days. 3 Lynn and Mark have been married 4 Lynn and Mark got married 5 Dan arrived 6 I bought these shoes 7 Silvia has been learning English 8 Have you known Lisa ?	(three days) (three days) (20 years) (20 years) (an hour) (a few days) (six months) (a long time)
19.4	Complete the sentences with for or since.	
	1 (Jane is in Ireland – she arrived there three days ago) Jane has been in Ireland for three days. 2 (Jack is here – he arrived on Tuesday) Jack has 3 (It's raining – it started an hour ago) It's been 4 (I know Sue – I first met her in 2002) I've 5 (Claire and Matthew are married – they got married six months ago) Claire and Matthew have 6 (Liz is studying medicine at university – she started three years ago) Liz has 7 (David plays the piano – he started when he was seven years old) David has	
19.5	Write sentences about yourself. Begin your sentences with: I've lived I've been I've been learning I've known I' 1	
	3	
	5	

Unit **20**

I have done (present perfect) and I did (past)

A

With a finished time (yesterday / last week etc.), we use the past (arrived/saw/was etc.):

we arrived yesterday.
last week.
at 3 o'clock.
in 2002.
six months ago.



Do not use the present perfect (have arrived / have done / have been etc.) with a finished time:

- ☐ I saw Paula yesterday. (not I have seen)
- ☐ Where were you on Sunday afternoon? (not Where have you been)
- □ We didn't have a holiday last year. (not We haven't had)
- "What did you do last night?" 'I stayed at home."
- □ William Shakespeare **lived from 1564 to 1616**. He was a writer. He wrote many plays and poems.

Use the past to ask When ...? or What time ...?:

- □ When did you buy your computer? (not When have you bought?)
- □ What time did Andy go out? (not What time has Andy gone out)

В

Compare:

present perfect

- □ I have lost my key.
 - (= I can't find it now)
- ☐ Ben **has gone** home. (= he isn't here *now*)
- □ Have you seen Kate?

(= where is she now?)

past now

- □ **Have** you **ever been** to Spain? (= in your life, until *now*)
- My friend is a writer. He has written many books.
- ☐ The letter hasn't arrived yet.
- □ We've lived in Singapore for six years. (= we live there *now*)

past

- □ I lost my key last week.
- ☐ Ben went home ten minutes ago.
- □ Did you see Kate on Saturday?

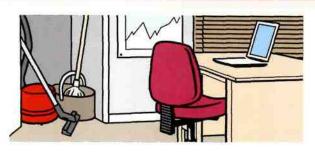
finished time — now

- Did you go to Spain last year?
- Shakespeare wrote many plays and poems.
- □ The letter didn't arrive yesterday.
- We lived in Glasgow for six years, but now we live in Singapore.

0.1	Complete the answers to the questions	š.			
	N		7		
	1 Have you seen Kate?	Yes, I saw her	ive minutes ago.		
	2 Have you started your new job?	Yes, I	last week.		
	3 Have your friends arrived?	Yes, they	at 5 o'clock.		
	4 Has Sarah gone away?	Yes,			
	5 Have you worn your new suit?	Yes,	yesterday.		
0.2	Are these sentences OK? Correct the v	erbs that are wrong. (The verbs a	re <u>underlined</u> .)		
	1 I've lost my key. I can't find it.	OK.			
	2 Have you seen Kate yesterday?	Did you see			
	3 I've finished my work at 2 o'clock.				
	4 I'm ready now. I've finished my work.				
	5 What time have you finished your work	k?			
	6 Sue isn't here. She's gone out.	D4-577000000-400-4000-4000000000000000000			
	7 Steve's grandmother has died two years	ago.			
	8 Where have you been last night?				
0.3	Put the verb in the present perfect or	past.			
	1 My friend is a writer. He has writt	en (write) many books.			
	2 We didn't have (not/have) a holi	day last year.			
	3 I (play) tenn				
	4 What time(you/go) to bed last night?				
	5(you/ever/meet) a famous person?				
	6 The weather (not/be) very good yesterday.				
	7 Kathy travels a lot. She				
	8 I (switch) of		ning.		
	9 I live in New York now, but I				
	10 'What's Canada like? Is it beautiful?'				
	Put the verb in the present perfect or				
	1 A: Have you ever been (you/eve	er/be) to Florida?			
	B: Yes, we went (go) there on holiday two years ago.				
	A: (you/ha	ve) a good time?			
	B: Yes, it(b				
	2 A: Where's Alan?	(you/see) him?			
	B: Yes, he(go) out a few minutes ago.			
	A: And Rachel?				
	B: I don't know, I	(not/see) her.			
	3 Rose works in a factory. She				
	Before that she (be) a waitress in a restaurant. She				
	(work) there for two years, but she				
	(not/enjoy) it very much.				
	4 A: Do you know Martin's sister?				
	B: I (see) her a few				
	(never/speak) to her.	(you/ever	r/speak) to her?		
	A: Yes. I(r	neet) her at a party last week. She's	very nice.		

is done was done (passive 1)

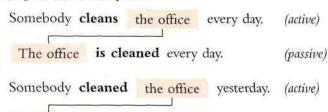
A



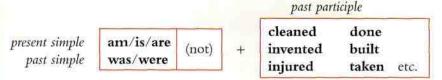
The office is cleaned every day.

The office was cleaned yesterday.

Compare active and passive:



B The passive is:



The past participle of regular verbs is **-ed** (clean**ed**/damag**ed** etc.). For a list of irregular past participles (**done/built/taken** etc.), see Appendix 2–3.

- □ Butter is made from milk.
- Oranges are imported into Britain.

The office was cleaned yesterday.

- ☐ How often are these rooms cleaned?
- ☐ I am never invited to parties.
- ☐ This house was built 100 years ago.
- ☐ These houses were built 100 years ago.
- ☐ When was the telephone invented?
- ☐ We weren't invited to the party last week.
- "Was anybody injured in the accident?" 'Yes, two people were taken to hospital."

(passive)

C

was/were born

- ☐ I was born in Berlin in 1989. (not I am born)
- 'Where were you born?' 'In Cairo.'

ע ו

passive + by ...

- □ The telephone was invented by Alexander Bell in 1876. (= Alexander Bell invented it)
- □ I was bitten by a dog a few days ago.
- Do you like these paintings? They were painted by a friend of mine.

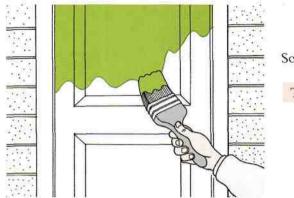
Exercises Unit 21

21.1	Write sentences from these words. Son Sentences 1–7 are present.	ne of the sentences are questions.
	1 (the office / clean / every day) 2 (these rooms / clean / every day?) 3 (glass / make / from sand) 4 (stamps / sell / in a post office) 5 (this room / not / use / very often) 6 (we / allow / to park here?) 7 (how / this word / pronounce?)	The office is cleaned every day. Are these rooms cleaned every day? Glass
	Sentences 8-15 are past.	
	8 (the office / clean / yesterday) 9 (the house / paint / last month) 10 (my phone / steal / a few days ago) 11 (three people / injure / in the accident) 12 (when / this bridge / build?) 13 (I / not / wake up / by the noise) 14 (how / these windows / break?) 15 (you / invite / to Jon's party last week?)	
21.2	These sentences are not correct. Correct	et them.
	1 This house built 100 years ago. 2 Football plays in most countries of the volume of the word with the letter send to the wrong at A garage is a place where cars repair. 5 Where are you born? 6 How many languages are speaking in Svorebody broke into our house, but not when was invented the bicycle?	ddress? witzerland?
21.3	Complete the sentences. Use the passiv	ve (present or past) of these verbs:
	1 The room is cleaned every day. 2 I saw an accident yesterday. Two people 3 Paper from w 4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. 5 'Where did you get this picture?' 'It 6 Many American programmes 7 'Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?' 8 'How old is this film?' 'It	rood. Two of the rooms to me by a friend of mine.' on British television. 'No. They, but they didn't go.'
21.4	THE PARTY OF THE P	
	2 (Sally / Manchester) Sally 3 (her parents / Ireland) Her 4 (you / ???) I	in Edinburgh.

(passive 2)

is being done has been done

is/are being ... (present continuous passive)



Somebody is painting the door . (active)

The door is being painted. (passive)

- ☐ My car is at the garage. It is being repaired. (= somebody is repairing it)
- □ Some new houses are being built opposite the park. (= somebody is building them)

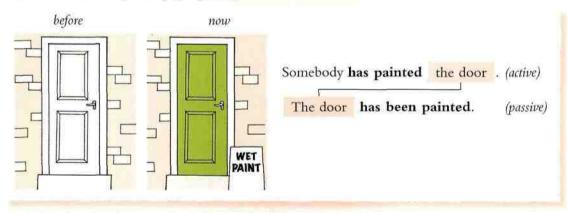
Compare the present continuous and present simple:

- ☐ The office is being cleaned at the moment. (continuous) The office is cleaned every day. (simple)
- ☐ In Britain football matches are often played at the weekend, but no matches are being played next weekend.

For the present continuous and present simple, see Units 8 and 25.

В

has/have been ... (present perfect passive)



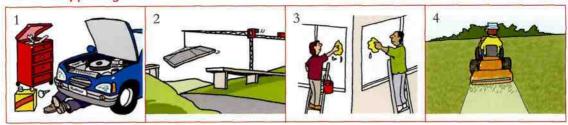
- ☐ My key has been stolen. (= somebody has stolen it)
- ☐ My keys have been stolen. (= somebody has stolen them)
- □ I'm not going to the party. I haven't been invited. (= nobody has invited me)
- ☐ Has this shirt been washed? (= has somebody washed it?)

Compare the present perfect and past simple:

- ☐ The room isn't dirty any more. It has been cleaned. (present perfect) The room was cleaned yesterday. (past simple)
- ☐ I can't find my keys. I think they've been stolen. (present perfect) My keys were stolen last week. (past simple)

For the present perfect and past simple, see Unit 20.

22.1 What's happening?

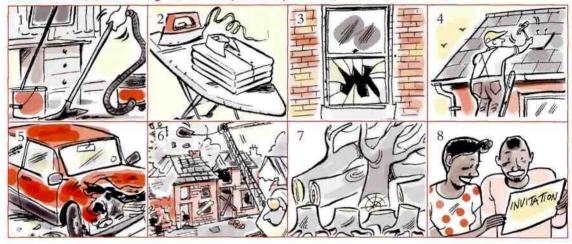


- 1 The car is being repaired.
- 3 The windows

2 A bridge

4 The grass

22.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (is/are being ...) or the present perfect (has/have been ...).



- 1 (the office / clean) The office is being cleaned.
- 2 (the shirts / iron) The shirts have been ironed.
- 3 (the window / break) The window
- 4 (the roof / repair) The roof
- 5 (the car / damage)
- 6 (the houses / knock / down)
- 7 (the trees / cut / down)
- 8 (they / invite / to a party)

22.3 Complete the sentences. (Study Unit 21 before you do this exercise.)

- 1 I can't use my office at the moment. It is being painted (paint).
- 2 We didn't go to the party. We weren't invited (not/invite).
- 3 The washing machine was broken, but it's OK now. It ____ (repair).
- 4 The washing machine _____ (repair) yesterday afternoon.
- 5 A factory is a place where things _____ (make).
- 6 How old are these houses? When ______ (they/build)?
- (the computer / use) at the moment? 7 A:
 - B: Yes, Steve is using it.
- _____(they/call)? 8 I've never seen these flowers before. What
- 9 My sunglasses _____ (steal) at the beach yesterday.
- 10 The bridge is closed at the moment. It(damage) last week and it _____ (not/repair) yet.

be/have/do in present and past tenses

oe (= am/is/are/was/were)	+ -ing (cleaning/working etc.)
am/is/are + -ing	Please be quiet. I'm working.
(present continuous)	☐ It isn't raining at the moment.
O MATCH BY CHANNEL WAS INVOICED THE SECTION OF THE	What are you doing this evening?
→ Units 3–4 and 25	what are you doing this evening.
was/were + -ing	I was working when she arrived.
(past continuous)	It wasn't raining, so we didn't need an umbr
→ Unit 13	■ What were you doing at 3 o'clock?
oe + past participle (cleaned/m	The second secon
am/is/are + past participle	☐ I'm never invited to parties.
(passive present simple)	Butter is made from milk.
→ Unit 21	☐ These offices aren't cleaned every day.
was/were + past participle	☐ The office was cleaned yesterday.
(passive past simple)	☐ These houses were built 100 years ago.
70 m	☐ How was the window broken?
→ Unit 21	☐ Where were you born?
have/has + past participle (clea have/has + past participle (present perfect)	ned/lost/eaten/been etc.) □ l've cleaned my room. □ Tom has lost his passport. □ Kate hasn't been to Canada.
→ Units 15–18	☐ Where have Paul and Nicole gone?
do/does/did + infinitive (clea	n/like/eat/go etc.)
do/does + infinitive	☐ I like coffee, but I don't like tea.
(present simple negative	Chris doesn't go out very often.
and questions)	☐ What do you usually do at weekends?
PARTITION OF THE PARTIT	Does Silvia live alone?
→ Units 6–7	L LOUS ON THE MYS MONEY
did + infinitive	☐ I didn't watch TV yesterday.
(past simple negative and	☐ It didn't rain last week.
Arrest March	
questions)	□ What time did Paul and Nicole go out?
questions) → Unit 12	

Exercises Unit 23

Write is/are or do/does.
1
Write am not/isn't/aren't or don't/doesn't. All these sentences are negative.
1 Tomdoesn't work at weekends. 2 I'm very tired. I want to go out this evening. 3 I'm very tired. I going out this evening. 4 Gary working this week. He's on holiday. 5 My parents are usually at home. They go out very often. 6 Nicole has travelled a lot, but she speak any foreign languages. 7 You can turn off the television. I watching it. 8 Liz has invited us to her party next week, but we going.
Write was/were/did/have/has.
1 Wherewereyour shoes made?6 What timeshe go?2you go out last night?7 Whenthese houses built?3 Whatyou doing at 10.30?8Steve arrived yet?4 Whereyour mother born?9 Whyyou go home early?5Barbara gone home?10 How longthey been married?
Write is/are/was/were/have/has.
1 Joe has lost his passport. 2 This bridge built ten years ago. 3 you finished your work yet? 4 This town is always clean. The streets cleaned every day. 5 Where you born? 6 I just made some coffee. Would you like some? 7 Glass made from sand. 8 This is a very old photograph. It taken a long time ago. 9 David bought a new car. Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.
damage rain enjoy go pronounce eat listen use open go understand
1 I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It'sraining 2 Why are you so tired? Did yougo to bed late last night? 3 Where are the chocolates? Have you them all? 4 How is your new job? Are you it? 5 My car was badly in the accident, but I was OK.

Unit **24**

Regular and irregular verbs

A

Regular verbs

The past simple and past participle of regular verbs is **-ed**: clean \rightarrow clean**ed** live \rightarrow lived paint \rightarrow paint**ed** study \rightarrow studi**ed**

Past simple (→ Unit 11)

- ☐ I cleaned my room yesterday.
- Charlie studied engineering at university.

Past participle

have/has + past participle (present perfect \rightarrow Units 15–18):

- ☐ I have cleaned my room.
- ☐ Tina has lived in London for ten years.

be (is/are/were/has been etc.) + past participle (passive \rightarrow Units 21–22):

- ☐ These rooms are cleaned every day.
- My car has been repaired.

В

Irregular verbs

The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs do not end in -ed:

past simple past participle made broke cut made broken cut

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same. For example:

past simple past participle make find buy cut

make find buy cut

make found bought cut

- ☐ I made a cake yesterday. (past simple)
- ☐ I have made some coffee. (past participle present perfect)
- □ Butter **is made** from milk. (past participle passive present)

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different. For example:

past simple past participle broken known begin go

broke knew began went broken known begun gone

- Somebody broke this window last night. (past simple)
- □ Somebody **has broken** this window. (past participle present perfect)
- ☐ This window was broken last night. (past participle passive past)

24.1			nple / past parti- same for all the			past simple and past
	1 make		6 enjo			hear
		cut				- make
	2 cut			***************************************		* Secret
	3 get		8 sit			
	4 bring					watch understand
	5 pay	10-10-1-1	10 happ	en	15	understand
24.2	Write	100	nple and past pa		e verbs.	
	1 breal	c broke	broker	18	come	
	2 begin	n		9	know	
	3 eat	************				
	4 drinl	s		11	go	
	5 drive	•		12	give	
	6 speal	s				
	7 write	3		14	forget	
24.3	Put the	e verb in th	ne right form.			
	1 I!	washed r	ny hands because	they were dirty.	(wash)	
	2 Som	ebody has	broken this wi	ndow. (break)	With a constant	
			vei		. (sleep)	
		57	a really good		St. 38055	
			a lot while we	The state of the s	117 107 117	
			my bag. (los		50 05 1	it? (see)
			as			
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	to bed early bed		SECOND CO.	
			your w			
			entre was			o. (build)
			to drive wl			(- 11-1)
			a horse		7	
					her for a	long time. (know)
			and			Sec. 1
						ar. Have you ever
			in a marathon? (1
			0.5		and the same of	la Valentinia de la Companya de la C
24.4	Comple	ete these so	entences. Choose	from the box	and put t	he verb into the correct form.
	cost	drive	fly make	meet	sell	
	speak	swim	tell think	wake up	win .	
	-	mada	7 1000 1000			
			some coffee. W			
			John al			20 9 10-000
	177	4 1750		575.0 S500	200	t we the game.
			t I've never			
			by loud			
			d into the river ar			
		you like the				
	9		anguages are			
					ise we stay	ed in an expensive hotel.
		the party of the second second second second second	a	Charles and Charles and Charles	0.00	
			r the concert were			
	12 A bin	rd	in through	the open wind	ow while v	we were having our dinner.

Unit 24

What are you doing tomorrow?

A



today is Sunday



They are playing tennis (now).

He is playing tennis tomorrow.

We use am/is/are + -ing (present continuous) for something happening now:

- "Where are Sue and Amanda?" 'They're playing tennis in the park.'
- Please be quiet. I'm working.

We also use am/is/are + -ing for the future (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- Andrew is playing tennis tomorrow.
- ☐ I'm not working next week.

В

I am doing something tomorrow = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it:

- Sophie is going to the dentist on Friday. (= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- ☐ We're having a party next weekend.
- Are you meeting your friends tonight?
- □ What are you doing tomorrow evening?
- I'm not going out tonight. I'm staying at home.

You can also say '1'm going to do something' (\rightarrow Unit 26).



Be careful! Do not use the present simple (I stay / do you go etc.) to say what somebody has arranged to do:

- I'm staying at home this evening. (not I stay)
- ☐ Are you going out tonight? (not Do you go)
- Lisa isn't coming to the party next week. (not Lisa doesn't come)

But we use the present simple for timetables, programmes, trains, buses etc.:

- ☐ The train arrives at 7.30.
- □ What time does the film finish?

Compare:

present continuous (usually for people)

- ☐ I'm going to a concert tomorrow.
- □ What time **are** you **leaving**?

present simple (for timetables, programmes etc.)

- □ The concert starts at 7.30.
- What time does your train leave?

25.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?



_		
1	Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.	
	Richardto the cir	
	Rachel	
4		lunch with Ken.
5		
٧	Vrite questions. All the sentences are for	uture.
1	(you / go / out / tonight?)	Are you going out tonight?
2	(you / work / next week?)	
3	(what / you / do / tomorrow evening?)	
	(what time / your friends / come?)	
	(when / Liz / go / on holiday?)	
V	Vrite sentences about yourself. What a	re you doing in the next few days?
1	I'm staying at home tonight.	
2	I'm going to the theatre on Monday	
4		
5		
6		
	out the verb in the present continuous (he is leaving etc.) or present simple (the train
1	" Are you going (you/go) out tonigh	t?' 'No I'm too tired'
	We're going (we/go) to a concert to	
		(she/get) married next month!
	A: My parents	
	B: Oh, that's nice. Where	man menanan - in the mili menanan ang tanggapat - ang a-ang gaji ng tang areting
5		oment. The course
	(finish) on Friday.	
6	There's a party tomorrow night, but	(I/not/go).
		ut with some friends tonight. Why don't you come
	G 27. 9	ve/meet) outside the Royal Hotel at 8 o'clock.
8		(you/get) home after the party tomorrow? By taxi?
		(leave) at midnight.
9	A: Do you want to go to the cinema ton	
	B: Yes, what time	
10		and the state of t
1U	A: What	. (you/do) tomorrow afternoon?

I'm going to ...

A

I'm going to do something



She is going to watch TV this evening.

We use am/is/are going to ... for the future;

I	am	(not) going to	do
he/she/it	is		drink
we/you/they	are		watch

am	I		buy ?
is	he/she/it	going to	eat ?
are	we/you/they	1000	wear?

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it:

I decided to do it

Past

Past

Past

Prim going to do it

future

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the wedding next week?
- 'Your hands are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to wash them.'
- ☐ Are you going to invite Martin to your party?

We also use the present continuous (I am doing) for the future, usually for arrangements $(\rightarrow \text{Unit } 25)$:

☐ I am playing tennis with Julia tomorrow.

C

В

Something is going to happen

Something **is going to happen** = we can see *now* that it is sure to happen:

- □ Look at the sky! It's going to rain. (black clouds now → rain)
- Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready. I'm going to be late.

(9 o'clock now and not ready → late)



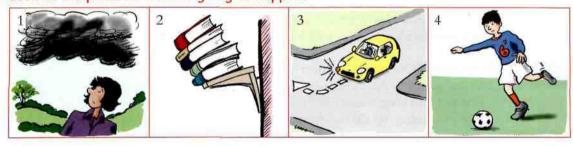
26.1 What are these people saying?



26.2 Complete the sentences. Use going to + these verbs:

	do eat give lie do	wn stay	walk	-wash-	watch	-wear-
	My hands are dirty. I'm going					
2	What are you going to wear	to the party to	onight?			
3	It's a nice day. I don't want to tak	e the bus. I				5.80
4	Steve is going to London next we	ek. He			with some	e friends.
5	I'm hungry. I		this sar	ndwich.		
6	It's Sharon's birthday next week. Y	We			her a pr	esent.
7	Sue says she's feeling very tired. S	he			for an h	our.
	There's a good film on Channel 6					
9	What Rachel	3	v	when she lea	ives school?	

26.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?



- 1 It's going to rain.
- 2 The shelf
- 3 The car
- 4 He

26.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

1	ľ'm
2	

3

will/shall 1

Α



SARAH

Sarah goes to work every day. She is always there from 8.30 until 4.30.

It is 11 o'clock now. Sarah is at work.

At 11 o'clock yesterday, she was at work

At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she will be at warm

will + infinitive (will be / will win / will come etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	will ('ll) will not (won't)	be win eat come etc.
----------------------------	--------------------------------	-------------------------------

will	I/we/you/they he/she/it	be? win? eat?
		come? en

'll = will: I'll (I will) / you'll / she'll etc.

won't = will not: I won't (= I will not) / you won't / she won't etc.

B We use will for the future (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- ☐ Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Madrid. Tomorrow she'll be in Rome. Next week she'll be in Tokyo.
- ☐ You can call me this evening. I'll be at home.
- □ Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds will eat it.
- ☐ We'll probably go out this evening.
- □ Will you be at home this evening?
- ☐ I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- □ Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.

We often say I think ... will ...:

- □ I think Kelly will pass the exam.
- □ I don't think it will rain this afternoon.
- ☐ Do you think the exam will be difficult?

We do not use will for things we have already arranged or decided to do (→ Units 25–26):

- ☐ We're going to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? (not We will go
- ☐ I'm not working tomorrow. (not I won't work)
- ☐ Are you going to do the exam? (not Will you do)

D shall

You can say I shall (= I will) and we shall (= we will):

- ☐ I shall be late tomorrow. or I will (Pll) be late tomorrow.
- ☐ I think we shall win. or I think we will (we'll) win.

But do not use shall with you/they/he/she/it:

☐ Tom will be late. (not Tom shall be)

Exercises

Helen is travelling in Europe.	Complete the sentences	with she was	s, she's or she'll be
--------------------------------	------------------------	--------------	-----------------------

- 1 Yesterday she was in Paris.
- 2 Tomorrow in Amsterdam.
- 3 Last week ______ in Barcelona.
- 4 Next week ______ in London.
- 5 At the moment _____ in Brussels.
- 6 Three days ago _____ in Munich.
- 7 At the end of her trip ______ very tired.



Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use:

I'll be ... or I'll probably be ... or I don't know where I'll be.

- i (at 10 o'clock tomorrow) I'll probably be on the beach.
- 2 (one hour from now)
- 3 (at midnight tonight)
- 4 (at 3 o'clock tomorrow afternoon)
- 5 (two years from now)

Put in will ('II) or won't.

- Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.
- 2 'Are you ready yet?' 'Not yet. I ______ be ready in five minutes.'
- I'm going away for a few days. I'm leaving tonight, so I ______ be at home tomorrow.
- # It _____ rain, so you don't need to take an umbrella.
- 5 A: I don't feel very well this evening.
 - B: Well, go to bed early and you ______ feel better in the morning.
- 6 It's Bill's birthday next Monday. He ______ be 25.
- Tm sorry I was late this morning. It _____ happen again.

Write sentences with I think ... or I don't think

- Kelly will pass the exam) I think Kelly will pass the exam.
- 2 (Kelly won't pass the exam) . I don't think Kelly will pass the exam.
- (we'll win the game) I
- 4 (I won't be here tomorrow)
- won't be here temeriou
- 5 (Sue will like her present)
- they won't get married)
- vou won't enjoy the film)

Which is right? (Study Unit 25 before you do this exercise.)

- We'll go / We're going to the theatre tonight. We've got tickets. (We're going is right)
- What will you do / are you doing tomorrow evening?' 'Nothing. I'm free.'
- They'll go / They're going away tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8.40.
- I'm sure your aunt will lend / is lending us some money. She's very rich.
- Why are you putting on your coat?' 'I'll go / I'm going out.'
- Do you think Claire will phone / is phoning us tonight?
- Steve can't meet us on Saturday. He'll work / He's working.
- Will you / Shall you be at home tomorrow evening?
- What are your plans for the weekend?
 - Some friends will come / are coming to stay with us.

will/shall 2

A

В



You can use I'll ... (I will) when you offer something or decide to do something:

- ig 'My bag is very heavy.' 'I'll carry it for you.'
- "I'll phone you tomorrow, OK?" 'OK, bye."

We often say I think I'll ... / I don't think I'll ... when we decide to do something:

- I'm tired. I think I'll go to bed early tonight.
- ☐ It's a nice day. I think I'll sit outside.
- It's raining. I don't think I'll go out.

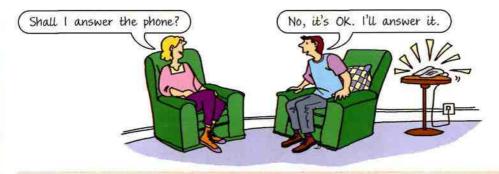
Do not use the present simple (I go / I phone etc.) in sentences like these:

- ☐ I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? (not I phone you)
- ☐ I think I'll go to bed early. (not I go to bed)

Do not use I'll ... for something you decided before (→ Units 25-26):

- ☐ I'm working tomorrow. (not I'll work)
- ☐ There's a good film on TV tonight. I'm going to watch it. (not I'll watch)
- ☐ What are you doing at the weekend? (not What will you do)

Shall I ... ? Shall we ... ?



Shall I / Shall we ...? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?

- ☐ It's very warm in this room. **Shall I open** the window?
- 'Shall I phone you this evening?' 'Yes, please.'
- I'm going to a party tonight. What shall I wear?
- ☐ It's a nice day. Shall we go for a walk?
- □ Where **shall we go** for our holidays this year?
- Let's go out this evening.' 'OK, what time shall we meet?'

What are you doing tomorrow? \rightarrow Unit 25 I'm going to ... \rightarrow Unit 26 will/shall 1 \rightarrow Unit 27 Let's \rightarrow Units 35, 53

28.1 Complete the sentences. Use I'll (I will) + these verbs:

	tarry uo ca	it selld show sit stay	
	7		£
1	My bag is very heavy.	l'll carry it for you	u.
2	Enjoy your holiday.	Thank you you a postcare	d.
3	I don't want this banana.	Well, I'm hungry.	it.
4	Do you want a chair?	No, it's OK. on the floo	r.
5	Did you phone Jenny?	Oh no, I forgot it no	W.
6	Are you coming with me?	No, I don't think so. her	e.
7	How do you use this camera?	Give it to me andyou	u.

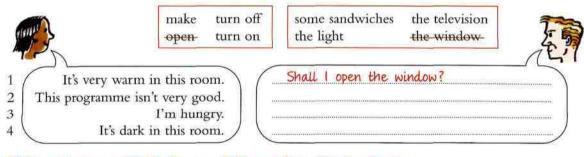
28.2 Complete the sentences. Use I think I'll ... or I don't think I'll ... + these verbs:

	buy buy go have play	
1	It's cold today. I don't think I'll go oi	ut.
2	I'm hungry. I something to e	at.
3	I feel very tired. tenn	is.
4	I like this hat.	it.
5	This camera is too expensive	it

28.3 Which is right?

- 1 I phone / I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? (I'll phone is right)
- 2 I haven't done the shopping yet. I do / I'll do it later.
- 3 I like sport. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sport on TV.
- 4 I need some exercise. I think I go / I'll go for a walk.
- 5 Gerry is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
- 6 'This letter is for Rose.' 'OK. I give / I'll give / I'm going to give it to her.'
- 7 A: Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening?
 - B: Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.
- 8 I can't go out with you tomorrow night. I work / I'm working / I'll work.

28.4 Write sentences with Shall I ... ? Choose from the two boxes.



28.5 Write sentences with Shall we ... ? Choose from the two boxes.

	what where what time who	buy invite go meet	
1 Let's go out tonight. 2 Let's have a holiday.	OK, what time shall we	meet?	
3 Let's spend some money.	OK,	***************************************	***************************************
Let's have a party.	OK,		·····

can and could

A





He can play the piano.

can + infinitive (can do / can play / can come etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	can can't (cannot)	do play see come etc.
----------------------------	-----------------------	--------------------------------

can	I/we/you/they he/she/it	do? play? see? come? etc.
-----	----------------------------	------------------------------------

В

I can do something = I know how to do it, or it is possible for me to do it:

- ☐ I can play the piano. My brother can play the piano too.
- ☐ Sarah can speak Italian, but she can't speak Spanish.
- Can you swim?' 'Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer.'
- ☐ 'Can you change twenty pounds?' 'I'm sorry, I can't.'
- ☐ I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel can't come.

C

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use could/couldn't:

- ☐ When I was young, I could run very fast.
- ☐ Before Maria came to Britain, she **couldn't understand** much English. Now she **can understand** everything.
- □ I was tired last night, but I couldn't sleep.
- ☐ I had a party last week, but Paul and Rachel couldn't come.

D

Can you ... ? Could you ... ? Can I ... ? Could I ... ?

We use Can you ...? or Could you ...? when we ask people to do things:

- ☐ Can you open the door, please? or Could you open the door, please?
- □ Can you wait a moment, please? or Could you wait ...?

We use Can I have ...? or Could I have ...? to ask for something:

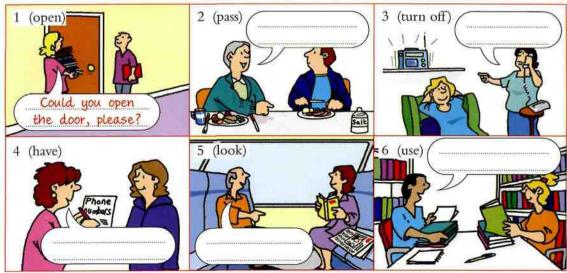
(in a shop) Can I have these postcards, please? or Could I have ...?

Can I ... ? or Could I ... ? = is it OK to do something?:

- □ Tom, can I borrow your umbrella? or Tom, could I borrow your umbrella?
- (on the phone) Hello, can I speak to Gary, please? or ... could I speak ...?

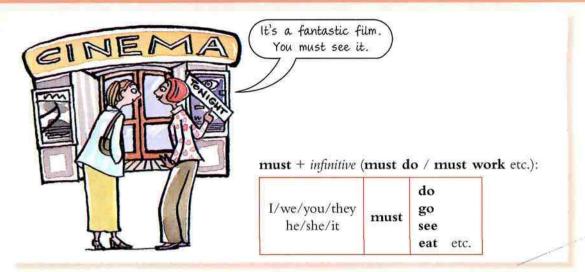
Exercises Unit 30

30.1	Ask Steve if he can do these things:
	You Can you swim? Can you swim? Note the service of the service
	Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use I can or I can't.
	7 I
	8 11
	9
	Complete these sentences. Use can or can't + one of these verbs: -come find hear see speak 1 I'm sorry, but we can't come to your party next Saturday. 2 I like this hotel room. You the mountains from the window. 3 You are speaking very quietly. I you. 4 Have you seen my bag? I it. 5 Catherine got the job because she five languages.
30.3	Complete these sentences. Use can't or couldn't + one of these verbs:
	decide eat find go go sleep 1 I was tired, but I couldn't sleep 2 I wasn't hungry yesterday. I my dinner. 3 Kate doesn't know what to do. She 4 I wanted to speak to Martin yesterday, but I him. 5 James to the concert next Saturday. He has to work. 6 Paula to the meeting last week. She was ill.
30.4	What do you say in these situations? Use can or could.



must mustn't don't need to

A



В

I must (do something) = I need to do it:

- I'm very hungry. I must eat something.
- It's a fantastic film. You must see it.
- ☐ The windows are very dirty. We must clean them.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use had to ... (not must):

- ☐ I was very hungry. I had to eat something. (not I must eat)
- □ We had to walk home last night. There were no buses. (not We must walk)

C

mustn't (= must not)

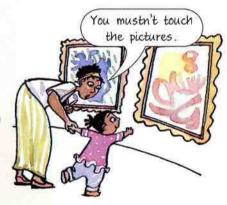
I mustn't (do something) = it is necessary not to do it, it is the wrong thing to do:

- I must hurry. I mustn't be late.
- □ I mustn't forget to phone Jane.

(= I must remember to phone her)

- ☐ Be happy! You mustn't be sad. (= don't be sad)
- ☐ You mustn't touch the pictures.

(= don't touch the pictures)



D

don't need to

I don't need (to do something) = it is not necessary:

- □ I don't need to go yet. I can stay a little longer.
- ☐ You don't need to shout. I can hear you OK.

You can also say don't have to ...:

☐ I don't have to go yet. I can stay a little longer.

Compare don't need to and mustn't:

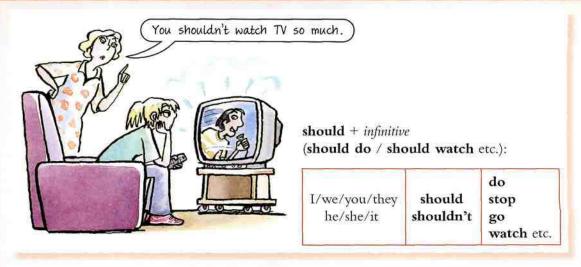
- ☐ You don't need to go. You can stay here if you want.
- ☐ You mustn't go. You must stay here.

Exercises Unit 31

31.1	Complete the sentences. Use must + these verbs:
	be eat go learn meet wash win
	1 I'm very hungry. I must eat something. 2 Marilyn is a very interesting person. You her. 3 My hands are dirty. I them. 4 You to drive. It will be very useful. 5 I to the post office. I need some stamps. 6 The game tomorrow is very important for us. We patient.
31.2	Write I must or I had to.
	1
31.3	Complete the sentences. Use mustn't or don't need to + one of these verbs:
	1 I don't need to go home yet. I can stay a little longer. 2 We have a lot of time. We
31.4	Find the sentences with the same meaning.
	1 We can leave the meeting early. 2 We must leave the meeting early. 3 We mustn't leave the meeting early. 4 We had to leave the meeting early. 5 We don't need to leave the meeting early. 6 We can't stay until the end. 7 D We can stay until the end. 8 D We can stay until the end. 9 D We can stay until the end. 9 E We don't need to stay until the end. 9 E We don't need to stay until the end. 9 D We can stay until the end.
31.5	Write must / mustn't / had to / don't need to. 1 Youdon't need togo. You can stay here if you want. 2 It's a fantastic film. Youmustsee it. 3 The restaurant won't be busy tonight. Wereserve a table. 4 I was very busy last week. I work every evening. 5 I want to know what happened. You tell me. 6 You tell Sue what happened. I don't want her to know. 7 I hurry or I'll be late. 8 'Why were you so late?' 'I wait half an hour for a bus.' 9 We decide now. We can decide later.
	10 It's Lisa's birthday next week. I forget to buy her a present.

should

A



- You **should** do something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do:
 - ☐ Tom doesn't study enough. He **should study** harder.
 - ☐ It's a good film. You should go and see it.
 - ☐ When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.
- You shouldn't do something = it is not a good thing to do.

Shouldn't = should not:

- ☐ Tom shouldn't go to bed so late.
- ☐ You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn't watch** TV so much.
- D We often say I think ... should ...
 - I think ... should ...:
 - ☐ I think Lisa should buy some new clothes. (= I think it is a good idea.)
 - ☐ It's late. I think I should go home now.
 - A: Shall I buy this coat?
 B: Yes, I think you should.
 - I don't think ... should ... :
 - ☐ I don't think you should work so hard.

(= I don't think it is a good idea.)

☐ I don't think we should go yet. It's too early.

Do you think ... should ... ?:

- Do you think I should buy this hat?
- ☐ What time do you think we should go home?



- Must is stronger than should:
 - Lt's a good film. You should go and see it.
 - ☐ It's a fantastic film. You must go and see it.
 - Another way to say should is ought to:
 - ☐ It's a good film. You **ought to go** and see it. (= you should go)
 - ☐ I think Lisa ought to buy some new clothes. (= Lisa should buy)

I have to ...

A



I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it

I/we/you/they	have	to do to work
he/she/it	has	to go to wear etc.

- ☐ I'll be late for work tomorrow. I have to go to the dentist.
- □ Jane starts work at 7 o'clock, so she has to get up at 6.
- ☐ You have to pass a test before you can get a driving licence.

B The past (yesterday / last week etc.) is had to ...:

- □ I was late for work yesterday. I had to go to the dentist.
- □ We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.

In questions and negatives we use do/does (present) and did (past):

present

C

do	I/we/you/they	have to?	
does	he/she/it	nave to	

I/we/you/they	don't	have to
he/she/it	doesn't	nave to

past

did	I/we/you/they he/she/it	have to?
did	NOVA	have to?

I/we/you/they he/she/it	didn't have to

- □ What time **do you have to go** to the dentist tomorrow?
- □ Does Jane have to work on Sundays?
- □ Why did they have to leave the party early?

I don't have to (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:

- ☐ I'm not working tomorrow, so I don't have to get up early.
- □ Ian doesn't have to work very hard. He's got an easy job.
- □ We didn't have to wait very long for the bus it came in a few minutes.

D must and have to

You can use **must** or **have to** when you say what *you* think is necessary, when you give *your* opinion:

☐ It's a fantastic film. You must see it. or You have to see it.

When you are not giving your personal opinion, use have to (not must). Compare:

- ☐ Jane won't be at work this afternoon. She **has to** go to the doctor. (this is not my personal opinion it is a fact)
- ☐ Jane isn't well. She doesn't want to go to the doctor, but I told her she **must** go. (this is my personal opinion)

must / mustn't / don't need to → Unit 31 WWW.IELTSPOP.COM

Exercises Unit 33

33.1	do hit read speak travel wear
	1 My eyes are not very good. I have to wear glasses. 2 At the end of the course all the students a test. 3 Sarah is studying literature. She a lot of books. 4 Albert doesn't understand much English. You very slowly to him. 5 Kate is not often at home. She a lot in her job. 6 In tennis you the ball over the net.
33.2	Complete the sentences. Use have to or had to + these verbs:
	answer buy change go walk
	1 We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.
	2 It's late. I now. I'll see you tomorrow.
	3 I went to the supermarket after work yesterday. I some food. 4 This train doesn't go all the way to London. You at Bristol.
	5 We did an exam yesterday. We six questions out of ten.
00.0	
33.3	Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.
	1 (I have to get up early tomorrow.) (What time do you have to get up ?)
	2 George had to wait a long time. How long ? 3 Liz has to go somewhere. Where ?
	3 Liz has to go somewhere. Where ? 4 We had to pay a lot of money. How much ?
	5 I have to do some work. What exactly ?
33.4	Write sentences with don't/doesn't/didn't have to
	1 Why are you going out? You don't have to go out.
	2 Why is Sue waiting? She
	3 Why did you get up early? You
	4 Why is Paul working so hard? He
	5 Why do you want to leave now? We
33.5	Which is correct? Sometimes must and have to are both correct. Sometimes only one is
	correct.
	1 It's a fantastic film. You must see / have to see it. (both are correct)
	2 Julia won't be at work this afternoon. She must go / has to go to the doctor.
	(has to go is correct)
	3 You can't park your car here for nothing. You must pay / have to pay.
	4 I didn't have any money with me last night, so I <u>must borrow</u> / had to borrow some.
	 5 I eat too much chocolate. I really <u>must stop / have to stop</u>. 6 Paul is in a hurry. He <u>must meet / has to meet somebody in five minutes</u>.
	7 What's wrong? You must tell / have to tell me. I want to help you.
33.6	Write some things that you (or your friends or family) have to do or had to do.
50.0	1 (every day) I have to travel ten miles every day.
	2 (every day)
	3 (yesterday)
	4 (tomorrow)

Would you like ... ? I'd like ...

Α

Would you like ...? = Do you want ...?

We use Would you like ...? to offer things:

- □ A: Would you like some coffee?
 - B: No, thank you.
- ☐ A: Would you like a chocolate?
 - B: Yes, please.
- ☐ A: What would you like, tea or coffee?
 - B: Tea, please.



We use Would you like to ...? to invite somebody:

- □ Would you like to go for a walk?
- ☐ A: Would you like to have dinner with us on Sunday?
 - B: Yes, I'd love to. (= I would love to have dinner with you)
- ☐ What would you like to do this evening?

В

I'd like ... is a polite way to say 'I want'. I'd like = I would like:

- ☐ I'm thirsty. I'd like a drink.
- (in a tourist office) I'd like some information about hotels, please.
- I'm feeling tired. I'd like to stay at home this evening.

C

Would you like ... ? and Do you like ... ?

Would you like ... ? / I'd like ...



Would you like some tea? = Do you want some tea?

- A: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight? (= do you want to go tonight?)
 - B: Yes, I'd love to.
- ☐ **I'd like** an orange, please. (= can I have an orange?)
- What would you like to do next weekend?

Do you like ... ? / I like ...



Do you like tea? = Do you think tea is nice?

- A: Do you like going to the cinema? (in general)
 - B: Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.
- ☐ I like oranges. (in general)
- What do you like to do at weekends?

34.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use Would you like ...?



34.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use Would you like to ... ?

- 1 You want to go to the cinema tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go) You say: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?
- 2 You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play too. (play) You say:
- 3 You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will come. (come) You say:
- 4 It's raining and Sue is going out. She hasn't got an umbrella, but you have one. (borrow) You say:

34.3 Which is right?

- 1 'Do you like / Would you like a chocolate?' 'Yes, please.' (Would you like is right)
- 2 'Do you like / Would you like bananas?' 'Yes, I love them.'
- 3 'Do you like / Would you like an ice-cream?' 'No, thank you.'
- 4 'What do you like / would you like to drink?' 'A glass of water, please.'
- 5 'Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?' 'Not now. Perhaps later.'
- 6 I like / I'd like tomatoes, but I don't eat them very often.
- 7 What time do you like / would you like to have dinner this evening?
- 8 'Do you like / Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I'm not hungry.'
- 9 'Do you like / Would you like your new job?' 'Yes, I'm enjoying it.'
- 10 I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.
- 11 'I like / I'd like a sandwich, please.' 'Sure. What kind of sandwich?'
- 12 'What kind of music do you like / would you like?' 'All kinds.

Do this! Don't do that! Let's do this!

A



We use come/look/go/wait/do/be etc. when we tell somebody to do something:

- Come here and look at this!' 'What is it?'
- □ I don't want to talk to you. Go away!
- ☐ I'm not ready yet. Please wait for me.
- □ Please be quiet. I'm working.

also

- □ Bye! **Have** a good holiday! / **Have** a nice time! / **Have** a good flight! / **Have** fun! (= I hope you have a good holiday etc.)
- ☐ 'Have a chocolate.' 'Oh, thanks.' (= would you like a chocolate?)

В

We use don't ... when we tell somebody not to do something:

- ☐ Be careful! Don't fall.
- □ Please **don't go**. Stay here with me.
- ☐ Be here on time. **Don't be** late.

C

You can say Let's ... when you want people to do things with you. Let's = Let us.

- ☐ It's a nice day. **Let's go** out. (= you and I can go out)
- Come on! Let's dance.

 (= you and I can dance)
- ☐ Are you ready? Let's go.
- Let's have fish for dinner tonight.
- ☐ A: Shall we go out tonight?

 B: No, I'm tired. **Let's stay** at home.



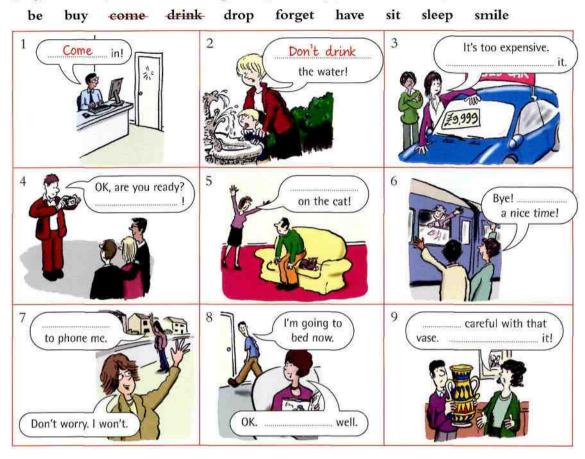
The negative is Let's not ...:

- ☐ It's cold. Let's not go out. Let's stay at home.
- Let's not have fish for dinner tonight. Let's have chicken.

Or you can say Don't let's ...:

☐ It's cold. **Don't let's** go out. Let's stay at home.

35.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Some sentences are positive (buy/come etc.) and some are negative (don't buy / don't come etc.). Use these verbs:



35.2 Complete the sentences. Use let's with:

go to a restaurant

go for a swim

1	Would you like to play tennis? No,	let's go for a swim
2	Do you want to walk home? No,	
3	Shall I put a CD on? No,	
4	Shall we have dinner at home? No,	
5	Would you like to go now? / No,	
1	Shall I wait for you?	No, don't wait for me.
2	Shall we go home now?	No, let's not go home yet.
3	61 11	
	Shall we go out?	
4	Do you want me to close the window?	
4 5		= A0-
	Do you want me to close the window?	= A0-
5	Do you want me to close the window? Shall I phone you tonight?	

take a taxi

wait a little

watch TV

I used to ...



Dave **used to work** in a factory. Now he **works** in a supermarket.

Dave **used to work** in a factory = he worked in a factory before, but he doesn't work there now:

he used to work he works past now

B

You can say I used to work ... / she used to have ... / they used to be ... etc.:

used to have

very long hair

I/you/we/they he/she/it	used to	be work have play etc.
----------------------------	---------	---------------------------------

- □ When I was a child, I used to like chocolate.
- □ I used to read a lot of books, but I don't read much these days.
- Liz has got short hair now, but it used to be very long.
- ☐ They used to live in the same street as us, so we used to see them a lot. But we don't see them very often these days.
- ☐ Helen **used to have** a piano, but she sold it a few years ago.

The negative is I didn't use to ...:

□ When I was a child, I didn't use to like tomatoes.

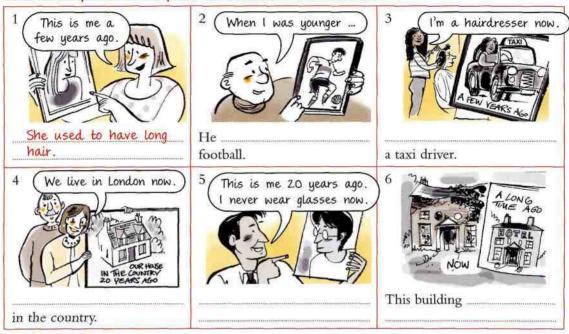
The question is **did you use to** ...?:

☐ Where **did** you **use to live** before you came here?

We use used to ... only for the past. You cannot say 'I use to ...' for the present:

- ☐ I used to play tennis. These days I play golf. (not I use to play golf)
- ☐ We usually **get** up early. (not We use to get up early)

36.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with used to



36.2 Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.



Write sentences about Karen with used to

1	She used to swim every day.	4	
2	She	5	
3	2000	6	

36.3 Complete these sentences. Use used to or the present simple (I play / he lives etc.).

1 I used to play tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago. 'Yes, I play basketball.' 2 'Do you do any sport?' one, but I sold it.' 3 'Have you got a car?' 'No, I 4 George a waiter. Now he's the manager of a hotel. 5 'Do you go to work by car?' 'Sometimes, but most days I by train.' 6 When I was a child, I never meat, but I eat it now. 7 Mary loves watching TV. She TV every evening. 8 We ______ near the airport, but we moved to the city centre a few years ago. 9 Normally I start work at 7 o'clock, so I up very early. when you were a child? 10 What games _____you ___

there is there are

A





SUNDAY MONDAY TUESDAY WEDNESDAY THURSDAY FRIDAY SATURDAY

7

There's a man on the roof.

There's a train at 10.30.

There are seven days in a week.

singular

there is ...

(there's)

is there ...?

there is not ... (there isn't

or there's not)

☐ There's a big tree in the garden.

☐ There's nothing on TV tonight.

☐ A: Have you got any money?

B: Yes, there's some in my bag.

☐ A: Excuse me, is there a hotel near here?

B: Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.

☐ We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

plural

there are ...

are there ...?

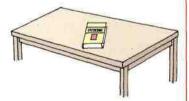
there are not ...

(there aren't)

- ☐ There are some big trees in the garden.
- ☐ There are a lot of accidents on this road.
- □ A: Are there any restaurants near here?
 B: Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.
- ☐ This restaurant is very quiet. There aren't many people here.
- ☐ How many players are there in a football team?
- ☐ There are 11 players in a football team.

b there is and it is

there is



it is



There's a book on the table. (not It's a book on the table.)

I like this book . It's interesting. (It = this book)

Compare:

- "What's that noise?' 'It's a train.' (It = that noise)
 - There's a train at 10.30. It's a fast train. (It = the 10.30 train)
- ☐ There's a lot of salt in this soup.

I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (It = this soup)

3 a l 4 a s 5 an 6 a i	castle? y restaurants? nospital? swimming pool? y cinemas? university? y big hotels?	No Yes (a lot) Yes No Yes (two) No No	2 Th 3 4 5		restaurants.
	sentences abou	ut your town	(or a tow	n that you know). Use There is/are or T
-	here are a few	rostaurants			
100-	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY	****************************			
4				***************************************	********
5					4(1)==1
6					
Mrite	there is / there	ien't / is the	ere or the	re are / there a	en't / are there.
				any old buildi	
2 I		a DHOL	ograph or	your brother in th	ie newspaper:
				here?' 'Vec at	
3 'Ex	cuse me,	a	bank near		the end of the street.'
3 'Ex	cuse me,	five people in	bank near my family	: my parents, my t	the end of the street.' wo sisters and me.
3 'Exe 4 5 'Ho	ow many students	a five people in	bank near my family in	: my parents, my t the class?' 'Twe	the end of the street.' two sisters and me. enty.'
3 'Exe 4 5 'Ho 6 The	ow many students	five people in s very quiet.	bank near my family in	: my parents, my t	the end of the street.' wo sisters and me. enty.'
3 'Exc 4 5 'Ho 6 The 7 8	ow many students e road is usually v	five people in sery quiet a bus from the	bank near my family in city centr	: my parents, my the class?' "Twe much traff te to the airport?' verything is OK.'	the end of the street.' two sisters and me. enty.' ic. 'Yes, every 20 minutes
3 'Exc 4 5 'Ho 6 The 7 8	ow many students e road is usually v	five people in sery quiet a bus from the	bank near my family in city centr	: my parents, my the class?' 'Two much traff to the airport?'	the end of the street.' two sisters and me. enty.' ic. 'Yes, every 20 minutes
3 'Exe 4 5 'Ho 6 The 7 8 9	ow many students e road is usually v	five people in sery quiet. a bus from the any problems? nowhere to si	bank near my family in city centr ' 'No, o	: my parents, my the class?' "Twe much traff te to the airport?' verything is OK.'	the end of the street.' two sisters and me. enty.' ic. 'Yes, every 20 minutes any chairs.
3 'Exe 4 5 'Ho 6 The 7 8 9	ow many students road is usually v	a five people in sery quiet	bank near my family in city centr ' 'No, o	: my parents, my the class?' 'Twe much traffe to the airport?' everything is OK.'	the end of the street.' two sisters and me. enty.' ic. 'Yes, every 20 minutes any chairs.
3 'Exe 4 5 'Ho 6 The 7 8 9	ow many students to road is usually versemences with	a five people in sery quiet	bank near my family in city centr ' 'No, or down. Choose	: my parents, my the class?' 'Twe much traffe to the airport?' verything is OK.'	the end of the street.' two sisters and me. enty.' ic. 'Yes, every 20 minutes any chairs.

5

5 '_____anything good on TV tonight?' 'Yes, _____a film at 8.15.'

37.5 Write there's / is there or it's / is it.

1 ' There's a train at 10.30. ' Is it a fast train?'

6 'What's that building?' ' a school.'

2 I'm not going to buy this shirt. _____ too expensive.

7 '......a restaurant in this hotel?' 'No, I'm afraid not.'

3 'What's wrong?' something in my eye.'
4 a red car outside your house. yours?

there will be

there was/were there has/have been

A

there was / there were (past)



There is a train every hour.

The time now is 11.15. There was a train at 11 o'clock.

Compare:

there is/are (present)

- ☐ **There is** a good film on TV tonight.
- ☐ We are staying at a very big hotel. There are 550 rooms.
- ☐ Are there any phone messages for me this morning?
- I'm hungry, but there isn't anything to eat.

there was/were (past)

- ☐ There was a good film on TV last night.
- □ We stayed at a very big hotel. There were 550 rooms.
- ☐ Were there any phone messages for me vesterday?
- ☐ I was hungry when I got home, but there wasn't anything to eat.

there has been / there have been (present perfect)



- □ Look! There's been an accident. (there's been = there has been)
- ☐ This road is very dangerous. There have been many accidents.

Compare there was (past):

☐ There was an accident last night. (not There has been an accident last night.)

For past simple and present perfect, see Unit 20.

C

there will be

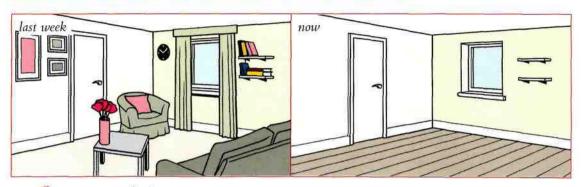


- ☐ Do you think there will be a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- ☐ The manager of the company is leaving, so there will be a new manager soon.
- ☐ I'm going away tomorrow. I'll do my packing today because there won't be time tomorrow.

(there won't be = there will not be)

38.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty, but what was in the room last week? Choose from the box and write sentences with There was ... or There were

an armchair	a carpet	some flowers	a sofa
some books	a clock	three pictures	a small table



There was a clock	on the wall near the window.
	on the floor.
	on the wall near the door.
	in the middle of the room.
	on the table.
14.000 (10.000	on the shelves.
	in the corner near the door.
	opposite the armchair.

38.2 Write there was / there wasn't / was there or there were / there weren't / were there.

```
1 I was hungry, but there wasn't anything to eat.

2 Were there any phone messages for me yesterday?

3 I opened the envelope, but it was empty. nothing in it.

4 'We stayed at a very nice hotel.' 'Really? a swimming pool?'

5 'Did you buy any eggs?' 'No, any in the shop.'

6 The wallet was empty. any money in it.

7 'many people at the meeting?' 'No, very few.'

8 We didn't visit the museum. enough time.

9 I'm sorry I'm late. a lot of traffic.

10 Twenty years ago many tourists here. Now there are a lot.
```

38.3 Write there + is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be.

1	There was a good film on TV last night.
2	24 hours in a day.
3	a party at the club last Friday, but I didn't go.
4	'Where can I buy a newspaper?' ' a shop at the end of the street.'
5	'Why are those policemen outside the bank?' 'a robbery.'
6	When we arrived at the theatre, a long queue outside.
7	When you arrive tomorrow, somebody at the station to meet you.
8	Ten years ago 500 children at the school. Now
	more than a thousand.
9	Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now. a lot of changes.
10	I think everything will be OK. I don't think any problems.

We use it for time/day/distance/weather:

time



- What time is it?
- It's half past ten.
- It's late.
- ☐ It's time to go home.

day



- ☐ What day is it?
- ☐ It's Thursday.
- ☐ It's 16 March.
- ☐ It was my birthday yesterday.

distance



- ☐ It's three kilometres from our house to the city centre.
- ☐ How far is it from New York to Los Angeles?
- ☐ It's a long way from here to the station.
- ☐ We can walk home. It isn't far.

We use far in questions (is it far?) and negatives (it isn't far). In positive sentences, we use a long way (it's a long way).

weather



- ☐ It's raining. It isn't raining. Is it snowing?
- It rains a lot here. It didn't rain yesterday. Does it snow very often?
- □ It's warm/hot/cold/fine/cloudy/windy/sunny/foggy/dark etc.
- ☐ It's a nice day today.

Compare it and there:

- ☐ It rains a lot in winter.
 - There is a lot of rain in winter.
- ☐ It was very windy.

There was a strong wind yesterday.

В It's nice to ... etc.

easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe It's to ... expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible etc.

- It's nice to see you again.
- ☐ It's impossible to understand her.
- ☐ It wasn't easy to find your house.

C Don't forget it:

- ☐ It's raining again. (not Is raining again)
- ☐ Is it true that you're going away? (not Is true that ...)

39.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use It's

33.1	AALICE S	dout the wea	ther in the p	ictuics	OSC ICS		
	1 , ,	2	3		4 5	6	
	1 lt'	s raining.		-01X011011111111111	4		
	2				5		
					6		
39.2		t is (it's) or is					
		t time <u>is</u> it					
		nust go now. true th					
	4 'Wha	nt day	today? Ti	iesday?	' 'No,	Wednesday.'	
					oort to the city centre.		
		possibl			ur office? don't know. How far .	2'	
		Lisa's l				***************************************	
	9 I dor	i't believe it!	i	mpossib	le.		
39.3	Write o	questions with	How far	?			
	1 (here / the station) How far is it from here to the station? 2 (the hotel / the beach) How 3 (New York / Washington) 4 (your house / the airport)						
39.4	Write i	t or there.					
	1 The	weather isn't so	nice today.	lt 's	cloudy.		
		ere was a str					
		's hot in t			ndow. was warm and sui	any.	
	5	was a med	m last night.	Did yo	ı hear it?	my.	
	6 I was	afraid because	was	very d	ark.		
		's often co 's a long v			isn't much rain.		
		THE PARTY OF THE P					
39.5	Comple	ete the senten	44	rom th			
	it's	easy difficult impossible	dangerous nice interesting	to	work in this office visit different places see you again	get up early go out alone make friends	
	1 70		V 22	cult to			
	- 65				get up early in the	655	vou?
	3				. The	re is too much noi	357
		525					
		travelling.					147 8 400

I am, I don't etc.

A



She isn't tired, but **he is**. (**he is** = he is tired)



He likes tea, but **she doesn't**. (**she doesn't** = she doesn't like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words ('he is tired', 'she doesn't like tea').

You can use these verbs in the same way:

am/is/are was/were

have/has

do/does/did

can

will

might

must

В

☐ I haven't got a car, but my sister has. (= my sister has got a car)

☐ A: Please help me.

B: I'm sorry. I can't. (= I can't help you)

☐ A: Are you tired?

B: I was, but I'm not now. (= I was tired, but I'm not tired now)

☐ A: Do you think Jane will phone this evening?

B: She might. (= she might phone)

☐ A: Are you going now?

B: Yes, I'm afraid I must. (= I must go)

You cannot use 'm/'s/'ve etc. (short forms) in this way. You must use am/is/have etc. :

☐ She isn't tired, but he is. (not ... but he's)

But you can use isn't / haven't / won't etc. (negative short forms):

My sister has got a car, but I haven't.

☐ 'Are you and Jane working tomorrow?' 'I am, but Jane isn't.'

You can use I am / I'm not etc. after Yes and No:

□ 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.'

"Will Alan be here tomorrow?" 'Yes, he will. / No, he won't."

☐ 'Is there a bus to the airport?' 'Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.'

We use do/does for the present simple (\rightarrow Units 6-7):

□ I don't like hot weather, but Sue does. (= Sue likes hot weather)

☐ Sue works hard, but I don't. (= I don't work hard)

□ 'Do you enjoy your work?' 'Yes, I do.

We use **did** for the past simple (\rightarrow Unit 12):

☐ A: Did you and Chris enjoy the film?

B: I did, but Chris didn't. (= I enjoyed it, but Chris didn't enjoy it)

☐ 'I had a good time.' 'I **did** too.' (= I enjoyed it too)

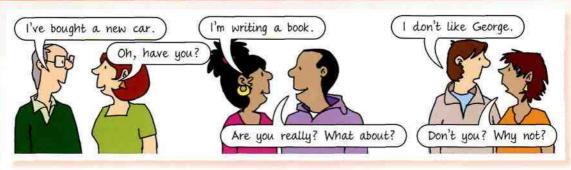
□ 'Did it rain yesterday?' 'No, it didn't.'

Exercises Unit 40

40.1	Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (is/have/can etc.) each time.
	1 Kate wasn't hungry, but we were . 4 I haven't seen the film, but Tom
	2 I'm not married, but my brother 5 Karen won't be here, but Chris
	3 Bill can't help you, but I
40.2	Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/can't etc.).
	1 My sister can play the piano, but I 4 Mark has been to China, but I
	2 Sam is working today, but I
	3 I was working, but my friends
40.3	
	1 I don't like hot weather, but Sue does .
	2 Sue likes hot weather, but I don't
	My mother wears glasses, but my father You don't know Paul very well, but I
	5 I didn't enjoy the party, but my friends
	6 I don't watch TV much, but Peter
	7 Kate lives in London, but her parents
	8 You had breakfast this morning, but I
40.4	Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.
	1 I didn't go out last night, but my friends did.
	2 I like, but
	3 I don't , but
	4 I'm
	5 I haven't
40.5	Put in a verb, positive or negative.
	1 'Are you tired?' 'I was earlier, but I'm not now.'
	2 Steve is happy today, but heyesterday.
	The post office isn't open yet, but the shops
	5 I would like to help you, but I'm afraid I
	6 I don't usually go to work by car, but Iyesterday.
	7 A: Have you ever been to the United States?
	B: No, but Sandra
	8 'Do you and Chris watch TV a lot?' 'I, but Chris doesn't.'
	9 I've been invited to Sam's wedding, but Kate
	10 'Do you think Sarah will pass her driving test?' 'Yes, I'm sure she' 11 'Are you going out tonight?' 'I I don't know for sure.'
40.6	Answer these questions about yourself. Use Yes, I have. / No, I'm not. etc.
	1 Are you American? No, I'm not.
	2 Have you got a car? 3 Do you feel OK?
	4 Is it snowing?
	5 Are you hungry?
	6 Do you like classical music?
	7 Will you be in Paris tomorrow?
	8 Have you ever broken your arm?
	9 Did you buy anything yesterday?
	10 Were you asleep at 3 a.m.?

Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.

A



You can say have you? / is it? / can't he? etc. to show that you are interested or surprised:

- 'You're late.' 'Oh, am I? I'm sorry.'
- "I was ill last week." "Were you? I didn't know that."
- ☐ 'It's raining again.' 'Is it? It was sunny ten minutes ago.'
- ☐ 'There's a letter for you.' 'Is there? Where is it?'
- "Bill can't drive." 'Can't he? I didn't know that."
- "I'm not hungry." 'Aren't you? I am.'
- ☐ 'Sue isn't at work today.' 'Isn't she? Is she ill?'

Use do/does for the present simple, and did for the past simple:

- ☐ 'I speak four languages.' 'Do you? Which ones?'
- ☐ 'Tim doesn't eat meat.' 'Doesn't he? Does he eat fish?'
- □ 'Nicole got married last week.' 'Did she? Really?'

B Question tags

You can use have you? / is it? / can't she? etc. at the end of a sentence.

These 'mini-questions' are question tags.



positive sentence -> negative question tag

It's a beautiful day,
Sally lives in London,
You closed the window,
Those shoes are nice,
Tom will be here soon,
won't he?

Yes, it's perfect. Yes, that's right. Yes, I think so. Yes, very nice. Yes, probably.

negative sentence → positive question tag

That isn't your car, is it?
You haven't met my mother, have you?
Sally doesn't go out much, does she?
You won't be late, will you?

No, it's my mother's.
No, I haven't.
No, she doesn't.
No, I'm never late.

41.1 Answer with Do you? / Doesn't she? / Did they? etc.

I speak four languages.
I work in a bank.
I didn't go to work yesterday.
Jane doesn't like me.
You look tired.
Kate phoned me last night.

Do you ? Which ones?
? I work in a bank too.
? Were you ill?
? Why not?
? I feel fine.
? What did she say?

41.2 Answer with Have you? / Haven't you? / Did she? / Didn't she? etc.

I've bought a new car. 1 2 Tim doesn't eat meat. I've lost my key. 3 4 Sue can't drive. 5 I was born in Italy. 6 I didn't sleep well last night. 7 There's a film on TV tonight. I'm not happy. 8 I saw Paula last week. 9 10 Maria works in a factory. I won't be here next week. 11 12 The clock isn't working.

Have you ? What make is it?

Doesn't he ? Does he eat fish?

? When did you last have it?
? She should learn.
? I didn't know that.
? Was the bed uncomfortable?
? Are you going to watch it?
? Why not?
? How is she?
? What kind of factory?
? Where will you be?
? It was working yesterday.

41.3 Complete these sentences with a question tag (isn't it? / haven't you? etc.).

It's a beautiful day, isn't it?
These flowers are nice,?
Jane was at the party,?
You've been to Paris,?
You speak German,?
Martin looks tired,?
You'll help me,?

Yes, it's perfect.
Yes, what are they?
Yes, but I didn't speak to her.
Yes, many times.
Yes, but not very well.
Yes, he works very hard.
Yes, of course I will.

41.4 Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (is it? / do you? etc.) or negative (isn't it? / don't you? etc.).

You haven't got a car, have you? 1 You aren't tired,? 2 3 Lisa is a very nice person, ? You can play the piano,? 4 You don't know Mike's sister,? 5 6 Sarah went to university, ? 7 The film wasn't very good, ____? Anna lives near you,? 8 You won't tell anybody what I said, ____?

No, I can't drive.
No, I feel fine.
Yes, everybody likes her.
Yes, but I'm not very good.
No, I've never met her.
Yes, she studied psychology.
No, it was terrible.
That's right. In the same street.
No, of course not.

too/either so am I / neither do I etc.

A

too and either



We use too and either at the end of a sentence.

We use too after a positive verb:

- A: I'm happy.
 - B: I'm happy too.
- A: I enjoyed the film.
 - B: I enjoyed it too.
- ☐ Jane is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor too.

We use **either** after a negative verb:

- ☐ A: I'm not happy.
 - B: I'm not happy either. (not I'm not ... too)
- A: I can't cook.
 - B: I can't either. (not I can't too)
- □ Bill doesn't watch TV. He **doesn't** read newspapers **either**.

В

so am I / neither do I etc.



so

neither

am/is/are ...
was/were ...
do/does ...
did ...
have/has ...

can ... will ... would ...



so am I = I am too

so have I = I have too (etc.):

- A: I'm working.
 - B: So am I. (= I'm working too)
- A: I was late for work today.
 - B: So was Sam. (= Sam was late too)
- □ A: I work in a bank.
 - B: So do I.
- A: We went to the cinema last night.
 - B: Did you? So did we.
- A: I'd like to go to Australia.
 - B: So would I.

neither am I = I'm not either neither can I = I can't either (etc.):

- ☐ A: I haven't got a key.
 - B: Neither have I. (= I haven't either)
- A: Kate can't cook.
 - B: Neither can Tom.

(= Tom can't either)

- ☐ A: I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow.
 - B: Neither will I.
- A: I never go to the cinema.
 - B: Neither do I.

You can also use **Nor** (= Neither):

- A: I'm not married.
 - B: Nor am I. or Neither am I.

Remember: So am I (not So I am), Neither have I (not Neither I have).

42.1 Write too or either.

	<u></u>
1	I'm happy.
2	I'm not hungry.
3	I'm going out.
4	It rained on Saturday.
5	Jenny can't drive a car.
6	I don't like shopping.
7	Emma's mother is a teacher.

I'm happy too .	
I'm not hungry	
I'm going out	
It rained on Sunday	
She can't ride a bicycle	÷
I don't like shopping	
Her father is a teacher	
	- 1

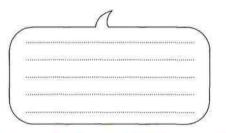
42.2 Answer with So ... I (So am I / So do I / So can I etc.).

)\
1	I went to bed late last night.
2	I'm thirsty.
3	I've just had dinner.
4	I need a holiday.
5	I'll be late tomorrow.
6	I was very tired this morning.

	Λ	0			_
	So	di	d I	<u>.</u>	
****				********	
1116					
tone				**********	*******

Answer with Neither ... I.

7 /	I can't go to the party.
8	I didn't phone Alex last night.
9	I haven't got any money.
10	I'm not going out tomorrow.
11	I don't know what to do.
	Contraction of the contraction o



42.3 You are talking to Maria. Write sentences about yourself. Where possible, use So ... I or Neither ... I. Look at these examples carefully:

6	I'm tired today.	You can answer:	So am 1,	or .	I'm not.
1	I don't work hard.	You can answer:	Neither do 1.	or	I do.
997	Maria				You
	\mathcal{N}				1
1	I'm learning English	\sim			
2	I can ride a bicycle			***************************************	DESCUSSION
3	I'm not American				D
4	I like cooking	;]	o-m-man		
5	I don't like cold weather				
6	I slept well last night			******************	1001104104104104104104104104
7	I've never been to Scotland	(S. 14)(. 10)			
8	I don't use my phone much				
9	I'm going out tomorrow evening	- OOM - TO THE CONTROL OF THE CONTRO			POTENCE PRODUCEDNICATION
10	I haven't got a headache				
11	I didn't watch TV last night				
12	I go to the cinema a lot				

isn't, haven't, don't etc. (negatives)

A

We use not (n't) in negative sentences:

positive → negative

am	am not ('m not)
is	is not (isn't or 's not)
are	are not (aren't or 're not)
was	was not (wasn't)
were	were not (weren't)
have	have not (haven't)
has	has not (hasn't)
will	will not (won't)
can	cannot (can't)
could	could not (couldn't)
must	must not (mustn't)
should	should not (shouldn't)
would	would not (wouldn't)

- I'm not tired.
- □ It isn't (or It's not) raining.
- ☐ They aren't (or They're not) here.
- □ Julian wasn't hungry.
- ☐ The shops weren't open.
- ☐ I haven't finished my work.
- Sue hasn't got a car.
- We won't be here tomorrow.
- George can't drive.
- □ I couldn't sleep last night.
- □ I mustn't forget to phone Jane.
- You shouldn't work so hard.
- □ I wouldn't like to be an actor.

don't/doesn't/didn't

present simple negative

I/we/you/they	do not (don't)		
he/she/it	does not (doesn't		

I/they/he/she etc. did not (didn't)

work/live/go etc.

past simple negative

positive → negative

I want to go out. → I don't want to go out.

They work hard. → They don't work hard.

Liz plays the guitar. → Liz doesn't play the guitar.

My father **likes** his job. → My father **doesn't like** his job.

I **got** up early this morning. → I **didn't get** up early this morning. They **worked** hard yesterday. → They **didn't work** hard yesterday.

We played tennis. → We didn't play tennis.

Diane had dinner with us. → Diane didn't have dinner with us.

Don't ...

Look! → Don't look!

Wait for me. → Don't wait for me.

Sometimes do is the main verb (don't do / doesn't do / didn't do):

Do something! → Don't do anything!

Sue **does** a lot at weekends. → Sue **doesn't do** much at weekends.

I did what you said. -> I didn't do what you said.

43.1	Make these sentences negative.			
	1 He's gone away. He hasn't gone away.	4	It's cold to	oday.
	2 They're married.			ate
	3 I've had dinner.		You shou	ld go
43.2	NAME OF THE SECOND STATES		n't/didn'	
	1 She saw me. She didn't see me.			nere.
				iere.
	2 I like cheese.			shopping.
	3 They understood.	O	i did the	snopping.
43.3	Make these sentences negative.			
	1 She can swim. She can't swim.			bleased.
	2 They've arrived.			e tonight.
	3 I went to the bank.			yesterday.
	4 He speaks German.			ear them.
	5 We were angry.	10	I believe	you.
43.4	Complete these sentences with a negative	verb	(isn't/ha	ven't/don't etc.).
	1 They aren't rich. They haven't got m	uch 1	monev.	
	2 'Would you like something to eat?' 'No,			hungry.'
	3 I find my glasses. Have yo			
	4 Steveuse email much. He			on the phone.
	5 We can walk to the station from here. It			A Control of the Cont
	6 'Where's Jane?' 'Iknow.			15
	7 Be careful!fall!			*
	8 We went to the cinema last night. I		like	the film very much.
	9 I've been to Japan many times, but I			
	10 Julia be here tomorrow. Sl	ne's g	oing away	
	11 'Who broke that window?' 'Not me. I			
	12 We didn't see what happened. We	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	lookin	g at the time.
	13 Lisa bought a new coat a few days ago, but			
	14 You drive so fast. It's dang			*
42 F	Vou ask Come some superions. He ensures	'Voc'	or 'No' M	drita contanaes about Com.
43.5	CONTRACTOR SERVICE CONTRACTOR CON	ies	OF INO. V	vitte sentences about dary,
	positive or negative.		OF THE	
			8-16	Gary
	You		الري الا	
	N	1	1	
	Are you married?	No) 1	He isn't married.
	Do you live in London?	Yes	. 2	He lives in London.
	Were you born in London?	No	. 3	***************************************
	Do you like London?	No	. 4	
	Would you like to live in the country?	Yes	s. 5	
	Can you drive?	Yes	6.	
	Have you got a car?	No	. 7	
	Do you read newspapers?	No	o. 8	
	Are you interested in politics?	No	. 9	
	Do you watch TV most evenings?	Yes	s. 10	
	Did you watch TV last night?	No	. 11	
	Did you go out last night?	Yes	. 12	

Unit

is it ...? have you ...? do they ...? etc. (questions 1)

В

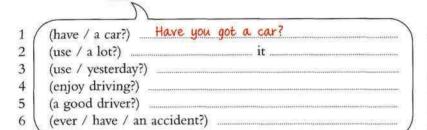
```
positive
                               You are eating.
                    are
question
           are
                    vou
                               Are you eating?
                                                     What are you eating?
In questions, the first verb (is/are/have etc.) is before the subject:
       positive
                                              question
    subject + verb
                                            verb + subject
         I
            am late.
                                                  I late?
                                            Am
 That seat
            is free.
                                              Is
                                                  that seat free?
      She
            was angry.
                                      Why was
                                                  she angry?
    David
           has gone.
                                     Where has
                                                  David gone?
      You
            have got a car.
                                          Have
                                                  you got a car?
     They
            will be here soon.
                                     When will
                                                  they be here?
     Paula
            can swim.
                                           Can
                                                  Paula swim?
Remember: the subject is after the first verb.
    Where has David gone? (not Where has gone David?)
    Are those people waiting for something? (not Are waiting ...?)
   □ When was the telephone invented? (not When was invented ...?)
do ... ? / does ... ? / did ... ?
                        do
                               I/we/you/they
present simple questions
                        does
                               he/she/it
                                                   work/live/go etc. ... ?
                        did
                               I/they/he/she etc.
  past simple questions
positive
                                 question
  They work hard.
                                            Do they work hard?
                                  How often do you watch television?
   You watch television.
                                         Does Chris work hard?
  Chris works hard.
   She gets up early.
                                 What time does she get up?
  They worked hard.
                                           Did they work hard?
                                       What did you have for dinner?
   You had dinner.
   She got up early.
                                  What time did she get up?
Sometimes do is the main verb (do you do / did he do etc.):
    ☐ What do you usually do at weekends?
    'What does your brother do?'
                                       'He works in a bank.'
                                      'How did you do that?' (not How did you that?)
    'I broke my finger last week.'
Why isn't ... ? / Why don't ... ? etc. (Why + negative):
    □ Where's John? Why isn't he here? (not Why he isn't here?)
    □ Why can't Paula come to the meeting tomorrow? (not Why Paula can't ...?)
    Why didn't you phone me last night?
```

44.1 Write questions.

1	I can swim.	(and you?)	Can you swim?
2	I work hard.	(and Jack?)	Does Jack work hard?
3	I was late this morning.	(and you?)	
4	I've got a key.	(and Kate?)	
5	I'll be here tomorrow.	(and you?)	
6	I'm going out this evening.	(and Paul?)	
7	I like my job.	(and you?)	
8	I live near here.	(and Nicole?)	
9	I enjoyed the film.	(and you?)	
10	I had a good holiday.	(and you?)	

44.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the full questions.

You



Yes, I have.
Yes, nearly every day.
Yes, to go to work.
Not very much.
I think I am.
No, never.

44.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.

1	(has / gone / where / David?) Where has David gone?
	(working / Rachel / is / today?) Is Rachel working today?
	(the children / what / are / doing?) What
	(made / is / how / cheese?)
5	(to the party / coming / is / your sister?)
6	(you / the truth / tell / don't / why?)
7	(your guests / have / yet / arrived?)
8	(leave / what time / your train / does?)
9	(to work / Emily / why / go / didn't?)
10	(your car / in the accident / was / damaged?)

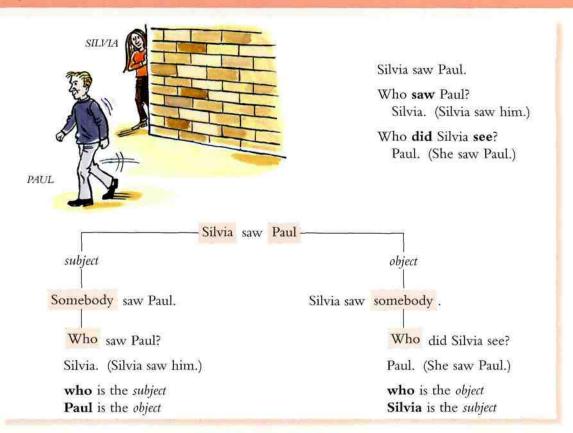
44.4 Complete the questions.

1 I want to go out. 2 Kate and Paul aren't going to the party. 3 I'm reading. Sue went to bed early. 4 My parents are going on holiday. 5 6 I saw Tom a few days ago. 7 I can't come to the party. 8 Tina has gone away. I need some money. 9 Angela doesn't like me. 10 It rains sometimes. 11 12 I did the shopping.

Where do you want to go?
Why aren't they going?
What
What time
When
Where
Why
Where
How much
Why
How often
When

(questions 2)

Who saw you? Who did you see?



In these questions, who/what is the subject:

- Who lives in this house? (= somebody lives in it who?) (not Who does live?)
- □ What happened? (= something happened what?) (not What did happen?)
- □ What's happening? (What's = What is)
- □ Who's got my key? (Who's = Who has)

In these questions, who/what is the object:

- □ Who did **you** meet yesterday? (= **you** met somebody who?)
- □ What did **Paul** say? (= **Paul** said something what?)
- Who are you phoning?
- What was Silvia wearing?

Compare:

- George likes oranges. Who likes oranges? – George.
 - What does George like? Oranges.
- ☐ Jane won a new car. Who won a new car? – Jane.

What did Jane win? - A new car.

Use who for people (somebody). Use what for things, ideas etc. (something):

- □ Who is your favourite singer?
- What is your favourite song?

45.1	Make questions with who or what.	In these questions, who/what is the subject.
		Who broke the window?
	1 Somebody broke the window.	
	2 Something fell off the shelf.	What
	3 Somebody wants to see you.	me?
	4 Somebody took my umbrella.	
	5 Something made me ill.	
	6 Somebody is coming.	
45.2	Make questions with who or what	(subject or object).
		1
	1 I bought something.	What did you buy?
	2 Somebody lives in this house.	Who lives in this house?
	3 I phoned somebody.	
	4 Something happened last night.	
	5 Somebody knows the answer.	
	6 Somebody did the washing-up.	
	7 Jane did something.	
	8 Something woke me up.	
	9 Somebody saw the accident.	
	10 I saw somebody.	
	Somebody has got my pen.	
	12 This word means something.	
	112 This word incans something.	
45.3		(XXXXX). Write questions with who or what.
	I lost XXXXX yesterday, but fortu XXXXX found it and gave it back	
	2 XXXXX phoned me last night. SXXXXX.	he wanted Who What
	3 I needed some advice, so I asked He said XXXXX .	XXXXX.
	4 I hear that XXXXX got married la XXXXX told me.	ast week.
	I met XXXXX on my way home evening. She told me XXXXX .	this
	Steve and I played tennis yesterda XXXXX won. After the game we	
	7 It was my birthday last week and some presents. XXXXX gave me and Catherine gave me XXXXX .	

Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)

A

В



Julia is talking to somebody.

Who is she talking to?

In questions beginning Who ...? / What ...? / Where ...? / Which ...?, prepositions (to/from/with etc.) usually go at the end:

- "Where are you from?" 'I'm from Thailand."
- ☐ 'Jack was afraid.' 'What was he afraid of?'
- □ 'Who do these books belong to?' 'They're mine.'
- "Tom's father is in hospital." "Which hospital is he in?"
- 'Who with?' / 'Who is she going with?'
- ☐ 'Can we talk?' 'Sure. What do you want to talk about?'

What's it like? / What are they like? etc.



What's it like? = What is it like?

What's it like? = tell me something about it – is it good or bad, big or small, old or new (etc.)?

When we say 'What is it like?', like is a preposition. It is not the verb like ('Do you like your new house?' etc.).

- A: There's a new restaurant in our street.
 - B: What's it like? Is it good?
 - A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.
- A: What's your new teacher like?
 - B: She's very good. We learn a lot.
- A: I met Nicole's parents yesterday.
 - B: Did you? What are they like?
 - A: They're very nice.
- ☐ A: Did you have a good holiday? What was the weather like?
 - B: It was lovely. It was sunny every day.

46.1	You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with who or what.
	The letter is from XXXXX. Who is the letter from?
	2 I'm looking for a XXXXX. Whatyou
	3 I went to the cinema with XXXXX.
	4 The film was about XXXXX.
	5 I gave the money to XXXXX.
	6 The book was written by XXXXX.
46.2	Write questions about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs + a preposition:
	go listen look talk talk wait
	1 Who is she talking to? 2 What 3 What 4 What 5 What 5 What 6 Which bus
46.3	Write questions beginning Which ?
	Tom's father is in hospital. We stayed at a hotel. Jack plays for a football team. I went to school in this town. Which hospital is he in? you I went to school in this town.
46.4	You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with What is/are like?
	1 (the roads) What are the roads like?
	2 (the food)
	3 (the people) 4 (the weather)
46.5	Ask questions with What was/were like?
TU:0	1 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather.
	2 Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.
	3 Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.
	4 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.

(questions 4) What + noun (What colour ...? / What kind ...? etc.) □ What colour are your eyes? ☐ What colour is your car? ☐ What size is this shirt? ☐ What make is your TV set? □ What time is it? □ What day is it today? □ What kind of job do you want? (or What type of job ...? / What sort of job ...?) What without a noun: ■ What's your favourite colour? □ What do you want to do tonight? В **Which** + noun (things or people): ■ Which train did you catch – the 9.50 or the 10.30? □ Which doctor did you see – Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill? We use which without a noun for things, not people: ■ Which is bigger – Canada or Australia? We use **who** for people (without a noun): □ **Who** is taller – Joe or Gary? (not Which is taller?) C What or which? We use which when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3 or 4): ☐ We can go this way or that way. Which way shall we go? ☐ There are four umbrellas here. Which is yours? WHICH? What is more general: □ What's the capital of Argentina? (of all the cities in Argentina) □ What sort of music do you like? (of all kinds of music) Compare: □ What colour are his eyes? (not Which colour?) Which colour do you prefer, pink or yellow? □ What is the longest river in the world? Which is the longest river - the Mississippi, the Amazon or the Nile? How ... ? ☐ 'How was the party last night?' 'It was great.' 'How do you usually go to work?' You can use **how** + adjective/adverb (**how tall** / **how old** / **how often** etc.): 'I'm 1 metre 70.' tall are you?' big is the house?' 'Not very big.' old is your mother?' 'She's 45.' 'How far is it from here to the airport?" 'Five kilometres.' often do you use your car?' 'Every day.' long have they been married?' 'Ten years.' much was the meal?' 'Thirty pounds.'

What ...? Which ...? How ...?

Unit

47.1 Write questions with what.

I've got a new TV set.
I want a job.
I've got a new sweater.
I got up early this morning.
I like music.
I want to buy a car.

1	(make?)	What make is it?
	(kind?)	What kind of job do you want?
	(colour?)	What
	(time?)	get up?
	(type?)	(2)
/	(kind?)	

47.2 Complete the questions. Use Which ... ?



47.3 Write what/which/who.

- 1 What is that man's name?
 2 Which way shall we go? Left or right?
- 3 You can have tea or coffee.
 do you prefer?
 4 '_____ day is it today?' 'Friday.'
- 5 This is a nice office. desk is yours?
- 6is your favourite sport?
- 7 _____ is more expensive, meat or fish?
- 8 _____ is older, Liz or Steve?
 9 ____ kind of camera have you got?
- 10 A: I've got three cameras.

Nearly three years.

How tall are you?

B: ____ camera do you use most?

11 ____ nationality are you?

47.4 Complete the questions with How + adjective or adverb (high/long etc.).

How high is Mount Everest	1
is it to the station	2
is Helen	3
do the buses run	4
is the water in the pool	5
have you lived here	6

Nearly 9000 metres.
It's about two kilometres from here.
She's 26.
Every ten minutes.
Two metres.

47.5 Write questions with How ... ?

- 1 Are you 1 metre 70? 1.75? 1.80?
- 2 Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three?
- 3 Are you 20 years old? 22? 25?
- 4 Did you spend £20? £30? £50?
- 5 Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never?
- 6 Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000?

How long does it take ...?

Α

How long does it take from ... to ...?



How long **does it take** by plane from New York to Washington?

It takes an hour.

- ☐ How long does it take by train from London to Manchester?
- ☐ It takes two hours by train from London to Manchester.
- ☐ How long does it take by car from your house to the station?
- ☐ It takes ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

В

How long does it take to do something?

How long	does did will	it take to?
----------	---------------------	-------------

It	takes took will take		a week a long time three hours	to
	doesn't didn't won't	take	long	

- ☐ How long does it take to cross the Atlantic by ship?
- ☐ 'I came by train.' 'Did you? How long did it take (to get here)?'
- ☐ How long will it take to get from here to the hotel?
- ☐ It takes a long time to learn a language.
- ☐ It doesn't take long to cook an omelette.
- ☐ It won't take long to fix the computer.

C

How long does it take you to do something?



How long	does did will	it take	you Tom them	to ?
----------	---------------------	---------	--------------------	------

	takes	me	a week	
It	took	Tom	a long time	to
	will take	them	three hours	4

I started reading the book on Monday. I finished it on Wednesday evening.

It took me three days to read it.

- ☐ How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- □ It takes Tom 20 minutes to get to work in the morning.
- It took us an hour to do the shopping.
- ☐ Did it take you a long time to find a job?
- It will take me an hour to cook dinner.

Exercises Unit 48

48.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with How long ... ?



	1	How long does it take by plane from London to Amsterdam?				
	2					
	3					
18.2	н	ow long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.				
10.2		fly from your city/country to London				
	1	It takes two hours to fly from Madrid to London.				
	2	fly from your city/country to New York				
	3	tudy to be a doctor in your country				
	4 walk from your home to the nearest shop					
	5	get from your home to the nearest airport				
18.3	M	/rite questions with How long did it take ?				
	1	(Jane found a job.) How long did it take her to find a job?				
		(I walked to the station.) you				
		(Tom painted the bathroom.)				
		(I learnt to ski.)				
	5	(They repaired the computer.)				
48.4	R	ead the situations and write sentences with It took				
	1	I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later. It took me three days to read the book.				
	2	We walked home last night. We left at 10 o'clock and we arrived home at 10.20.				
	3	I learnt to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.				
	4	Mark drove to London yesterday. He left home at 7 o'clock and got to London at 10.				
	5	Lisa began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.				
	6	Write a sentence about yourself.				

Do you know where ...? I don't know what ... etc.

A



We say:

Where is Paula?

but Do you know where Paula is? (not Do you know where is Paula?)

In the same way we say:

I know]

I don't know where Paula is.

Can you tell me

Compare:

Who are those people?
How old is Nicole?
What time is it?
Where can I go?
How much is this camera?
When are you going away?
Where have they gone?
What was Kate wearing?

Do you know Can you tell me

> I know I don't know I don't remember

who those people are how old Nicole is what time it is where I can go how much this camera is

how much this camera is when you're going away where they have gone what Kate was wearing

В

Questions with do/does/did (present simple and past simple)

Where does he live?

but

but Do you know where he lives? (not Do you know where does he live?)

Compare:

How **do aeroplanes** fly? What **does Jane** want? Why **did she** go home? Where **did I** put the key? but

Do you know I don't know I don't remember I know how aeroplanes fly what Jane wants why she went home where I put the key?

C

Questions beginning Is ... ? / Do ... ? / Can ... ? etc. (yes/no questions)

Compare:

Is Jack at home?
Have they got a car?
Can Brian swim?
Do they live near here?
Did anybody see you?

but

Do you know	if	Jack is at home they've got a car	3
I don't know	or whether	Brian can swim they live near here anybody saw you	800

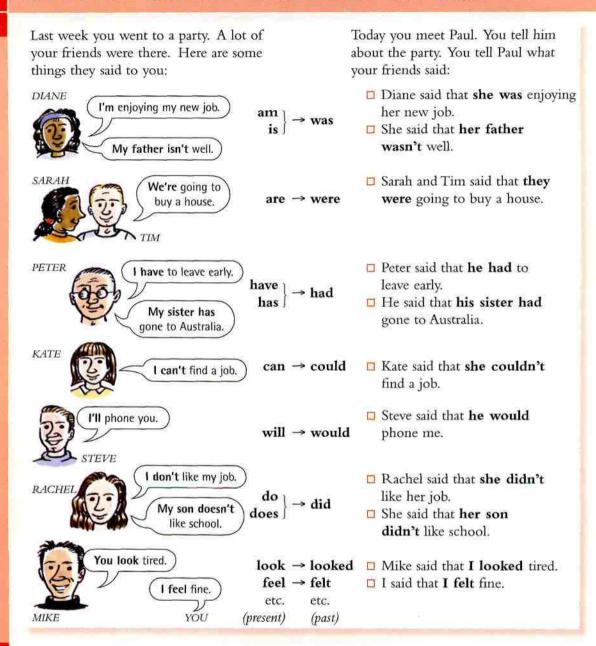
You can use if or whether in these sentences:

- Do you know if they've got a car? or Do you know whether they've got a car?
- ☐ I don't know if anybody saw me. or I don't know whether anybody saw me.

49.1	Answer these questions with I don't	know where/when/why etc.
	\mathcal{N}	1
	Have your friends gone home? Is Kate in her office? Is the castle very old? Will Paul be here soon? Was he angry because I was late? Has Sally lived here a long time?	(where) I don't know where they've gone. (where) I don't know (how old) (when) (why) (how long)
49.2	Complete the sentences.	
	 (How do aeroplanes fly?) (Where does Susan work?) (What did Peter say?) (Why did he go home early?) (What time does the meeting begin?) (How did the accident happen?) 	Do you know how aeroplanes fly ? I don't know . Do you remember ? I don't know . Do you know .? I don't remember .
49.3	Which is right?	
	1 Do you know what time is it / it is? 2 Why are you / you are going away? 3 I don't know where are they / they at 4 Can you tell me where is the museur 5 Where do you want / you want to g 6 Do you know what do elephants eat 7 I don't know how far is it / it is from	m / the museum is? o for your holidays? / elephants eat?
49.4	Write questions with Do you know i	f ?
	 (Have they got a car?) (Are they married?) (Does Sue know Bill?) (Will Gary be here tomorrow?) (Did he pass his exam?) 	Do you know if they've got a car? Do you know
49.5	Write questions beginning Do you k	now ?
	 (What does Laura want?) (Where is Paula?) (Is she working today?) (What time does she start work?) (Are the shops open tomorrow?) (Where do Sarah and Tim live?) (Did they go to Jane's party?) 	Do you know what Laura wants? Do
49.6	Use your own ideas to complete the	se sentences.
	2 Do you know what time	ate
	D 140 VOU KNOW DOW HILLD	

She said that ... He told me that ...

A



say and tell

say (→ said)

- ☐ He said that he was tired. (not He said me)
- What did she say to you? (not say you)

We say **he said to me**, **I said to Ann** etc. but not 'he said me', 'I said Ann'.

 $tell (\Rightarrow told)$

- ☐ He told me that he was tired. (not He told that)
- □ What did she **tell you**? (not tell to you)

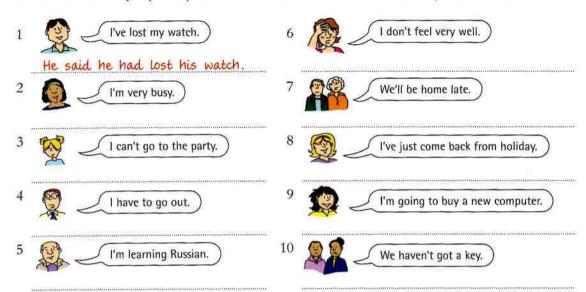
We say **he told me**, I told Ann etc. but not 'he told to me', 'I told to Ann'.

You can say:

- ☐ He said that he was tired. or He said he was tired. (without that)
- □ Kate told me that she couldn't find a job. or Kate told me she couldn't find a job.

I told you to ... → Unit 53

50.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with He/She/They said (that)



50.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.



1 I met Diane last week. She said she was enjoying her new job
2 Emma didn't want anything to eat. She said
3 I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder, but he said
4 Hannah was invited to the party, but she said
5 Susan told me she didn't want the picture. She said
6 Martin has just gone away on holiday. He said
7 I was looking for Robert. Nicole said
8 'Why did David stay at home?' 'He said
9 'Has Mary gone out?' 'I think so. She said

50.3 Write say/said or tell/told.

1 He said he was tired. 7 The woman she was a reporter. 2 What did she she didn't like Peter. 8 The woman us she was a reporter. 9 They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't them anything. 10 They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't anything.

work/working go/going do/doing

→ Unit 34

,	А	v
٧.	6	u

work/go/be etc. (infinitive)

would

We use the infinitive with will/can/must etc.:

AND THE PER		
will shall	☐ Anna will be here soon. ☐ Shall I open the window?	} → Units 27–28
might may	☐ I might phone you later. ☐ May I sit here?	} → Unit 29
can could	☐ I can't meet you tomorrow.☐ Could you pass the salt, please?	} → Unit 30
must	☐ It's late. I must go now.	→ Unit 31
should	You shouldn't work so hard.	→ Unit 32

Would you like some coffee?

We use the infinitive with do/does/did:

do/does (present simple	 □ Do you work? □ They don't work very hard. □ Helen doesn't know many people. □ How much does it cost? 	→ Units 6–7
did (past simple)	☐ What time did the train leave ?☐ We didn't sleep well.	→ Unit 12

to work / to go / to be etc. (to + infinitive)

```
(I'm) going to ...
                       I'm going to play tennis tomorrow.
                                                             → Unit 26
                       ☐ What are you going to do?
                                                             → Unit 33
                       ☐ I have to go now.
(I) have to ...
                       Everybody has to eat.
                                                             → Unit 52
(I) want to ...
                       Do you want to go out?
                       They don't want to come with us.
                       I'd like to talk to you.
                                                             → Unit 34
(I) would like to ...
                       □ Would you like to go out?
                       Dave used to work in a factory.
                                                             → Unit 36
(I) used to ...
```

working/going/playing etc.

```
am/is/are + -ing
(present continuous)

□ Please be quiet. I'm working.
□ Tom isn't working today.
□ What time are you going out?

□ It was raining, so we didn't go out.
□ What were you doing when the phone rang?

□ What were you doing when the
```

51.1	Complete the sentences. Write: phone Paul or to phone Paul.
	1 I'll phone Paul . 6 Do you have
	2 I'm going to phone Paul . 7 You should
	3 Can you Paul? 8 I want
	4 Shall I ? 9 I might
	5 I'd like 10 You must
51.2	Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (work/go etc.) and sometimes you need -ing (working/going etc.).
	do/doing get/getting sleep/sleeping watch/watching
	eat/eating go/going stay/staying wear/wearing
	fly/flying listen/listening wait/waiting work/working
	1 Please be quiet. I'm working
	2 I feel tired today. I didn't sleep very well last night.
	3 What time do you usually up in the morning?
	4 'Where are you?' 'To the bank.'
	5 Did you television last night?
	6 Look at that plane! It'svery low.
	7 You can turn off the radio. I'm not to it.
	8 They didn't anything because they weren't hungry.
	9 My friends were for me when I arrived.
	10 'Does Susan always glasses?' 'No, only for reading.'
	11 'What are you tonight?' 'I'm at home.'
51.3	Put the verb in the correct form. Choose from:
	the infinitive (work/go etc.) or
	to (to work / to go etc.) or
	-ing (working/going etc.)
	1 Shall I open the window? (open)
	2 It's late. I have <u>to go</u> now. (go)
	3 Amanda isn't working this week. She's on holiday. (work)
	4 I'm tired. I don't wantout. (go)
	5 It might, so take an umbrella with you. (rain)
	6 What time do you have tomorrow morning? (leave)
	7 I'm sorry I can'tyou. (help)
	8 My brother is a student. He's physics. (study)
	9 Would you like on a trip round the world? (go)
	10 When you saw Maria, what was she? (wear)
	11 When you go to London, where are you going? (stay)
	12 I'm hungry. I must something to eat. (have)
	13 'Where's Gary?' 'He's a bath.' (have)
	14 I used a car, but I sold it last year. (have)
	15 He spoke very quietly. I couldn't him. (hear)
	16 You don't look well. I don't think you should to work today. (go)
	17 I don't know what he said. I wasn't to him. (listen)
	18 I'm sorry I'm late. I had a phone call. (make)
	19 I want what happened. (know) You must me. (tell)
	20 May I your phone? (use)

Unit **52**

to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

A

verbs + to ... (I want to do)

want plan decide try
hope expect offer forget + to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)
need promise refuse learn

- ☐ What do you want to do this evening?
- It's not very late. We don't need to go home yet.
- ☐ Tina has decided to sell her car.
- □ You forgot to switch off the light when you went out.
- My brother is learning to drive.
- □ I tried to read my book, but I was too tired.

B

verbs + -ing (I enjoy doing)

enjoy stop mind finish suggest + -ing (doing / working / being etc.)

- ☐ I **enjoy dancing**. (not enjoy to dance)
- ☐ I don't mind getting up early.
- ☐ Has it stopped raining?
- ☐ Sonia suggested going to the cinema.



C

verbs + -ing or to ...

like love start continue + -ing (doing etc.) or to ... (to do etc.)

- □ Do you like getting up early? or Do you like to get up early?
- □ I prefer travelling by car. or I prefer to travel by car.
- Anna loves dancing. or Anna loves to dance.
- ☐ I hate being late. or I hate to be late.
- □ It started raining. or It started to rain.

D

would like to ... etc.

would like would love would prefer would hate + to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)

- Julia would like to meet you.
- ☐ I'd love to go to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- "Would you like to sit down?" 'No, I'd prefer to stand, thank you."
- □ I like this city very much. I wouldn't like to move.
- ☐ I'd hate to lose my address book.

52.1	Put the verb in the right form, to or	-ing.
	1 I enjoy dancing (dance)	8 The weather was nice, so I suggested
	2 What do you want to do	for a walk by the river. (go)
	tonight? (do)	9 Where's Bill? He promised
	3 Bye! I hope you again	here on time. (be)
	soon. (see)	10 I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind
	4 I learnt when I was	
	five years old. (swim)	11 What have you decided? (do)
	5 Have you finished the	12 Gary was very angry and refused
	kitchen? (clean)	to me. (speak)
	6 Where's Anna? I need	13 I'm tired. I want to bed. (go)
	her something. (ask)	14 I was very upset and started (cry)
	7 Do you enjoy other	15 I'm trying (work) Please
	countries? (visit)	stop (talk)
52.2		
	go go help lose rain	read see send wait watch
	1 'Have you ever been to Australia?' 'N	No. but I'd love to go
	2 Jane had a lot to do, so I offered	her
	3 I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't	
	4 Nicole has a lot of books. She enjoys	7
	5 This ring was my grandmother's. I'd ha	
	6 Don't forget us a postc	
	7 I'm not going out until it stops	
	8 What shall we do this afternoon? Woul	
	9 When I'm tired in the evenings, I like	
	10 'Shall we go now?' 'No, I'd prefer	
	10 Shan we go now: 140, 14 picici	a tew fillinges.
52.3	Complete the answers to the questions	i.
	6	
	* ~	
	1 Do you usually get up early?	Yes, I like to get up early .
	2 Do you ever go to museums?	Yes, I enjoy
	Would you like to go to a	No, I'm hungry. I'd prefer
	museum now?	to a restaurant.
	4 Do you often write letters?	No, I don't like
	5 Have you ever been to New York?	No, but I'd love one day.
	6 Do you often travel by train?	Yes, I enjoy
	7 Shall we walk home or take a taxi?	I don't mind, but a taxi
		would be quicker.
52.4	Complete these sentences. Write about	t yourself lise to or -ing
32.4		
	The state of the s	
	190	
		T.
		, but
	6 I wouldn't like	

I want you to ... I told you to ...

A I want you to ...



The woman wants to go.

The man doesn't want the woman to go. He wants her to stay.

We say:

I want	you somebody Sarah	to do something
--------	--------------------------	-----------------

- ☐ I want you to be happy. (not I want that you are happy)
- □ They didn't want anybody to know their secret.
- Do you want me to lend you some money?

We use would like in the same way:

□ Would you like me to lend you some money?

We also use this structure (verb + somebody + to ...) with:

verb + somebody + to ...

ask tell advise expect persuade teach

	verb .	sometoday		
Sue	asked	a friend	to lend	her some money.
I	told	you	to be	careful.
What do you	advise	me	to do?	
I didn't	expect	them	to be	here.
We	persuaded	Gary	to come	with us.
I	am teaching	my brother	to swim.	

I told you to ... / I told you not to ...



JANE



ME



- → Jane told me to wait for her.
- → Paul told Sue not to wait for him.

D make and let

After make and let, we do not use to:

- He's very funny. He makes me laugh. (not makes me to laugh)
- ☐ At school our teacher made us work very hard.
- □ Sue **let** me **use** her computer because mine wasn't working. (not let me to use)

You can say Let's ... (= Let us) when you want people to do things with you:

- Come on! Let's dance.
- Do you want to go out tonight?' 'No, I'm tired. Let's stay at home.'

Let's ... → Unit 35 He told me that ... → Unit 50

53.1	Write sentences beginning I want you / I don't want you / Do you want me ?
	1 (you must come with me) 2 (listen carefully) 3 (please don't be angry) 4 (shall I wait for you?) I want you to come with me. I want I want One with me. I want Do you
	5 (don't phone me tonight) 6 (you must meet Sarah)
F2 2	
53.2	Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. [1 (Can you help me?)]
	1/Come on! Let's go 2 (I'm not well.)
	It's a good film
	Turn left after the bridge.
	Nou!
	um er you BRIAN You should go to the doctor.
	DAN OK. to the doctor. LINDA YOU
	5 (I'm busy now.) 6 (Can I use) 7 (Don't phone) 8
	(Come back in) your phone? before 8 o'clock.) (Do you play the piano?
	ten minutes. Yes, my mother
	you taught me.
	you you
	TOM PAUL SUE ANN
	1 Dan persuaded <u>me to go to the cinema.</u> 2 I wanted to get to the station. A woman told
	3 Brian wasn't well, I advised
	4 Linda had a lot of luggage. She asked
	5 I was too busy to talk to Tom. I told
	6 I wanted to make a phone call. Paul let 7 Sue is going to phone later. I told
	8 Ann's mother taught
	•
53.3	Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes to is necessary (to go / to wait etc.); sometimes to is not necessary (go/wait etc.).
	arrive borrow get go go make repeat tell think wait
	1 Please stay here. I don't want youtogo yet.
	2 I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her it.
	3 'Shall we begin?' 'No, let's a few minutes.'
	4 Are they already here? I expected them much later.
	5 Kevin's parents didn't want him married. 6 I want to stay here. You can't make me with you.
	7 'Is that your bicycle?' 'No, it's John's. He let meit.'
	8 Rachel can't come to the party. She told meyou.
	9 Would you like a drink? Would you like mesome coffee?
	10 'Kate doesn't like me' 'What makes you that?'

I went to the shop to ...

A

Paula wanted a newspaper, so she went to the shop.

Why did she go to the shop? **To get** a newspaper.

She went to the shop **to get** a newspaper.





- to ... (to get / to see etc.) tells us why a person does something:
 - ☐ 'Why are you going out?' 'To get some bread.'
 - □ Catherine went to the station **to meet** her friend.
 - Sue turned on the television to watch the news.
 - ☐ I'd like to go to Spain to learn Spanish.

money/time to (do something):

- ☐ We need some money to buy food.
- ☐ I haven't got time to watch television.

R

to ... and for ...

to + verb

(to get / to see etc.)

- ☐ I went to the shop **to get** a newspaper. (not for get)
- ☐ They're going to Brazil to see their friends.
- ☐ We need some money to buy food.

for + noun

(for a newspaper / for food etc.)

- □ I went to the shop for a newspaper.
- □ They're going to Brazil for a holiday.
- ☐ We need some money for food.

C

wait for ...:

- ☐ Please wait for me.
- ☐ Are you waiting for the bus?

wait to (do something):

- ☐ Hurry up! I'm waiting to go.
- ☐ Are you waiting to see the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) to ...:

- □ I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone.
- ☐ Are you waiting for the doctor to come?



		ost office ipermarket	+	buy some food get some medicine	get some stamps meet a friend	
	2 I went		******			
	Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.					
	to get some fresh air to open this door				him up the news	
	2 Alice sat down in an3 Do I need a key4 I went for a walk by5 I knocked on the do	the river	roc	om		
	Use your own ideas t	o finish thes	e s	entences. Use to		
	2 I'm very busy. I hav 3 I phoned Ann 4 I'm going out	en't got time				
	Write to or for.					
	1 I went out	rant hat to university n an in n visit a cup o rining. I didn oney li money nall. There's spou waiting	of corrections and corrections are corrected and corrections and corrections and corrections are corrected and corrected corre	study economics. rview next week. me friends of mine. coffee? nave time wash. taxi, so we walked hom te only a desk a use the phone?	ne.	
)	Complete these sente	ences. Choose	f	rom:		
	MICHORE OF CHICAGOSTIC	t / to arrive		A CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY COST	he film / begin	
	2 I sat down in the cir 3 We called an ambula	nema and wait ince and waite	ed d			

Unit 55

go to ... go on ... go for ... go -ing

- go to ... (go to work / go to London / go to a concert etc.)
 - ☐ What time do you usually go to work?
 - I'm going to China next week.
 - Sophie didn't want to go to the concert.
 - ☐ 'Where's Tom?' 'He's gone to bed.'
 - ☐ I went to the dentist yesterday.
 - go to sleep = start to sleep:
 - ☐ I was very tired and went to sleep quickly.
 - go home (without to)
 - I'm going home now. (not going to home)
 - go on ...

holiday a trip a tour go on an excursion a cruise strike

- ☐ We're going on holiday next week.
- Children often go on school trips.
- ☐ When we were in Scotland, we went on a lot of excursions to different places.

go to

- Workers at the airport have gone on strike. (= they are refusing to work)
- go for ...

a walk a run go (somewhere) for a swim a drink a meal

- "Where's Emma?" 'She's gone for a walk.'
- Do you go for a run every morning?
- The water looks nice. I'm going for a swim. ☐ I met Chris in town, so we went for a coffee.
- ☐ Shall we go out for a meal? I know a good restaurant.

D go + -ing

We use go + -ing for many sports (swimming / skiing etc.) and also shopping.

shopping I go swimming he is going fishing we went sailing they have gone skiing she wants to go jogging etc.

- - Are you going shopping this afternoon?
 - ☐ It's a nice day. Let's go swimming. (or Let's go for a swim.)
 - Richard has a small boat and he often goes sailing.
 - I went jogging before breakfast this morning.



55.1 Write to/on/for where necessary.

- 1 I'm going to China next week.
- 2 Richard often goes _____ sailing. (no preposition)
- 3 Sue went Mexico last year.
- 4 Would you like to go the cinema this evening?
- 5 Jack goes _____jogging every morning.
- 6 I'm going out a walk. Do you want to come?
- 7 I'm tired because I went bed very late last night.
- 8 Martin is going holiday Italy next week.
- 9 The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went _____ a swim.
- 10 The taxi drivers went strike when I was in New York.
- 11 I need some stamps, so I'm going the post office.
- 12 It's late. I have to go home now.
- 13 Would you like to go _____ a tour of the city?
- 14 Shall we go out dinner this evening?
- 15 My parents are going _____ a cruise this summer.

55.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use go/goes/going/went + -ing.



- 1 Richard has a boat. He often goes sailing .
- 2 Last Saturday Diane went
- 3 Gary every day.
- 4 Nicole is going on holiday next month. She is
- 5 Peter is going out later. He has to
- 6 Sarah after work yesterday.

55.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box. Use to/on/for if necessary.

a swim	holiday	Portugal	shopping	sleep
a walk	home	riding	skiing	university

- 1 The water looks nice. Let's go for a swim .
 2 After leaving school, Tina went where she studied psychology.
- now. I have to buy a few things. 3 I'm going
- 4 I was very tired last night. I sat down in an armchair and went
- 5 I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went ______ early.
- 6 We live near the mountains. In winter we go ______ most weekends.
- 7 Richard has got a horse. He goes ______ a lot.
- 8 The weather is nice. Shall we go ______ along the river?
- 9 A: Are you going soon?
 - there before.

get a letter / get a job etc. (get + noun) = receive/buy/find: you get it you don't have something you have it "Did you **get** my postcard?" 'Yes, I got it yesterday.' (= receive) ☐ I like your sweater. Where did you get it? (= buy) ☐ Is it difficult to **get** a job at the moment? (= find) (on the phone) 'Hello, can I speak to Lisa, please?' 'Sure. I'll get her.' also get a bus / a train / a taxi (= take a bus/train etc.): 'Did you walk here?' 'No, I got the bus.' **get hungry** / **get cold** / **get tired** etc. (**get** + adjective) = become: you get hungry you're not hungry you are hungry ☐ If you don't eat, you get hungry. Drink your coffee. It's getting cold. I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she gets better soon. ☐ It was raining very hard. We didn't have an umbrella, so we **got** very **wet**. also get married Nicole and Frank are getting married soon. **get dressed** (= put your clothes on) I got up and got dressed quickly. **get lost** (= lose your way) ☐ We didn't have a map, so we **got lost**. get to a place = arrive: ☐ I usually **get to work** before 8.30. (= arrive at work) □ We left London at 10 o'clock and got to Manchester at 12.45. get here/there (without to): get to ☐ How did you get here? By bus? get home (without to): □ What time did you **get home** last night? D get in/out/on/off get in (a car) get out (of a car) get off get on (a bus / a train / a plane) Kate got in the car and drove away. (You can also say: Kate got into the car and ...) A car stopped and a man **got out**. (but A man got out **of the car**.) □ We got on the bus outside the hotel and got off in Church Street.

56.1 Complete these sentences. Use get/gets and choose from the box. a doctor a lot of rain a taxi my postcard the job a good salary a new computer a ticket some milk your jacket 1 Did you get my postcard ? I sent it a week ago. 2 Where did you _____ ? It's very nice. 3 Quick! This man is ill. We must ______. 4 I don't want to walk home. Let's 5 Tom has an interview tomorrow. I hope he 6 When you go out, can you _____? 7 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can 8 Margaret has got a well-paid job. She ______. 9 The weather is horrible here in winter. We . The one I have is too slow. 10 I'm going to 56.2 Complete these sentences. Use getting + these words: dark late married ready 1 Drink your coffee. It's getting cold 2 Turn on the light. It's next week.' 'Really? Congratulations!' 4 'Where's Karen?' 'She's ______ to go out.' 56.3 Complete the sentences. Use get/gets/got + these words: better hungry lost married old angry wet 1 If you don't eat, you get hungry . 2 Don't go out in the rain. You'll 3 My brother last year. His wife's name is Sarah. 4 Martin is always very calm. He never ______. 5 We tried to find the hotel, but we ______. 6 Everybody wants to stay young, but we all 7 Yesterday the weather wasn't so good at first, but it during the day. 56.4 Write sentences with I left ... and got to 1 home / 7.30 → work / 8.15 I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15. 2 London / 10.15 → Bristol / 11.45 I left London at 10.15 and 3 the party / $11.15 \rightarrow$ home / midnight 4 Write a sentence about yourself. I left 56.5 Write got in / got out of / got on / got off. 1 Kate got in the car and drove away. 2 I the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.

3 Isabel _____ the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
4 I made a stupid mistake. I _____ the wrong train.

Unit **57**

do and make

A

Do is a general word for actions:

- □ What are you **doing** this evening? (not What are you making?)
- "Shall I open the window?" 'No, it's OK. I'll do it."
- Rachel's job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
- ☐ I did a lot of things yesterday.

What do you do? = What's your job?:

- "What do you do?" 'I work in a bank."
- B Make =

Make = produce/create. For example:









She's making coffee. He has made a cake. They make umbrellas. It was made in China.

Compare do and make:

- □ I did a lot yesterday. I cleaned my room, I wrote some letters and I made a cake.
- ☐ A: What do you do in your free time? Sport? Reading? Hobbies?
 - B: I make clothes. I make dresses and jackets. I also make toys for my children.

c

Expressions with do

do an exam / a test
a course
homework
housework
somebody a favour
an exercise

- ☐ I'm doing my driving test next week.
- ☐ John has just done a training course.
- Our children have to do a lot of homework.
- ☐ I hate **doing housework**, especially cleaning.
- Sue, could you do me a favour?
 I go for a run and do exercises every morning.

also do the shopping / do the washing / do the washing-up / do the ironing / do the cooking etc. :

□ I did the washing, but I didn't do the shopping.

D

Expressions with make

make a mistake an appointment a phone call a list a noise

a bed

- ☐ I'm sorry, I made a mistake.
- ☐ I need to make an appointment to see the doctor.
- Excuse me, I have to make a phone call.
- ☐ Have you made a shopping list?
- ☐ It's late. Don't make a noise.
- □ Sometimes I forget to make my bed in the morning.

We say make a film but take a photograph:

□ When was this film made? but When was this photograph taken?

57.1 Write make/making/made or do/doing/did/done.

1 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll do it.' 2 What did you _____ at the weekend? Did you go away?

3 Do you know how to _____ bread?

4 Paper is _____ from wood.

5 Richard didn't help me. He sat in an armchair and ______ nothing.

6 'What do you _____?' 'I'm a doctor.'

7 I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you _____ it?

8 'What do they _____ in that factory?' 'Shoes.'

9 I'm _____ some coffee. Would you like some?

10 Why are you angry with me? I didn't _____ anything wrong.

11 'What are you ______tomorrow afternoon?' 'I'm working.'

57.2 What are these people doing?



1	He's making a cake.	6	
2	They	7	000000000000000000000000000000000000000
3	He	8	
4	<u> </u>	9	
5		10	

57.3 Write make or do in the correct form.

1 I hate doing housework, especially cleaning.

2 Why do you always _____ the same mistake?

3 'Can you _____ me a favour?' 'It depends what it is.'

4 'Have you ______ your homework?' 'Not yet.'
5 I need to see the dentist, but I haven't _____ an appointment.

6 I'm a course in photography at the moment. It's very good.

7 The last time I an exam was ten years ago.

8 How many phone calls did you _____ yesterday?

9 When you've finished Exercise 1, you can _____ Exercise 2.

10 There's something wrong with the car. The engine is _____ a strange noise.

12 Let's _____ a list of all the things we have to _____ today.

have

A

have and have got

I've got (something) or I have (something) = it is mine:

- ☐ I've got a new car. or I have a new car.
- ☐ Sue has got long hair. or Sue has long hair.
- ☐ Have they got any children? or Do they have any children?
- ☐ Tim hasn't got a job. or Tim doesn't have a job.
- ☐ How much time have you got? or How much time do you have?

also

I've got a headache / (a) toothache / a pain (in my leg etc.)
I have a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a temperature / flu etc.

- ☐ I've got a headache. or I have a headache.
- ☐ Have you got a cold? or Do you have a cold?

The past is I had (without got) / I didn't have / Did you have? etc.:

- ☐ When I first met Sue, she had short hair.
- ☐ He didn't have any money because he didn't have a job.
- □ **Did** you have enough time to do everything you wanted?

В

have breakfast / have a shower etc.

In these expressions have = eat/drink/take etc. You can't use 'have got'.

have breakfast / lunch / dinner a meal / a sandwich / a pizza etc. a cup of coffee / a glass of milk etc. something to eat/drink

- "Where's Liz?" 'She's having lunch.'
- □ I don't usually have breakfast.
- □ I had three cups of coffee this morning.
- ☐ 'Have a biscuit!' 'Oh, thank you.'

We also use have (not have got) in these expressions:

a bath / a shower

a rest / a holiday / a party

a nice time / a good trip / fun etc.

a walk / a swim / a game (of tennis etc.)

a dream / an accident

a baby

a look (at something)

- I had a shower this morning.
- ☐ We're having a party next week.
 You must come.
- ☐ Enjoy your holiday. **Have** a nice time!
- Did you have a good time in Tokyo?
- Sandra has just had a baby.
- Can I have a look at your newspaper?

C

Compare:

have

Have got or have

□ I've got / I have a new shower. It's very good.

Have (not have got)

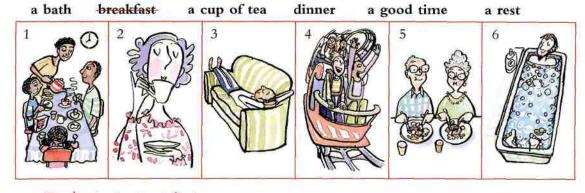
- □ I have a shower every morning. (not I've got a shower every morning)
- ☐ A: Where's Paul?
 - B: He's having a shower. (= he's washing now)



58.1 Write the correct form of have or have got.

1	I didn't have time to do the shopping yesterday. 'Has Lisa got (OR Does Lisa have) a car?' 'No, she can't drive.'	(I / not / have)
2	No, she can't drive.	(Lisa / have?)
3	He can't open the door a key.	(he / not / have)
4	a cold last week. He's better now.	(Gary / have)
5	What's wrong? a headache?	(you / have?)
6	We wanted to go by taxi, but enough money.	(we / not / have)
7	Liz is very busy much free time.	(she / not / have)
8	any problems when you were on holiday?	(you / have?)

58.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list:



1	They're having breakfast.	4	They
2	She	5	
3	He	6	

58.3 What do you say in these situations? Use have.

- 1 Emily is going on holiday. What do you say to her before she goes? Have a nice holiday!
- 2 You meet Claire at the airport. She has just got off her plane. Ask her about the flight. Did you have a good flight?
- 3 Tim is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?
- 4 It's Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.
- 5 Paul has just come home after playing tennis with a friend. Ask him about the game.
- 6 Rachel is going out this evening. What do you say to her before she goes?
- 7 Mark has just returned from holiday. Ask him about his holiday.

58.4 Complete the sentences. Use have/had and choose from the list.

- 3 I was thirsty, so I ______.
 4 I like to get up early and ______ before breakfast.
- 6 There's something wrong with the engine of my car. Can you _____ at it?

I/me he/him they/them etc.

A People



object

me

subject	1	we	you	he	she	they
object	me	us	you	him	her	them

Tom knows me.

subject

I I know Tom.

we We know Tom.

you You know Tom.

he He knows Tom. she She knows Tom.

they They know Tom.

Tom knows us. us
Tom knows you. you
Tom knows him. him
Tom knows her. her
Tom knows them. them

NO W

B Things



- □ I don't want this book. You can have it.
- I don't want these books. You can have them.
- Diane never drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
- □ I never go to parties. I don't like them.

We use me/her/them etc. (object) after a preposition (for/to/with etc.):

- ☐ This letter isn't for me. It's for you.
- □ Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
- We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come with us?
- ☐ Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with them?
- "Where's the newspaper?" "You're sitting on it."

give it/them to ...:

- ☐ I want that book. Please give it to me.
- □ Robert needs these books. Can you give them to him, please?

59.1	Complete the sentences with him/her/them.	
	1 I don't know those girls. Do you know them? 2 I don't know that man. Do you know them? 3 I don't know those people. Do you know them? 4 I don't know David's wife. Do you know her? 5 I don't know Mr Stevens. Do you know hem? 6 I don't know Sarah's parents. Do you know them? 7 I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know?	- Te, TeX
59.2	Complete the sentences. Use I/me/you/she/her etc.	
33.2	I want to see her, but	
59.3	Write sentences beginning I like , I don't like or Do you like ?	
	1 I don't eat tomatoes. I don't like them 2 George is a very nice man. I like 3 This jacket isn't very nice. I don't 4 This is my new car. Do 5 Mrs Clark is not very friendly. I 6 These are my new shoes	
59.4	Complete the sentences. Use I/me/he/him etc.	
	1 Who is that woman? Why are you looking at? 2 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I work with' 3 Where are the tickets? I can't find 4 I can't find my keys. Where are? 5 We're going out. You can come with 6 I've got a new computer. Do you want to see? 7 Maria likes music plays the piano. 8 I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of 9 I'm talking to you. Please listen to 10 Where is Anna? I want to talk to 11 You can have these CDs. I don't want 12 My brother has a new job, but doesn't like very much.	
59.5	Complete the sentences.	
	1 I need that book. Can you give it to me? 2 He wants the key. Can you give ? 3 She wants the keys. Can you ? 4 I want that letter. Can you ? 5 They want the money. Can you ? 6 We want the photographs. Can you ?	

my/his/their etc.

A



 $\begin{array}{ccc} I & \rightarrow & \mathbf{my} \\ \text{we} & \rightarrow & \mathbf{our} \\ \text{you} & \rightarrow & \mathbf{your} \\ \text{he} & \rightarrow & \mathbf{his} \\ \text{she} & \rightarrow & \mathbf{her} \end{array}$

I like my house.

We like our house.

You like your house.

He likes his house.

She likes her house.

They like their house.

it → its

Oxford (= it) is famous for its university.

We use my/your/his etc.+ noun:

their

my hands his new car her parents our clothes your best friend their room

В

his/her/their

DONNA

they



ANDY



MR AND MRS LEE



her car (= Donna's car)



his bicycle



their son



her husband (= Donna's husband)



his sister



their daughter



her children





his parents



their children



its and it's

its Oxford is famous for its university.

it's (= it is) I like Oxford. It's a nice place. (= It is a nice place.)

60.1	Complete the sentences in the same way.
	1 I'm going to wash my hands . 4 He's going to wash
	2 She's going to wash hands. 5 They're going to wash
	3 We're going to wash
60.2	
00.2	102 CHARLING E
	1 He lives with his parents . 5 I parents.
	2 They live with parents. 6 John
	3 We parents. 7 Do you live ?
	4 Jane lives 8 Most children
60.3	Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with his/her/their.
	1 I saw Sarah with her husband, Philip.
	2. Leavy Laura and Stave with children
	SARAH = PHILIP 3 I saw Steve with wife, Laura.
	4 I saw Gary withbrother, Tim.
	5 I saw Laura withbrother, Tim.
	6 I saw Sarah and Philip with son, Tim.
	7 I saw Laura withparents.
	GARY TIM LAURA = STEVE 8 I saw Emma and Robert with parents.
	EMMA ROBERT
60.4	Write my/our/your/his/her/their/its.
	1 Do you like <u>your</u> job?
	2 I know Mr Watson, but I don't know wife.
	3 Alice and Tom live in London. son lives in Australia.
	4 We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all friends.
	5 Anna is going out with friends this evening.
	6 I like tennis. It's favourite sport.
	7 'Is that car?' 'No, I haven't got a car.'
	8 I want to phone Maria. Do you know phone number?
	9 Do you think most people are happy in jobs?
	10 I'm going to wash hair before I go out.
	11 This is a beautiful tree. leaves are a beautiful colour.
	12 John has a brother and a sister. brother is 25, and sister is 21.
60.5	Complete the sentences. Use my/his/their etc. with these words:
	coat homework house husband job key name
	1 Jim doesn't enjoy his job . It's not very interesting.
	2 I can't get in. I haven't got
	3 Sally is married. works in a bank.
	4 Please take off and sit down.
	5 'What are the children doing?' 'They're doing'
	6 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, but I don't know'
	7 We live in Barton Street is at the end on the left.

Unit 61

Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.

A



It's my money.
It's our money.
It's ours.
It's your money.
It's his money.
It's his.
It's her money.
It's hers.
It's their money.
It's theirs.

- We use my/your etc.+ noun (my hands / your book etc.):
 - My hands are cold.
 - ☐ Is this your book?
 - ☐ Helen gave me her umbrella.
 - It's their problem, not our problem.

We use mine/yours etc. without a noun:

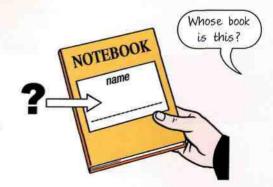
- ☐ Is this book mine or yours? (= my book or your book)
- ☐ I didn't have an umbrella, so Helen gave me hers. (= her umbrella)
- ☐ It's their problem, not ours. (= not our problem)
- □ We went in our car, and they went in theirs. (= their car)

You can use his with or without a noun:

- ☐ 'Is this his camera or hers?' 'It's his.'
- a friend of mine / a friend of his / some friends of yours etc.
 - □ I went out to meet a friend of mine. (not a friend of me)
 □ Tom was in the restaurant with a friend of his. (not a friend of him)
 - ☐ Are those people friends of yours? (not friends of you)
 - Whose ...?
 - □ Whose book is this? (= Is it your book? his book? my book? etc.)

You can use whose with or without a noun:

- □ Whose money is this?
 Whose is this?
- It's mine.
- ☐ Whose shoes are these? Whose are these?
- They're John's.



61.1 Complete the sentences with mine/yours etc.

1	It's your money. It's yours	5	It's their house. It's
2	It's my bag. It's	6	They're your books. They're
			They're my glasses. They're
4	They're her shoes. They're	8	It's his coat. It's

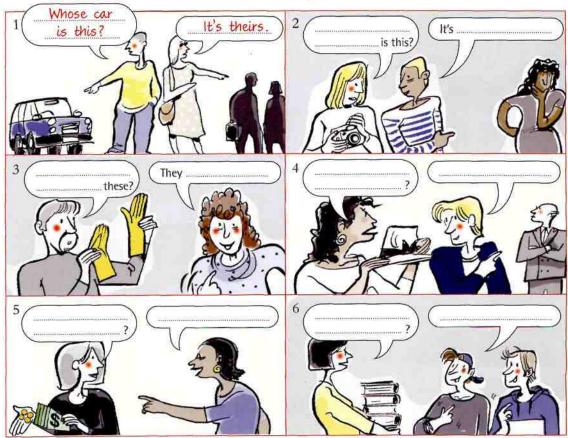
61.2 Choose the right word.

- 1 It's their/theirs problem, not our/ours. (their and ours are right)
- 2 This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
- 3 That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
- 4 Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
- 5 Catherine is going out with her/hers friends this evening.
- 6 My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
- 7 They've got two children, but I don't know their/theirs names.
- 8 Can we use your washing machine? Our/Ours isn't working.

61.3 Complete these sentences. Use friend(s) of mine/yours etc.

- 1 I went to the cinema with a <u>friend of mine</u>.
 2 They went on holiday with some <u>friends of theirs</u>.
- 3 She's going out with a friend
- 4 We had dinner with some
- 5 I played tennis with a
- 6 Tom is going to meet a
- 7 Do you know those people? Are they

61.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?



I/me/my/mine

Α



I etc. (→ Unit 59)	me etc. (→ Unit 59)	my etc. (→ Unit 60)	mine etc. (→ Unit 61)
I know Tom.	Tom knows me .	It's my car.	It's mine.
We know Tom.	Tom knows us.	It's our car.	It's ours.
You know Tom.	Tom knows you.	It's your car.	It's yours.
He knows Tom.	Tom knows him .	It's his car.	It's his .
She knows Tom.	Tom knows her.	It's her car.	It's hers.
They know Tom.	Tom knows them.	It's their car.	It's theirs.

В

Study these examples:

- Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I know him, but I can't remember his name.'
- ☐ She was very pleased because we invited her to stay with us at our house.
- A: Where are the children? Have you seen them?
 - B: Yes, they are playing with their friends in the park.
- ☐ That's my pen. Can you give it to me, please?
- "Is this your umbrella?" 'No, it's yours."
- ☐ He didn't have an umbrella, so she gave him hers. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- ☐ I'm going out with a friend of mine this evening. (not a friend of me)





62.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

- 1 We invited her to stay with us at our house.
 2 He invited us to stay with at his house.
 3 They invited me to stay with house.
 4 I invited them to stay house.
 5 She invited us to stay house.
- 6 Did you invite him _____ house?

62.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

62.4 Write him/her/yours etc.

- 1 Where's Amanda? Have you seen ________?
 2 Where are my keys? Where did I put ______?
 3 This letter is for Bill. Can you give it to ______?
 4 We don't see ______ neighbours much. They're not at home very often.
 5 'I can't find my pen. Can I use ______?' 'Yes, of course.'
 6 We're going to the cinema. Why don't you come with ______?
 7 Did your sister pass ______ exams?
- 8 Some people talk about _____ jobs all the time.

myself/yourself/themselves etc.

A



He's looking at himself.





They're enjoying themselves.

- I looked at myself in the mirror.
- ☐ He cut himself with a knife.
- □ She fell off her bike, but she didn't hurt herself.
- Please help yourself. (one person)
- ☐ Please help **yourselves**. (two or more people)
- □ We had a good holiday. We enjoyed ourselves.
- ☐ They had a nice time. They enjoyed themselves.

B Compare:

me/him/them etc.

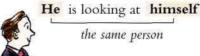


She is looking at him

different people



myself/himself/themselves etc.





- You never talk to me.
- □ I didn't pay for them.
- ☐ I'm sorry. Did I hurt you?

- ☐ Sometimes I talk to myself.
- ☐ They paid for themselves.
- ☐ Be careful. Don't hurt **yourself**.

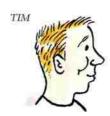
by myself / by yourself etc. = alone:

- ☐ I went on holiday by myself. (= I went alone)
- "Was she with friends?" 'No, she was by herself."

each other

- □ Kate and Helen are good friends. They know each other well.
 - (= Kate knows Helen / Helen knows Kate)
- □ Paul and I live near **each other**. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare each other and -selves:





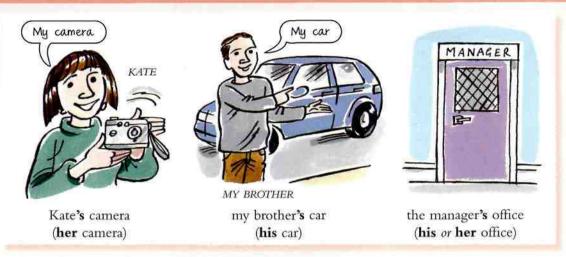
☐ Tim and Sue looked at **each other**. (= he looked at her, she looked at him)



□ Tim and Sue looked at themselves. (= he looked at himself, she looked at herself)

-'s (Kate's camera / my brother's car etc.)

A



We normally use -'s for people:

- ☐ I stayed at my sister's house. (not the house of my sister)
- ☐ Have you met Mr Black's wife? (not the wife of Mr Black)
- Are you going to James's party?
- ☐ Paul is a man's name. Paula is a woman's name.

You can use -'s without a noun after it:

- ☐ Sophie's hair is longer than **Kate's**. (= Kate's hair)
- □ 'Whose umbrella is this?' 'It's my mother's.' (= my mother's umbrella)
- "Where were you last night?" 'I was at Paul's.' (= Paul's house)

В

friend's and friends'



my **friend's** house = one friend (= **his** house or **her** house)

We write 's after

friend/student/mother etc. (singular):

my mother's car (one mother)
my father's car (one father)



my **friends'** house = two or more friends (= **their** house)

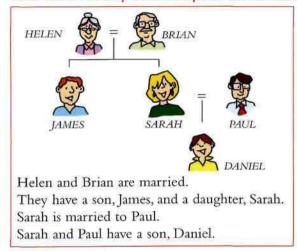
We write 'after friends/students/parents etc. (plural): my parents' car (two parents)

C

We use of ... for things, places etc.:

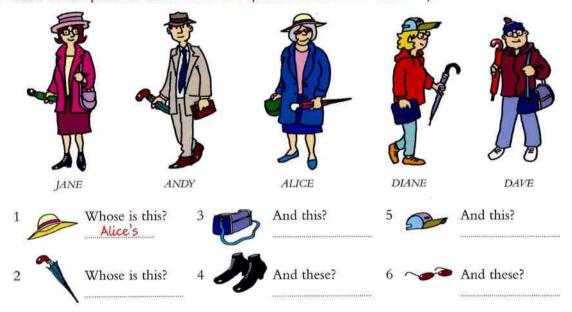
- Look at the roof of that building. (not that building's roof)
- □ We didn't see the beginning of the film. (not the film's beginning)
- ☐ What's the name of this village?
- □ Do you know the cause of the problem?
- ☐ You can sit in the back of the car.
- Madrid is the capital of Spain.

64.1 Look at the family tree. Complete the sentences about the people in the family.



	3°0 ya 70 ya	10
	Brian is Helen's husband.	
2	Sarah is Daniel's mother .	
3	Helen is	wife.
4	James is Sarah's	
	James is	
	Sarah is	
7	Helen is Daniel's	
8	Sarah is James's	
9	Paul is	husband.
10	Paul is Daniel's	
	Daniel is	nanham

64.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.



64.3 Are these sentences OK? Change them where necessary.

1	I stayed at the house of my sister.	my sister's house
2	What is the name of this village?	OK
3	Do you like the colour of this coat?	
4	Do you know the phone number of Simon?	
5	The job of my brother is very interesting.	
6	Write your name at the top of the page.	
7	For me, the morning is the best part of the day.	
8	The favourite colour of Paula is blue.	
9	When is the birthday of your mother?	
10	The house of my parents isn't very big.	
11	The walls of this house are very thin.	
12	The car stopped at the end of the street.	
13	Are you going to the party of Silvia next week?	(MANAGEMENT AND
14	The manager of the hotel is not here at the moment.	300000000000000000000000000000000000000

A



He's got a camera.



She's waiting for a taxi.



It's a beautiful day.

- $\mathbf{a} \dots =$ one thing or person:
 - Rachel works in a bank. (not in bank)
 - ☐ Can I ask a question? (not ask question)
 - ☐ I haven't got a computer.
 - ☐ There's a woman at the bus stop.

В

- an (not a) before a/e/i/o/u:
 - Do you want an apple or a banana?
 - I'm going to buy a hat and an umbrella.
 - ☐ There was an interesting programme on TV last night.

also an hour (h is not pronounced: an Mour)

but a university (pronounced yuniversity)

a European country (pronounced yuropean)

another (= an + other) is one word:

☐ Can I have another cup of coffee?

c

We use a/an ... when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:

- The sun is a star.
- □ Football is a game.
- □ Dallas is a city in Texas.
- ☐ A mouse is an animal. It's a small animal.
- Joe is a very nice person.

We use a/an ... for jobs etc.:

- □ A: What's your job?
 - B: I'm a dentist. (not I'm dentist)
- "What does Mark do?" 'He's an engineer."
- □ Would you like to be a teacher?
- ☐ Beethoven was a composer.
- ☐ Picasso was a famous painter.
- ☐ Are you a student?



65.1 Write a or an.

1 an old book	4 airport	7 university
2 window	5 new airport	8hour
3 horse	6 organisation	9economic problem

65.2 What are these things? Choose from the box.

bird flower	fruit game	mountain planet	river tool		musical instrument vegetable	
A duck	is a bird	A	······································	6	Saturn is	Diction :
A carrot	is			7	A banana is	
Tennis is	s			8	The Amazon is	
A hamn	ner is		0=-00000000H •		A rose is	
Everest i	is			10	A trumpet is	

65.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the list and complete the sentences.

architect	dentist	shop assistant	photographer
electrician	nurse	taxi driver	



1	She's a dentist.	5	
2	He's	6	
3	She	7	
4		8	And you? I'm

65.4 Write sentences. Choose from the two boxes. Use a/an where necessary.

1		
4 1 H	party	question foreign language bicycle
112		
•	1 1	bookshop hat

1	I want to ask you a question.
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	

train(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)

The plural of a noun is usually -s:

 $singular (= one) \rightarrow plural (= two or more)$

a flower → some flowers

a train → two trains

one week → a few weeks

a nice place → some nice places

this student -> these students





a flower

some flowers

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

These things are plural in English:











scissors

glasses

trousers

jeans

shorts

tights

pyjamas

- ☐ Do you wear glasses?
- ☐ Where are the scissors? I need them.

You can also say a pair of scissors / a pair of trousers / a pair of pyjamas etc.:

☐ I need a new pair of jeans. or I need some new jeans. (not a new jeans)

Some plurals do not end in -s:

this man → these men

a woman → some women

a child → many children

one foot → two feet

a tooth → all my teeth

a mouse → some mice

that sheep → those sheep a fish → a lot of fish

also a person → two people / some people / a lot of people etc.:

She's a nice person.

but They are nice people. (not nice persons)

D

People is plural (= they), so we say people are / people have etc.:

- ☐ A lot of people speak English. (not speaks)
- ☐ I like the people here. They are very friendly.

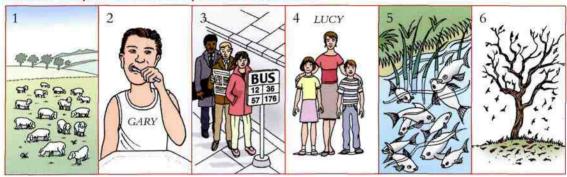
Police is plural:

- □ The police want to talk to anybody who saw the accident. (not The police wants)
- by → Units 21, 63, 109 at/on → Units 103, 106-107 preposition + -ing → Unit 112

66.1 Write the plural.

1	flower	flowers	5	umbrella	 9	family	
2	boat		6	address	 10	foot	
3	woman		7	knife	11	holiday	***************************************
4	city		8	sandwich	12	potato	

66.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- 1 There are a lot of sheep in the field,
- 3 There are three _____ at the bus stop.
- 4 Lucy has got two
- 5 There are a lot of _____ in the river.
- 6 The _____ are falling from the tree.

I need a new pair of jeans. OR

I need some new jeans.

66.3 Are these sentences OK? Change the sentences where necessary.

- 1 I'm going to buy some flowers.
- 2 I need a new jeans.
- 3 It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree.
- 4 There was a woman in the car with two mens.
- 5 Sheep eat grass.
- 6 David is married and has three childs.
- 7 Most of my friend are student.
- 8 He put on his pyjama and went to bed.
- 9 We went fishing, but we didn't catch many fish.
- 10 Do you know many persons in this town?
- 11 I like your trouser. Where did you get it?
- 12 The town centre is usually full of tourist.
- 13 I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them.
- 14 This scissor isn't very sharp.

66.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

- 1 It's a nice place. Many people ____________________________ there on holiday.
- 2 Some people _____ always late.
- 3 The new city hall is not a very beautiful building. Most people ______ like it.
- 4 A lot of people ______ television every day.
- 5 Three people _____ injured in the accident.
- 6 How many people in that house?
- 7 ____ the police know the cause of the explosion?
- 8 The police looking for the stolen car.
- 9 I need my glasses, but I can't find
- 10 I'm going to buy _____ new jeans today.

go or goes?

don't or doesn't? watch or watches? was or were? live or lives?

Do or Does?

is or are? it or them?

a or some?

a bottle / some water (countable/uncountable 1)

A

A noun can be countable or uncountable.

Countable nouns

For example: (a) car (a) man (a) bottle (a) house (a) key (an) idea (an) accident

You can use one/two/three (etc.) + countable nouns (you can count them):



one bottle



two bottles



three men



four houses

Countable nouns can be singular (= one) or plural (= two or more):

singular plural

a car the car

my car etc.

the cars

some cars m

many cars etc.

- ☐ I've got a car.
- New cars are very expensive.
- ☐ There aren't many cars in the car park.

You can't use the singular (car/bottle/key etc.) alone. You need a/an:

□ We can't get into the house without a key. (not without key)

В

Uncountable nouns

For example: water air rice salt plastic money music tennis



water



salt



money



music

You can't say one/two/three (etc.) + these things: one water two musics

Uncountable nouns have only one form:

money the money my money some mo

some money much

much money etc.

- ☐ I've got some money.
- ☐ There isn't much money in the box.
- ☐ Money isn't everything.

You can't use a/an + uncountable nouns: * money * music * wat

But you can say a piece of ... / a bottle of ... etc. + uncountable noun:

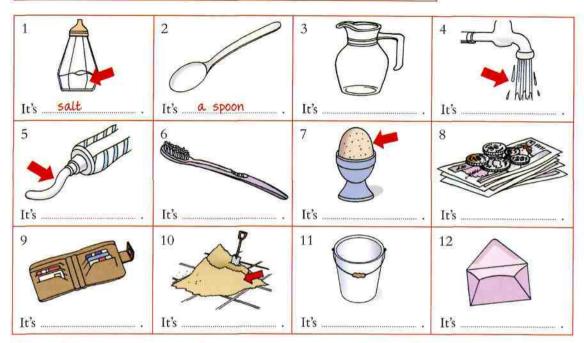
- a bottle of water
- a carton of milk
- a bar of chocolate

- a piece of cheese
- a bottle of perfume
- a piece of music

- a bowl of rice
- a cup of coffee
- a game of tennis

67.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write a/an if necessary. The names of these things are:

bucket	envelope	money	sand	toothbrush	wallet
egg	jug	salt	spoon	toothpaste	water



67.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need a/an. Write a/an where necessary.

- 1 I haven't got watch. a watch
- 2 Do you like cheese? OK
- 3 I never wear hat.
- 4 Are you looking for job?
- 5 Kate doesn't eat meat.
- 6 Kate eats apple every day.
- 7 I'm going to party tonight.
- 8 Music is wonderful thing.

- 9 Jamaica is island.
- 10 I don't need key.
- 11 Everybody needs food.
- 12 I've got good idea.
- 13 Can you drive car?
- 14 Do you want cup of coffee?
- 15 I don't like coffee without milk.
- 16 Don't go out without umbrella.

67.3 What are these things? Write a ... of ... for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.



bar	cup	loaf		bread	milk	tea
bowl	glass	piece	+	chocolate	paper	water
carton	jar	piece		honey	soup	wood

1	a carton of muk	4	 7	
2		5	 8	
3		6	9	

a cake / some cake / some cakes (countable/uncountable 2)

A

a/an and some

a/an + singular countable nouns (car/apple/shoe etc.):

☐ I need a new car.

□ Would you like an apple?



an apple

some + plural countable nouns (cars/apples/shoes etc.):

☐ I need some new shoes.

☐ Would you like some apples?

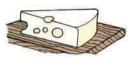


some apples

some + uncountable nouns (water/money/music etc.):

☐ I need some water.

□ Would you like some cheese? (or Would you like a piece of cheese?)



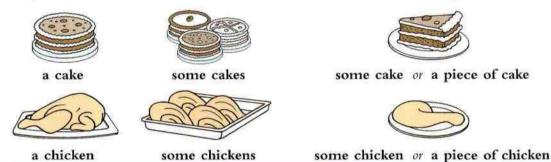
some cheese or a piece of cheese

Compare a and some:

- □ Nicole bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.
- □ I read a newspaper, made some phone calls, and listened to some music.

В

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:



Compare a paper (= a newspaper) and some paper:

- □ I want something to read. I'm going to buy a paper.
- but I want to make a shopping list. I need some paper / a piece of paper. (not a paper)

C

Be careful with:

advice bread furniture hair information news weather work

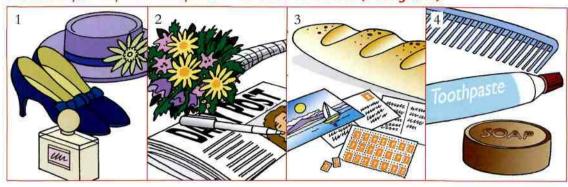
These nouns are usually uncountable. So you can't say a/an ... (a bread, an advice), and they can't be plural (advices, furnitures etc.).

- ☐ Can I talk to you? I need **some advice**. (not an advice)
- ☐ I'm going to buy **some bread**. (not a bread)
- ☐ They've got **some** very nice **furniture** in their house. (*not* furnitures)
- ☐ Silvia has got very long hair. (not hairs)
- □ I'd like **some information** about hotels in London. (not informations)
- ☐ Listen! I've just had **some** good **news**. (not a good news)
- ☐ It's nice weather today. (not a nice weather)
- Do you like your job?' 'Yes, but it's hard work.' (not a hard work)

We say a job (but not a work):

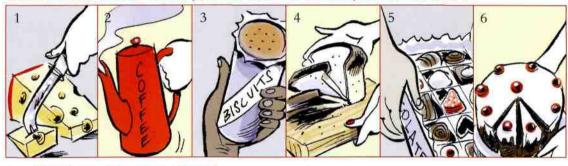
☐ I've got a new job. (not a new work)

68.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures to write sentences (I bought ...).



1 I bought some perfume, a hat and some shoes.
2 I bought
3

68.2 Write sentences with Would you like a ... ? or Would you like some ... ?



1	Would you like some cheese?	4	 ?
2	Would you like?	5	3
3	Would?	6	?

68.3 Write a/an or some.

- 1 I read _____ book and listened to ____ music.
- 2 I need _____ food.
- 3 We met interesting people at the party.
- 4 I'm going to open ____ window to get ____ fresh air.
- 5 Rachel didn't eat much for lunch only apple and bread.
- 6 We live in _____ big house. There's _____ nice garden with _____ beautiful trees.
- 7 I'm going to make a table. First I need _____wood.
- 8 Listen to me carefully. I'm going to give you _____ advice.
- 9 I want to write a letter. I need _____ paper and _____ pen.

68.4 Which is right?

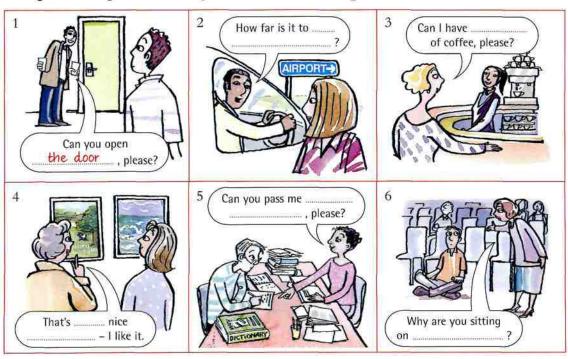
- 1 I'm going to buy some new shoe/shoes. (shoes is right)
- 2 Martin has got brown eye/eyes.
- 3 Paula has got short black hair/hairs.
- 4 The tour guide gave us some information/informations about the city.
- 5 We're going to buy some new chair/chairs.
- 6 We're going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.
- 7 It's hard to find a work/job at the moment.
- 8 We had wonderful weather / a wonderful weather when we were on holiday.

69.1 Write a/an or the.

- 1 We enjoyed our trip. The hotel was very nice.
- 2 'Can I ask ___ question?' 'Sure. What do you want to know?'
- 3 You look very tired. You need _____ holiday.
- 4 'Where's Tom?' 'He's in garden.'
- 5 Eve is _____ interesting person. You should meet her.
- 6 A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to _____ city centre?
 - B: Yes, go straight on and then take _____ next turning left.
- 7 A: Shall we go out for meal this evening?
 - B: Yes, that's good idea.
- 8 It's ____ nice morning. Let's go for ____ walk.
- 9 Amanda is ______ student. When she finishes her studies, she wants to be _____ journalist. She lives with two friends in _____ apartment near _____ college where she is studying. _____ apartment is small, but she likes it.
- 10 Peter and Mary have got two children, ______ boy and _____ girl. _____ boy is seven years old, and _____ girl is three. Peter works in _____ factory. Mary hasn't got _____ job at the moment.

69.2 Complete the sentences. Use a or the + these words:

airport cup dictionary door floor picture



turn off the light

69.3 These sentences are not correct. Put in a/an or the where necessary.

- 1 Don't forget to turn off light when you go out.
- 2 Enjoy your trip, and don't forget to send me postcard.
- 3 What is name of this village?
- 4 Canada is very big country.
- 5 What is largest city in Canada?
- 6 I like this room, but I don't like colour of carpet.
- 7 'Are you OK?' 'No, I've got headache.'
- 8 We live in old house near station.
- 9 What is name of director of film we saw last night?

the ...

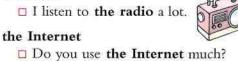
Α	We use the when it is clear which thing or person we mean:
	☐ What is the name of this street? (there is only one name)
	☐ Who is the best player in your team? (there is only one best player)
	☐ Can you tell me the time, please? (= the time now)
	☐ My office is on the first floor. (= the first floor of the building)
	Don't forget the:
	☐ Do you live near the city centre? (not near city centre)
	Excuse me, where is the nearest bank ? (not where is nearest)
В	the same
	□ We live in the same street. (not in same street)
	☐ 'Are these two books different?' 'No, they're the same.' (not they're same)
С	
	We say:
	the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the sea / the country
	☐ The sky is blue and the sun is shining.
	☐ Do you live in a town or in the country ?
	the police / the fire brigade / the army (of a city, country etc.)
	My brother is a soldier. He's in the army.
	□ What do you think of the police ? Do they do a good job?
	the top / the end / the middle / the left etc.
	☐ Write your name at the top of the page. the left the right
	☐ My house is at the end of the street.
	☐ The table is in the middle of the room.



D

☐ I listen to the radio a lot.

Paula is learning to play the piano.



□ Do you drive on the right or on the left in your country?

(play) the piano / the guitar / the trumpet etc. (musical instruments)





We do not use the with:

television / TV

- □ I watch TV a lot.
- ☐ What's on **television** tonight?

but Can you turn off the television? (= the TV set)

breakfast / lunch / dinner

- □ What did you have for **breakfast**? (not the breakfast)
- □ Dinner is ready!

next / last + week/month/year/summer/Monday etc.

- ☐ I'm not working **next week**. (not the next week)
- ☐ Did you have a holiday **last summer**? (not the last summer)



70.1	Put in the	where nece	ssary. Write	'OK' if the	sentence is	already corr	ect.	
	1 What is r	ame of this	street?		t	he name		
	2 What's or				C)K		400000000000000000000000000000000000000
			second floor.		4			
	4 Would yo							
		best hotel ir						
	6 What tim		i tilis tovii.					
	7 How far		entre?					
	8 We're goi	Service uses economic re-						
				5		************************		
	10 I didn't li		ext weekend		- 201000000			
	AUGUST THE SALIDSON DESCRIPTION OF STREET			<u>.</u>				***************************************
	11 I'm going			7 010000000000				
	12 Internet i	The second secon		normation.				
	13 My sister	•		dia.	(**********		***************************************	
	14 My dictio							
	15 We live in	country ab	out ten miles	from neare	est town			
70.2	Complete t	he sentence	es. Use the s	ame + th	iese words:			
	age	colour	problem	street	time			
	1 I live in N	North Street	and you live	in North S	treet. We live	in the sar	ne stree	<u>.</u>
	2 I arrived	at 8.30 and	you arrived at	8.30. We	arrived at			
			5. Jim and St					
			and so is my					
			d you've got					
70.3	Look at the	pictures a	nd complete	the senter	nces. Use the	e if necessar	у	
	10	2			4	5	6	Z Z Z
	M /-	all Co	000		(5)	- 4	7	PAUL ROBERTS
	3-00		1 180		11-11		36	CHRIS STONE
	((a))		100	Think a				KEBBECA
	1.		11.	(A)	++++			WATSON
	m	E 1	11/2		A PROPERTY OF		1	ARAH KENT
	(ha)	17	MO	RNING				M HOWARD
	The				W 1892 N			
			i			ning		
		0.75			5 They're sv			
	3 They're h	aving		•	6 Tim's nan	ne is at		of the list.
70.4	Complete t	hese senter	ices. Choose	from the	list. Use the	if necessary	•	
	capital	dinner	police	lunch	middle	name	sky	television
	1 We had	dinner	t a restaurant	last night				
			ice hotel, but	4,000	ember			
			is very					
			some good fil					
			to break into					
					oo i cancu		***************************************	(• I
			or		γ 'Δ	salad.'		
			or			saiati,		
	o I woke u) III		01 016	. mgnt.			

go to work go home go to the cinema



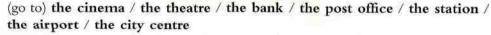
They're going to school.



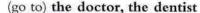
We say:

- (go) to work, (be) at work, start work, finish work
 - □ Bye! I'm **going to work** now. (not to the work)
 - □ I finish work at 5 o'clock every day.
- (go) to school, (be) at school, start school, leave school etc.
 - □ What did you learn at school today? (not at the school)
 - Some children don't like school.
- (go) to university/college, (be) at university/college
 - ☐ Helen wants to go to university when she leaves school.
 - □ What did you study at college?
- (go) to hospital, (be) in hospital
 - Jack had an accident. He had to go to hospital.
- (go) to prison, (be) in prison
 - □ Why is he in prison? What did he do?
- (go) to church, (be) in/at church
 - David usually goes to church on Sundays.
- (go) to bed, (be) in bed
 - ☐ I'm tired. I'm going to bed. (not to the bed)
 - "Where's Jane?" 'She's in bed.'
- (go) home, (be) at home etc.
 - ☐ I'm tired. I'm going home. (not to home)
 - ☐ Are you going out tonight, or are you staying at home?

В We say:



- ☐ I never go to the theatre, but I go to the cinema a lot.
- ☐ 'Are you going to the bank?' 'No, to the post office.'
- ☐ The number 5 bus goes to **the airport**; the number 8 goes to the city centre.



- ☐ You're not well. Why don't you go to the doctor?
- I have to go to the dentist tomorrow.





Exercises Unit 71

71.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1	2	3 庫青	4	5	6
~ (T)			1000	E O	TIT
0			8		
					TO THE
				7 111	

1	He's in bed .	3	She's in	5	They're at	
2	They're at	4	She's at	6	He's in	

71.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.

	bank	bea	cnurch	nome	post office	school	station
1	I need t	o change s	ome money. I	have to go to	the bank .		
2	David u	sually goes	to church	on Sundays			
3	In Brita	in, children	go to		from the ag	e of five.	
4	There w	ere a lot o	f people at	waanna ee aa	waiting	for the train.	88
5	I phone	d you last 1	night, but you	weren't at			
6	I'm goir	ıg to		now.	Goodnight!		
7	I'm goir	ng to		to get	some stamps.		

71.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

15 Would you like to go to theatre this evening?

71.4 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

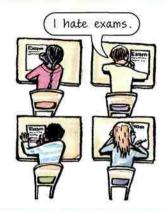
1	We went to cinema last night.	to the cinema
2	I finish work at 5 o'clock every day.	OK
3	Lisa wasn't feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor.	
4	I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed.	
5	Why is Angela always late for work?	
6	'Where are your children?' 'They're at school.'	
7	We have no money in bank.	
8	When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday.	311 -101-031
9	What time do you usually get home from work?	36-0-1-0-1-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-
10	Do you live far from city centre?	
11	'Where shall we meet?' 'At station.'	
12	Jim is ill. He's in hospital.	
13	Kate takes her children to school every day.	
14	Would you like to go to university?	

I like music

I hate exams

A







Do not use the for general ideas:

- ☐ I like **music**, especially **classical music**. (not the music ... the classical music)
- We don't eat meat very often. (not the meat)
- ☐ **Life** is not possible without **water**. (not The life ... the water)
- ☐ I hate exams. (not the exams)
- □ Do you know a shop that sells foreign newspapers?
- I'm not very good at writing letters.



Do not use the for games and sports:

My favourite sports are football and skiing. (not the football ... the skiing)

Do not use the for languages or school subjects (history/geography/physics/biology etc.):

- □ Do you think English is difficult? (not the English)
- ☐ Tom's brother is studying physics and chemistry.

В

flowers or the flowers?

Compare:

- ☐ Flowers are beautiful. (= flowers in general)
- ☐ I don't like **cold weather**. (= cold weather in general)
- ☐ We don't eat **fish** very often. (= fish in general)
- □ Are you interested in history?
 (= history in general)

- ☐ I love this garden.

 The flowers are beautiful.

 (= the flowers in this garden)
- ☐ The weather isn't very good today.
 (= the weather today)
- □ We had a great meal last night. The fish was excellent. (= the fish we ate last night)
- ☐ Do you know much about **the history** of your country?



Exercises Unit 72

72.1 What do you think about these things?

big cities	computer games	exams	jazz	parties
chocolate	dogs	housework	museums	tennis

Choose seven of these things and write sentences with:

1	like	I don't lil	(e	I love	I hate	or	is/are all ri	ight
1	1 hate	exams.	or	l like exa	ms. or	Exams	are all right.	(etc.)
2								
3			*************	***************************************			***************************************	
4	100011011111111111111111111111111111111						***************************************	
5						***************************************		
6			,					
7	1		***************************************	*************************				
8	71							

72.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

	I'm not interest		I know a little about	I don't know anything about
1	(history)	I'm ver	y interested in history.	
2	(politics)	I		
3	(sport)			
4	(art)	***************************************		
5	(astronomy)			
6	(economics)			

I don't know much about

I know a lot about

72.3 Which is right?

- 1 My favourite sport is football / the football. (football is right)
- 2 I like this hotel. Rooms / The rooms are very nice. (The rooms is right)
- 3 Everybody needs friends / the friends.

I'm (very) interested in

- 4 Jane doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
- 5 I went shopping this morning. Shops / The shops were very busy.
- 6 'Where's milk / the milk?' 'It's in the fridge.'
- 7 I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
- 8 'Do you do any sports?' 'Yes, I play basketball / the basketball.'
- 9 'What does your brother do?' 'He sells computers / the computers.'
- 10 We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
- 11 I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
- 12 Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
- 13 I like this town. I like people / the people here.
- 14 Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
- 15 Houses / The houses in this street are all the same.
- 16 I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
- 17 I enjoy taking photographs / the photographs. It's my hobby.
- 18 Do you want to see photographs / the photographs that I took when I was on holiday?
- 19 English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
- 20 Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.

the ... (names of places)

A

Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns etc.)

In general we do not use the with names of places:

- ☐ **France** is a very large country. (*not* the France)
- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- Corsica is an island in the Mediterranean.
- Peru is in South America.

But we use **the** in names with 'republic'/'states'/'kingdom':

the Czech Republic

the United States of America (the USA)

the United Kingdom (the UK)

В

the -s (plural names)

We use the with plural names of countries/islands/mountains:

the Canary Islands the Netherlands

the Philippines the Alps

Seas, rivers etc.

We use **the** with names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:

the Atlantic (Ocean) the (River) Nile

the Mediterranean (Sea) the Suez Canal

the Amazon

the Black Sea

D

Places in towns (streets, buildings etc.)

In general we do not use the with names of streets, squares etc.:

- Kevin lives in Newton Street.
- ☐ Where is **Highfield Road**, please?
- ☐ Times Square is in New York.

We do not use the with names of airports, stations and many other important buildings:

Kennedy Airport Victoria Station

Westminster Abbey Cambridge University London Zoo

Edinburgh Castle

But we use the with names of most hotels, museums, theatres and cinemas:

the Regent Hotel

the National Theatre

the Science Museum the Odeon (cinema)

the ... of ...

We use the + names with ... of ...:

the Museum of Modern Art

the University of California

the Great Wall of China

the Tower of London

We say the north / the south / the east / the west (of ...):

I've been to the north of Italy, but not to the south.



73.1 Answer these geography questions. Choose from the box. Use The if necessary.



1	Cairo	is the capital of Egypt.
2	The Atlantic	is between Africa and America.
3		is a country in northern Europe.
4		is a river in South America.
5		is the largest continent in the world.
6	.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	is the largest ocean.
7	.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	is a river in Europe.
8		is a country in East Africa.
9		is between Canada and Mexico.
10		are mountains in South America.
11		is the capital of Thailand.
12	**************************************	are mountains in central Europe.
13		is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
14		is an island in the Caribbean.
15	.,	are a group of islands near Florida.

Alps
Amazon
Andes
Asia
Atlantie
Bahamas
Bangkok
Cairo
Jamaica
Kenya
Pacific
Red Sea
Rhine
Sweden
United States

73.2 Write the where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write OK.

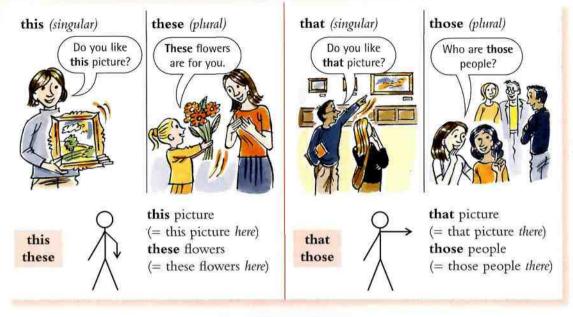
1	Kevin lives in Newton Street.	
2	We went to see a play at National Theatre.	at the National Theatre
3	Have you ever been to China?	10-10-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0-0
4	Have you ever been to Philippines?	
5	Have you ever been to south of France?	
6	Can you tell me where Regal Cinema is?	3(3)31333
7	Can you tell me where Merrion Street is?	
8	Can you tell me where Museum of Art is?	
9	Europe is bigger than Australia.	
10	Belgium is smaller than Netherlands.	
11	Which river is longer - Mississippi or Nile?	
12	Did you go to National Gallery when you were	
	in London?	
13	We stayed at Park Hotel in Hudson Road.	
14	How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria	
	Station (in London)?	
15	Rocky Mountains are in North America.	
	Texas is famous for oil and cowboys.	
17	I hope to go to United States next year.	
	Mary comes from west of Ireland.	
19	Alan is a student at Manchester University.	1981-9-11-9-11-9-11-9-11-9-11-9-11-9-11

Pacific Ocean.

20 Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and

this/that/these/those

A



В

We use this/that/these/those with a noun (this picture / those girls etc.) or without a noun:

- ☐ This hotel is expensive, but it's very nice.
- □ Who's that girl?' 'I don't know.'
- Do you like these shoes? I bought them last week.
- ☐ Those apples look nice. Can I have one?
- This is a nice hotel, but it's very expensive.
- "Excuse me, is **this** your bag?" 'Oh yes, thank you.'
- □ Who's **that**? (= Who is that person?)
- ☐ Which shoes do you prefer these or those? mpednorumicus

that = something that has happened:

- "I'm sorry I forgot to phone you." "That's all right."
- ☐ That was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

that = what somebody has just said:

- 'Yes, that's right.' 'You're a teacher, aren't you?'
- ☐ 'Martin has got a new job.' 'Has he? I didn't know that.'
- "I'm going on holiday next week." 'Oh, that's nice.'

D

C

We use this is ... and is that ...? on the telephone:

- Hi Sarah, this is David. (this = the speaker)
- Is that Sarah?

(that = the other person)

We use this is ... to introduce people:

- A: Brian, this is Chris.
 - B: Hello, Chris nice to meet you.

c: Hi.



AMANDA

BRIAN



Hi Sarah, this is David.

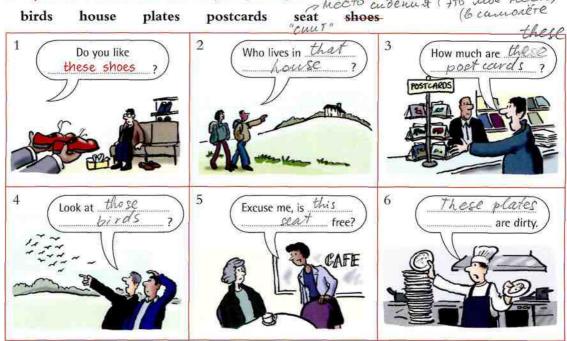
- cywectbur

with a noun

without a noun

DAVID

74.1 Complete the sentences. Use this/that/these/those + these words:





74.3 Complete the sentences with this is or that's or that.

1 A: I'm sorry I'm late.	5 A: Beth plays the piano very well.
B: That's all right.	B: Does she? I didn't know
2 A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.	6 Mark meets Paul's sister, Helen.
B: Oh, a pity. Why no	ot? PAUL: Mark, my sister, Helen.
3 on the phone	MARK: Hi, Helen.
SUE: Hello, Jane. Su	e. 7 A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.
JANE: Oh, hi Sue. How are you?	B:OK. Forget it!
4 A: You're lazy.	8 A: You're a friend of Tim's, aren't you?
B: not true!	B: Yes, right.

one/ones

one (= a ...)



Would you like one ?

= Would you like a chocolate ?

one = a/an ... (a chocolate / an apple etc.)

- ☐ I need a pen. Have you got one? (one = a pen)
- A: Is there a bank near here?
 - B: Yes, there's one at the end of this street. (one = a bank)

R

one and ones



Which one? = Which hat?

one = hat/car/girl etc.

this one / that one

☐ Which car is yours? This one or that one? (= this car or that car)

the one ...

- □ A: Which hotel did you stay at? B: The one opposite the station.
- I found this key. Is it the one you lost?

the ... one

- I don't like the black coat, but I like the brown one.
- Don't buy that camera. Buy the other one.

a/an ... one

- ☐ This **cup** is dirty. Can I have **a clean**
- ☐ That biscuit was nice. I'm going to have another one.

ones (plural)



Which ones? = Which flowers?

ones = flowers/cars/girls etc.

these/those or these ones / those ones

- □ Which flowers do you want? These or those? or
 - These ones or those ones?

the ones ...

- A: Which books are yours? B: The ones on the table.
- I found these keys. Are they the ones you lost?

the ... ones

- I don't like the red shoes, but I like the green ones.
- Don't buy those apples. Buy the other ones.

some ... ones

- □ These cups are dirty. Can we have some clean ones?
- ☐ My shoes are very old. I'm going to buy some new ones.

Exercises Unit 75

75.1	A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use	one
	(not a/an) in the answers.	

there's a chemist in Mill Road B hasn't got a pen	B is going to get a bike B hasn't got an umbrella
1 A: Can you lend me a pen?	B: I'm sorry, I haven't got one .
2 A: Would you like to have a car?	
3 A: Have you got a bike?	B: No, but
4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella	B: I'm sorry, but

5 A: Would you like a cup of coffee? B: No, thank you.

B has just had a cup of coffee

B: Yes,

75.2 Complete the sentences. Use a/an ... one. Use the words in the list.

B doesn't need a car

6 A: Is there a chemist near here?

	better big clean different new old	
1	This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one	
2	I'm going to sell my car and buy	3
3	That's not a very good photograph, but this is	
	I want today's newspaper. This is	
5	This box is too small. I need	
6	Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to	

75.3 A is talking to B. Use the information to complete the conversations. Use one/ones.

1 A stayed at a hotel. It was opposite the station. A: We stayed at a hotel. B: Which one ? A: The one opposite the station.	6 A is looking at a picture. It's on the wall. A: That's an interesting picture. B:? A:?
2 A sees some shoes in a shop window. They're green. A: I like those shoes. B: Which? A: The?	7 A sees a girl in a group of people. She's tall with long hair. A: Do you know that girl? B: ?
3 A is looking at a house. It has a red door. A: That's a nice house. B:? A: with?	8 A is looking at some flowers in the garden. They're yellow. A: Those flowers are beautiful. B:? A:?
4 A is looking at some CDs. They're on the top shelf. A: Are those your CDs? B:?	9 A is looking at a man in a restaurant. He has a moustache and glasses. A: Who's that man? B:? A:?
5 A is looking at a jacket in a shop. It's black. A: Do you like that jacket? B:? A:?	10 A took some photos at the party last week. A: Did I show you my photos? B: ? A:

some and any

A

some



Use some in positive sentences:

- I'm going to buy some clothes.
- There's some ice in the fridge.
- □ We made some mistakes.

any I haven't got any money.

Use any in negative sentences:

- I'm not going to buy any clothes.
- There isn't any milk in the fridge.
- ☐ We didn't make any mistakes.

В

any and some in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use any (not some):

- ☐ Is there any ice in the fridge?
- ☐ Has he got any friends?
- □ Do you need any help?

We normally use **some** (not **any**) when we offer things (Would you like ...?):

- ☐ A: Would you like some coffee?
 - B: Yes, please.

or when we ask for things (Can I have ...? etc.):

- ☐ A: Can I have **some** soup, please?
 - B: Yes. Help yourself.
- ☐ A: Can you lend me some money?
 - B: Sure. How much do you need?



c

some and any without a noun

- ☐ I didn't take any photographs, but Jane took some. (= some photographs)
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want any. (= any coffee)
- ☐ I've just made some coffee. Would you like some? (= some coffee)
- "Where's your luggage?" 'I haven't got any.' (= any luggage)
- 'Are there any biscuits?' 'Yes, there are **some** in the kitchen.' (= some biscuits)

D

something / somebody (or someone)

- ☐ She said something.
- ☐ I saw somebody (or someone).
- ☐ Would you like something to eat?
- □ Somebody's at the door.

anything / anybody (or anyone)

- She didn't say anything.
- ☐ I didn't see anybody (or anyone).
- ☐ Are you doing anything tonight?
- □ Where's Sue? Has anybody seen her?

76.1	Write some	or any.				
	1 I bought	some c	heese, but I d	idn't buyany	bread.	
				dstamps.		
			shops in this p			
	4 Gary and	Alice haven	't got	children.		
			brothers or si			
	6 There are	:bea	utiful flowers	in the garden.		
			good hotels			
			tea?' 'Ye	. Del 1980		
				ed very in	nteresting places.	
			e. We don't n			
		ACCOUNT OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	The second section of the second section of the second section of the second section s	but they didn't ha	in the	shop.
	12 I'm thirst	y. Can I hav	ve wat	er, please?		
76.2	Complete t	he sentenc	es. Use some	or any + the w	ords in the box	
	1/1		to the same			
	air	cheese	help	milk	questions	
	batteries	friends	languages	photographs	shampoo	
	1 I want to	wash my ha	ir. Is there	any shampoo	?	
						•
			The second secon	take		
				gn		70 TO THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY
	1050 15	•	13			of mine.
				i		
	7 The radio	isn't worki	ng. There are	n ' t		in it.
	8 It's hot in	this office.	I'm going ou	t for	fresh	6445)186(4441-4500-4500-4500-4500-4500-4500-4500-
	9 A: Would	l you like				
			ve had enougl			
	10 I can do t	this job alon	e. I don't nee	sd		
76.3	Complete t	he sentence	es. Use some	or any.		
	1 Jane didn	't take anv p	hotographs, b	ut I took some	(I/take)	
	2 'Where's	vour luggag	e?' 'I ha	ven't got any	' (I/not/have)	
	4 'Can you	lend me son	ne money?'	'I'm sorry, but		
	6 There we	re some nice	e oranges in tl	he shop, so		
	7 'How ma	ny phone ca	lls did you m	ake yesterday?'	¢	
76.4	Write some	thing/some	ebody or any	thing/anybody.		
	1 A woman	stopped me	and said	omething , but	I didn't understa	nd
				in r		ina.
				about politics?	ny cyc.	
					ittones w	
			7/5-	window. I don't		
				he bag. It's empt		
				s	6° 00	
			·			
				ause I wasn't hun	gry.	

not + any no none

Α



The car park is empty.

There are **no** cars in the car park.

How many cars are there in the car park? **None**.

not (-n't) + any

- There aren't any cars in the car park.
- ☐ Tracey and Jeff haven't got any children.
- ☐ You can have some coffee, but I don't want any.

no + noun (no cars / no garden etc.)

no ... = not any or not a

- There are **no cars** in the car park. (= there aren't any cars)
- ☐ We've got no coffee. (= we haven't got any coffee)
- ☐ It's a nice house, but there's **no garden**. (= there is**n't a** garden)

We use no ... especially after have (got) and there is/are.

 $negative \ verb + any = positive \ verb + no$

- ☐ They haven't got any children. or They've got no children. (not They haven't got no children)
- ☐ There isn't any sugar in your coffee. or There's no sugar in your coffee.

В

no and none

Use no + noun (no money / no children etc.):

- ☐ We've got no money.
- Everything was OK. There were no problems.

Use none alone (without a noun):

- "How much money have you got?" "None." (= no money)
- "Were there any problems?" 'No, none.' (= no problems)

C

none and no-one

none = 0 (zero) no-one = nobody

None is an answer for How much? / How many? (things or people):

- ☐ 'How much money have you got?' 'None.' (= no money)
- ☐ 'How many people did you meet?' 'None.' (= no people)

No-one is an answer for Who?:

□ 'Who did you meet?' 'No-one.' or 'Nobody.'

Exercises

77.1	Write these sentences again with	no.				
	1 We haven't got any money.	We've got no money.				
	2 There aren't any shops near here.3 Carla hasn't got any free time.	There are				
	4 There isn't a light in this room.					
	Write these sentences again with	Table 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1				
	5 We've got no money.6 There's no milk in the fridge.7 There are no buses today.8 Tom has got no brothers or sisters.	We haven't got any money.				
77.2	Write no or any.					
	1 There's sugar in your coffe 2 My brother is married, but he has 3 Sue doesn't speak foreign le 4 I'm afraid there's coffee. W 5 'Look at those birds!' 'Birds? W 6 'Do you know where Jessica is?'	n't gotchildren. anguages. ould you like some tea? //here? I can't see birds.'				
	Write no, any or none.					
	7 There aren't pictures or	the wall.				
	8 The weather was cold, but there w					
	2.72	they didn't have in the shop.				
	10 Everything was correct. There we 11 'How much luggage have you got?					
	12 'How much luggage have you got:					
	Complete the sentences. Use any o					
	100 011	The state of the s				
	answer difference friends money problems question	HERMANDER PROPERTY HARMANDER				
	1 Everything was OK. There were	no problems				
	,	n holiday, but they've got				
	3 I'm not going to answer					
	4 He's always alone. He's got					
		between these two machines. They're exactly the same.				
	6 There wasn't in the room. It was completely empty. 7 I tried to phone you yesterday, but there was					
	8 The house is cold because there is	ı't				
	9 There was get our tickets.	outside the cinema, so we didn't have to wait to				
77.4	Write short answers (one or two w	vords) to these questions. Use none where necessary.				
	1 How many letters did you write ye2 How many sisters have you got?3 How much coffee did you drink y4 How many photographs have you	esterday?				

not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing

A

not + anybody/anyone nobody/no-one (for people)



- There isn't { anybody anyone } in the room.
- \square There is $\begin{Bmatrix} nobody \\ no-one \end{Bmatrix}$ in the room.
- ☐ A: Who is in the room? B: Nobody. / No-one.

-body and -one are the same: anybody = anyone nobody = no-one not + anything nothing (for things)

- ☐ There isn't anything in the bag.
- ☐ There is nothing in the bag.
- A: What's in the bag?
 B: Nothing.

В

not + anybody/anyone

□ I don't know anybody (or anyone) here.

nobody = not + anybody no-one = not + anyone

- ☐ I'm lonely. I've got **nobody** to talk to. (= I have**n't** got **anybody**)
- ☐ The house is empty. There is **no-one** in it. (= There is**n't anyone** in it.)

not + anything

□ I can't remember anything.

nothing = not + anything

- She said nothing.
- (= She didn't say anything.)
- ☐ There's **nothing** to eat. (= There isn't **anything** to eat.)

c

You can use **nobody/no-one/nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):

- ☐ The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there. (*not* Anybody lives there)
- ☐ 'Who did you speak to?' 'No-one.'
- Nothing happened. (not Anything happened)
- □ 'What did you say?' 'Nothing.'

D

Remember: negative verb + anybody/anyone/anything positive verb + nobody/no-one/nothing

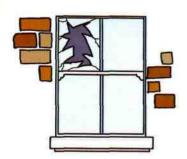
- ☐ He doesn't know anything. (not He doesn't know nothing)
- Don't tell anybody. (not Don't tell nobody)
- ☐ There is nothing to do in this town. (not There isn't nothing)

78.1	Write these sentences again with	nobody/no-one or nothing.	
C. 578.75		There's nothing in the bag.	
	1 There isn't anything in the bag.	There's	
	2 There isn't anybody in the office.		
	3 I haven't got anything to do.	I	
	4 There isn't anything on TV.		
	5 There wasn't anyone at home.		
	6 We didn't find anything.		
78.2	Write these sentences again with	anybody/anyone or anything.	
	1 There's nothing in the bag.	There isn't anything in the bag.	
	2 There was nobody on the bus.	There wasn't	
	3 I've got nothing to read.	116.6	
	4 I've got no-one to help me.		
	5 She heard nothing.		
	6 We've got nothing for dinner.		

78.3	Answer these questions with nob	ody/no-one or nothing.	
	1a What did you say? Nothing.	5a Who knows the answer?	
	2a Who saw you? Nobody.	6a What did you buy?	***************************************
	3a What do you want?	7a What happened?	
	4a Who did you meet?	8a Who was late?	
	New and the same superious.	with full contoners	
	Now answer the same questions i		
	Use nobody/no-one/nothing or a	10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 1	
	1b I didn't say anything.		
	2b Nobody saw me.		
	2000 100 MICONAMILE CONTRACTOR OF THE CONTRACTOR		
	THE COMMENSATION OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPER		
78.4			
		ing or anybody / anyone / anything	
	1 That house is empty. Nobody	lives there.	
	2 Jack has a bad memory. He can't	remember anything .	
	3 Be quiet! Don't say		
	4 I didn't know about the meeting.	told me.	
	5 'What did you have to eat?' '	. I wasn't hungry.'	
	6 I didn't eat	I wasn't hungry.	
	7 Helen was sitting alone. She wasn	't with	
	8 I'm afraid I can't help you. There'		
	9 I don't know		
	10 The museum is free. It doesn't co	st to go in.	
		when I opened it, there was	
	12 The hotel receptionist spoke very	fast. I didn't understand	
	13 'What are you doing tonight?'		
		knows where she is. She didn't tell	
	where she was	s going.	

somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

A



Somebody (or Someone)

has broken the window, somebody/someone

= a person, but we don't know who



She has got **something** in her mouth.

something = a thing, but we don't know what



Tom lives **somewhere** near London.

somewhere = in/to a place, but we don't know where

R

people (-body or -one)

somebody or someone

anybody or anyone

nobody or no-one

- ☐ There is **somebody** (or **someone**) at the door.
- ☐ Is there anybody (or anyone) at the door?
- ☐ There isn't anybody (or anyone) at the door.
- ☐ There is **nobody** (or **no-one**) at the door.

-body and -one are the same: somebody = someone, nobody = no-one etc.

things (-thing)

something

Lucy said **something**, but I didn't understand what she said.

anything

Are you doing anything at the weekend?

anyumig

☐ I was angry, but I didn't say anything.

nothing

"What did you say?" 'Nothing.

places (-where)

somewhere

Ruth's parents live **somewhere** in the south of England.

anywhere

Did you go anywhere interesting for your holidays?

☐ I'm staying here. I'm not going anywhere.

nowhere

☐ I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

something/anybody etc. + adjective (big/cheap/interesting etc.)

- □ Did you meet **anybody interesting** at the party?
- ☐ We always go to the same place. Let's go somewhere different.
- "What's that letter?" 'It's nothing important."

D

C

something/anybody etc. + to ...

- ☐ I'm hungry. I want **something to eat**. (= something that I can eat)
- ☐ Tony hasn't got **anybody to talk** to. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- ☐ There is **nowhere to go** in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

79.1	Write somebody (or someone) / something / somewhere.
	1 Lucy said <u>something</u> . What did she say?
	2 I've lost
	3 Sue and Tom went
	4 \ I'm going to phone
	7 7 8 8 8 8 9 9
79.2	Write nobody (or no-one) / nothing / nowhere.
1 3.2	Write modely (or no one) / normally
	Mallaina
	1a What did you say? Nothing.
	2a Where are you going?
	3a What do you want?
	4a Who are you looking for?
	NO N
	Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
	Use not + anybody/anything/anywhere.
	1b I didn't say anything. 3b
	2b I'm not4b
~~ ~	
79.3	Write somebody/anything/nowhere etc.
	1 It's dark. I can't see anything
	2 Tom lives somewhere near London.
	3 Do you knowabout computers?
	4 'Listen!' 'What? I can't hear
	5 'What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting for'
	6 We need to talk. There's I want to tell you.
	7 'Did see the accident?' 'No,'
	8 We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat
	9 'What's going to happen?' 'I don't know. knows.'
	10 'Do you know in Paris?' 'Yes, a few people.'
	11 'What's in that cupboard?' '
	12 I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them
	13 I don't like cold weather. I want to live warm.
	14 Is there interesting on television tonight?
	15 Have you ever met famous?
	15 Have you ever met tamous:
79.4	Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.
	something anything nothing do not park git
	UO CAL DAIK SIL
	something anywhere nowhere drink go read stay
	somewhere
	1 We don't go out very much because there's nowhere to go .
	2 There isn't any food in the house. We haven't got
	3 I'm bored. I've got
	4 'Why are you standing?' 'Because there isn't'
	5 'Would you like ?' 'Yes, please – a glass of water. 6 If you're going to the city centre, take the bus. Don't drive because there's
	7 I want I'm going to buy a magazine.
	8 I need in London. Can you recommend a hotel?
	o i necu in London. Can you recommend a notel?

every and all

A

every



Every house in the street is the same. every house in the street = all the houses in the street

We use every + singular noun (every house / every country etc.):

- ☐ Sarah has been to every country in Europe.
- □ Every summer we have a holiday by the sea.
- ☐ She looks different **every time** I see her.

Use a singular verb after every ...:

- □ Every house in the street is the same. (not are the same)
- □ Every country has a national flag. (not have)

Compare every and all:

- □ Every student in the class passed the exam.
- □ Every country has a national flag.
- ☐ All the students in the class passed the exam.
- All countries have a national flag.

В

every day and all day

every day = on all days:

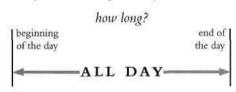
how often?



- ☐ It rained every day last week.
- ☐ Bill watches TV for about two hours **every evening**. (= on all evenings)

also every morning/night/summer etc.

all day = the complete day:



- ☐ It rained all day yesterday.
- On Monday, I watched TV all evening.(= the complete evening)

also all morning/night/summer etc.

c

everybody (or everyone) / everything / everywhere

everybody or everyone
(people)
everything
(things)
everywhere
(places)

□ Everybody (or Everyone) needs friends.

(= all people need friends)

- ☐ Have you got **everything** you need? (= all the things you need)
- ☐ I lost my watch. I've looked **everywhere** for it. (= I've looked in all places)

Use a singular verb after everybody/everyone/everything:

Everybody has problems. (not Everybody have)

Exercises Unit 80

80.1	Complete the sentences. Use every + these words:
	day room student time word
	1 Every student in the class passed the exam.
	2 My job is very boring. is the same.
	3 Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins
	4 in the hotel has satellite TV. 5 'Did you understand what she said?' 'Most of it, but not'
	5 Did you understand what sile said: Wost of it, but not
80.2	Complete the sentences with every day or all day.
	1 Yesterday it rained all day .
	2 I buy a newspaper, but sometimes I don't read it.
	3 I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home
	4 I usually drink about four cups of coffee
	5 Paula was ill yesterday, so she stayed in bed
	6 I'm tired now because I've been working hard
	7 Last year we went to the seaside for a week, and it rained
80.3	Write every or all.
	1 Bill watches TV for about two hours evening.
	2 Julia gets up at 6.30 morning.
	3 The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside
	4 I'm going away on Monday. I'll be away week.
	5 'How often do you go skiing?' ' year. Usually in March.'
	6 A: Were you at home at 10 o'clock yesterday?
	B: Yes, I was at home morning. I went out after lunch.
	7 My sister loves new cars. She buys oneyear. 8 I saw Sam at the party, but he didn't speak to me evening.
	9 We go away on holiday for two or three weeks summer.
22.6	
80.4	Write everybody/everything/everywhere.
	1 Everybody needs friends.
	2 Chris knows about computers.
	3 I like the people here. is very friendly.
	4 This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable and is very clean.
	5 Kevin never uses his car. He goes by motorcycle.
	6 Let's get something to eat. is hungry. 7 Sue's house is full of books. There are books
	8 You are right. you say is true.
00 5	
80.5	Complete the sentences. Use one word only each time.
	1 Everybody has problems.
	2 Are you ready yet? Everybody waiting for you.
	3 The house is empty. Everyone gone out.
	4 Gary is very popular. Everybodyhim. 5 This town is completely different now. Everythingchanged.
	6 I got home very late last night. I came in quietly because everyoneasleep.
	7 Everybody mistakes!
	8 A:everything clear?everybody know what to do?
	B: Yes, we all understand.

all most some any no/none

Α

Compare:

children/money/books etc. (in general):

- Children like playing. (= children in general)
- ☐ Money isn't everything. (= money in general)
- □ I enjoy reading books.
- □ Everybody needs friends.

the children / the money / these books etc:

- ☐ Where are the children?
 - (= our children)
- ☐ I want to buy a car, but I haven't got the money. (= the money for a car)
- ☐ Have you read these books?
- ☐ I often go out with my friends.

В

most / most of ..., some / some of ... etc.

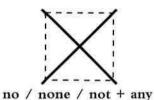


all









most some

most/some etc. + noun

all most some any	-of	cities children books money
----------------------------	-----	--------------------------------------

- ☐ Most children like playing. (= children in general)
- ☐ I don't want any money.
- Some books are better than others.
- He's got no friends.
- ☐ **All cities** have the same problems. (= cities in general)

Do not use of in these sentences:

- ☐ Most people drive too fast. (not Most of people)
- ☐ Some birds can't fly. (not Some of birds)

most of/some of etc.+ the/this/my ... etc.

all	(of)	tha			
most some	of	the this/that			
any none	61	these/those my/your etc.			

- ☐ Most of the children at this school are under 11 years old.
- □ I don't want any of this money.
- □ Some of these books are very old.
- □ None of my friends live near me.

You can say all the ... or all of the ... (with or without of):

- □ All the students in our class passed the exam. (or All of the students ...)
- □ Silvia has lived in London all her life. (or ... all of her life.)

C

all of it / most of them / none of us etc.

all		
most		it
		them
some	of	us
any		71 HOV
none		you

- You can have some of this cake, but not all of it.
- ☐ A: Do you know those people?
 - B: Most of them, but not all of them.
- □ Some of us are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- ☐ I've got a lot of books, but I haven't read any of them.
- ☐ 'How many of these books have you read?' 'None of them.'

LA	CICISCS	Ollit O1
81.1	Complete the sentences. Use the word in need of (some of / most of etc.).	brackets (some/most etc.). Sometimes you
	1 Most children like playing. (most) 2 Some of this money is yours. (some 3 people never stop talking. 4 the shops in the city centre	(some)
	5 You can change your money in	banks. (most) the living room. (any)
	9 Do you know the people 10 birds can fly. (most) 11 I enjoyed the film, but I d 12 sports are very dangerous	lidn't like the ending. (most) s. (some)
01.2	13 We can't find anywhere to stay. 14 You must have this cheese 15 The weather was bad when we were on he Look at the pictures and answer the ques	e. It's delicious. (some) oliday. It rained the time. (most)
81.2	all/most/some/none	
	 1 How many of the people are women? 2 How many of the boxes are on the table? 3 How many of the men are wearing hats? 4 How many of the windows are open? 5 How many of the people are standing? 6 How much of the money is Ben's? 	Most of them.
81.3	Are these sentences OK? Correct the sent	The state of the s
	 1 Most of children like playing. 2 All the students failed the exam. 3 Some of people work too hard. 4 Some of questions in the exam were very of the standard of the exam were very of	Most children OK easy.
	8 Most of students in our class are very nice.	***************************************

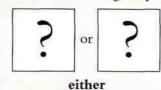
9 Most of my friends are going to the party.
10 I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of night.

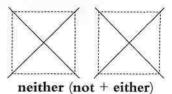
both either neither

A

We use both/either/neither to talk about two things or people:







- Rebecca has two children. **Both** are married. (**both** = the two children)
- □ Would you like tea or coffee? You can have either. (either = tea or coffee)
- ☐ A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?
 - B: Neither. I want to stay at home. (neither = not the cinema or the theatre)

Compare either and neither:

- ☐ 'Would you like tea or coffee?'
- ('Either. I don't mind.' (= tea or coffee)

 'I don't want either.' (not I don't want neither)

 'Neither.' (= not tea or coffee)

В

both/either/neither + noun

both	windows/books/children etc.
either neither	window/book/child etc.

- □ Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.
- First I worked in an office, and later in a shop. Neither job was very interesting.

I like both of those pictures

☐ There are two ways from here to the station. You can go either way.

c

both of ... / either of ... / neither of ...

both	(\mathbf{of})	the
either neither	of	these/those my/your/Paul's etc.

- □ Neither of my parents is British.
- □ I haven't read either of these books.

You can say both of the/those/my ... or both the/those/my ... (with or without of):

- □ I like both of those pictures. or I like both those pictures.
- □ Both of Paul's sisters are married. or Both Paul's sisters are married.
- but Neither of Paul's sisters is married. (not Neither Paul's sisters)

D

both of them / neither of us

STORY STATE OF THE	Second-III	The state of the state of
both		them
either	of	us
neither		you

- Paul has got two sisters. Both of them are married.
- ☐ Sue and I didn't eat anything. Neither of us was hungry.
- ☐ Who are those two people? I don't know either of them.

82.1 Write both/either/neither. Use of where necessary.

..... her sisters.

- 1 Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.
 2 There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like either of them.
 3 It was a good football match. teams played well.
 4 It wasn't a good football match. team played well.
 5 'Is your friend English or American?' She's Australian.'
 6 We went away for two days, but the weather wasn't good. It rained days.
 7 A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?

 B: I invited Donna and Mike to the party, but them came.
 9 'Do you go to work by car or by bus?' I always walk.'
 10 'Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?' 'I don't like them.'
 11 'Do you work or are you a student?' I work and I'm a student too.'
 12 Paula and I didn't know the time because us had a watch.
- 82.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use Both ... and Neither

Helen has got two sisters and a brother.
 Helen has got two sisters and a brother. I've met her brother, but I haven't met



1 Both cups are empty. 4 beards.
2 are open. 5 to the airport.
3 wearing a hat. 6 right.

82.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with Both/Neither of them

34					Neither of them is married.
1	Are you married?	No 21	No		Both of them are 21.
2	The state of the s	21	21 -	12	Dog. of Gion Mo 21.
3	Are you a student?	Yes	Yes	-3	students.
4	Have you got a car?	No	No	4	a car.
5	Where do you live?	London	London	5	
6	Do you like cooking?	Yes	Yes	6	
7	Can you play the piano?	No	No	7	
8	Do you read newspapers?	Yes	Yes	8	
9	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	No	No	9	

a lot much many









a lot of money

not much money

a lot of books

not many books

We use much + uncountable noun (much food / much money etc.):

- □ Did you buy **much food**?
- ☐ We haven't got much luggage.
- ☐ How much money do you want?
- ☐ A: Have you got any money? B: I've got some, but not much.

We use many + plural noun (many books / many people etc.):

- □ Did you buy many books?
- □ We don't know many people.
- ☐ How many photos did you take?
- ☐ A: Did you take any photos? B: I took some, but not many.

We use a lot of + both types of noun:

- We bought a lot of food.
- Paula hasn't got a lot of free time.

☐ We bought a lot of books.

Did they ask a lot of questions?

- ☐ There is a lot of food/money/ water ... (singular verb)
- ☐ There are a lot of trees/shops/ people ... (plural verb)
- ☐ A lot of people speak English. (not speaks)

We use much in questions and negative sentences:

- ☐ Do you drink much coffee?
- I don't drink much coffee.

But we do not often use much in positive sentences:

- ☐ I drink a lot of coffee. (not I drink much coffee)
- 'Do you drink much coffee?' 'Yes, a lot.' (not Yes, much)

We use many and a lot of in all types of sentences (positive/negative/question):

- We've got many friends / a lot of friends.
- ☐ We haven't got many friends / a lot of friends.
- ☐ Have you got many friends / a lot of friends?

You can use much and a lot without a noun:

- Donna spoke to me, but she didn't say much.
- □ 'Do you watch TV much?' 'No, not much.' (= not often)
- □ We like films, so we go to the cinema a lot. (not go to the cinema much)
- I don't like him very much.

		rite much	CO. T. STATE OF THE PARTY OF TH					
	1	Did you bu	1y much fo	ood?				
				otels in this town.				
				petrol. We need	to stop and	get some.		
				ple on the train?				
	5	Did	students fa	il the exam?				
			t got	g				
				t eat	. V			
	8	I don't kno	w where Gary	lives these days. I	haven't see	en him for	yea	rs.
	M	rite How r	nuch or How	many.				
	Q			people are co	ming to the	party?		
				milk do you v		100		
				bread did you				
				players are the		ball team?		
				# 450 2				
83.2	C	omplete th		lse much or man	Management of the	se words:		
		books	countries	luggage	people	time	times	
	1	I don't read	d very much. I	haven't gotma	ny books			
				t			entermination •	
				e you been to				?
	4	Tina hasn't	lived here very	y long, so she does	sn't know			
	5	'Have you	got			?'	'No, only this	bag.'
	6	I know Tol	kyo well. I've b	seen there				*****
83.3	C	omplete th	e sentences. L	lse a lot of + th	ese words	ă.		
00.0		ompiece en	e semeences. o	3C a 10 C O1 1 C1				
			le a also	C Inton			œ.	
		ccidents	books	fun intere	sting thing	gs tra	ffic	
	1	I like readi	ng. I havea	lot of books	sting thing	gs tra		
	1 2	I like readi We enjoye	ng. I havea d our visit to th	lot of books ne museum. We sa	sting thing	gs tra		
	1 2 3	I like readi We enjoyed This road i	ng. I have d our visit to the s very dangerou	lot of books ne museum. We sa us. There are	sting thing	gs tra		0-0-11
	1 2 3 4	I like readi We enjoye This road i We enjoye	ng. I have	Lot of books ne museum. We sa us. There are We had	sting thing	gs tra		
	1 2 3 4	I like readi We enjoye This road i We enjoye	ng. I have	lot of books ne museum. We sa us. There are	sting thing	gs tra		
83.4	1 2 3 4 5	I like readi We enjoyee This road i We enjoyee It took me	ng. I have	Lot of books ne museum. We sa us. There are We had	sting thing	gs tra		
83.4	1 2 3 4 5	I like readi We enjoyed This road i We enjoyed It took me	ng. I have	Lot of books ne museum. We sa us. There are We had drive here. There es much is not na	was was Cha	gs tra		
83.4	1 2 3 4 5 In	I like readi We enjoyed This road i We enjoyed It took me some of t Do you dr	ng. I havea d our visit to the s very dangeroud d our holiday. Value to a long time to hese sentence ink much coffe	Lot of books ne museum. We sa us. There are We had drive here. There	was	nge the se		
83.4	1 2 3 4 5 In 1 2	I like readi We enjoyed This road i We enjoyed It took me some of t Do you dr I drink mu	ng. I havea d our visit to the s very dangerou d our holiday. V a long time to hese sentence ink much coffe ich tea.	lot of books ne museum. We sa us. There are We had drive here. There es much is not na	e wasOKOK	nge the se	ntences or w	
83.4	1 2 3 4 5 In 1 2	I like readi We enjoyed This road i We enjoyed It took me some of t Do you dr I drink mu It was a co	ng. I have	Lot of books ne museum. We sa us. There are We had drive here. There es much is not na e? had much snow.	e wasOK	nge the se	entences or w	
83.4	1 2 3 4 5 In 1 2 3 4	I like readi We enjoyed This road i We enjoyed It took me some of t Do you dr I drink mu It was a co There wass	ng. I havea d our visit to the s very dangeroud d our holiday. You a long time to hese sentence ink <u>much coffe</u> ich tea. ld winter. We lan't <u>much snow</u>	Lot of books ne museum. We sa us. There are We had drive here. There es much is not na e? had much snow.	e wasOK	nge the se	entences or w	
83.4	1 2 3 4 5 In 1 2 3 4 5	I like readi We enjoyed This road i We enjoyed It took me Some of t Do you dr I drink mu It was a co There wass It costs mu	ng. I havea d our visit to the series very dangerous down holiday. You along time to hese sentence ink much coffe tele tele tele tele tele tele tele t	Lot of books ne museum. We sa us. There are We had drive here. There es much is not na e? had much snow. last winter.	e wasokokorld.	nge the se	entences or w	
83.4	1 2 3 4 5 In 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	I like readi We enjoyed This road i We enjoyed It took me I some of t Do you dr I drink mu It was a co There wass It costs mu We had a co Do you kn	ng. I havea d our visit to the servery dangerous dour holiday. You along time to hese sentence ink much coffe ich tea. Id winter. We lead to money to trackeap holiday. It wow much about much money to trackeap holiday. It was much about	ne museum. We sa us. There are We had drive here. There es much is not na e? had much snow. last winter. ravel around the w It didn't cost much tt computers?	e wasOk	nge the se	entences or w	
83.4	1 2 3 4 5 In 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	I like readi We enjoyed This road i We enjoyed It took me I some of t Do you dr I drink mu It was a co There wass It costs mu We had a co Do you kn	ng. I havea d our visit to the servery dangerous dour holiday. You along time to hese sentence ink much coffe the tea. Id winter. We lead to the much snow the money to treatheap holiday.	ne museum. We sa us. There are We had drive here. There es much is not na e? had much snow. last winter. ravel around the w It didn't cost much tt computers?	e was atural. Cha ok a. zorld.	nge the se	entences or w	
	1 2 3 4 5 In 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	I like readi We enjoyed This road i We enjoyed It took me I some of t Do you dr I drink mu It was a co There wass It costs mu We had a co Do you kn 'Have you	ng. I havea d our visit to the servery dangerous dour holiday. You a long time to hese sentence ink much coffe ich tea. Id winter. We leave the money to track the money to track about much about got any luggage.	tot of books ne museum. We sa us. There are We had drive here. There is much is not na e? had much snow. last winter. ravel around the w It didn't cost much it computers? e? 'Yes, much.'	e wasokokokokokok	nge the se	entences or w	
	1 2 3 4 5 In 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 W	I like readi We enjoyed This road i We enjoyed It took me Some of t Do you dr I drink mu It was a co There wass It costs mu We had a co Do you kn 'Have you	ng. I havea d our visit to the series to do our holiday. Ye a long time to hese sentence ink much coffer the ach tea. Id winter. We lead to the money to track the pholiday. It wow much about got any luggagences about the	tot of books me museum. We sa us. There are We had drive here. There es much is not not e? had much snow. last winter. ravel around the w It didn't cost much it computers? e?' 'Yes, much.' ese people. Use n	e wasokokokomokomokomokomomokomom	nge the se	entences or w	rite OK.
	1 2 3 4 5 In 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 W 1	I like readi We enjoyed This road i We enjoyed It took me I some of t Do you dr I drink mu It was a co There wast It costs mu We had a co Do you kn 'Have you /rite senter	ng. I havea d our visit to the sery dangerous dour holiday. You a long time to hese sentence ink much coffe ich tea. Id winter. We leave the money to track the much show much about got any luggage ices about the idms. (go to the	tot of books ne museum. We sa us. There are We had drive here. There is much is not not e? had much snow. last winter. ravel around the w It didn't cost much it computers? e? 'Yes, much.' ese people. Use not e cinema)	e wasokokokomokomokomokomokomokomom	nge the se lot of tea i lot. goes to t	entences or w	rite OK.
	1 2 3 4 5 In 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 W 1 2	I like readi We enjoyed This road i We enjoyed It took me I some of t Do you dr I drink mu It was a co There wast It costs mu We had a co Do you kn 'Have you Vrite senter Jim loves fi Nicole thin	ng. I have	ne museum. We sa us. There are We had drive here. There es much is not na e? had much snow. last winter. ravel around the w lt didn't cost much ut computers? e?' 'Yes, much.' ese people. Use n e cinema) g. (watch TV)	e was atural. Cha	nge the se lot of tea I lot. goes to the doesn't	entences or w he cinema a watch TV mu	rite OK.
	1 2 3 4 5 In 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 W 1 2 3	I like readi We enjoyed This road i We enjoyed It took me I some of t Do you dr I drink mu It was a co There wass It costs mu We had a c Do you kn 'Have you I'rite senter Jim loves fi Nicole thin Tina is a g	ng. I have	ne museum. We sa us. There are We had drive here. There es much is not na e? had much snow. last winter. ravel around the w It didn't cost much at computers? e? 'Yes, much.' ese people. Use n e cinema) g. (watch TV) er. (play tennis)	e was atural. Cha ok ororld. h. nuch and a He Sh She	nge the se lot of tea I lot. goes to the doesn't	he cinema a	orite OK.
83.4 83.5	1 2 3 4 5 In 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 W 1 2 3 4	I like readi We enjoyed This road i We enjoyed It took me I some of t Do you dr I drink mu It was a co There wast It costs mu We had a co Do you kn 'Have you I'rite senter Jim loves fi Nicole thin Tina is a g Martin door	ng. I have	ne museum. We sa us. There are We had drive here. There es much is not na e? had much snow. last winter. ravel around the w It didn't cost much at computers? e? 'Yes, much.' ese people. Use n e cinema) g. (watch TV) er. (play tennis)	e wasokokokokok	nge the se lot of tea i lot. goes to t e doesn't	entences or w he cinema a watch TV mu	lot.

(a) little (a) few

A

- (a) little + uncountable noun:
- (a) little water
- (a) little time
- (a) little money
- (a) little soup



a little water

- (a) few + plural noun:
- (a) few books
- (a) few questions
- (a) few people
- (a) few days



a few books

В

- a little = some but not much
 - She didn't eat anything, but she drank a little water.
 - ☐ I speak a little Spanish. (= some Spanish but not much)
 - ☐ A: Can you speak Spanish? B: **A little**.

- a few = some but not many
 - Excuse me, I have to make a few phone calls.
 - ☐ We're going away for a few days.
 - ☐ I speak a few words of Spanish.
 - A: Are there any shops near here?
 B: Yes, a few.

C

- **a little** (*without* **a**) = nearly no *or* nearly nothing
 - There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

You can say very little:

- Dan is very thin because he eats very little. (= nearly nothing)
- a few (without a) = nearly no
 - ☐ There were **few people** in the theatre. It was nearly empty.

You can say very few:

Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.

n

little and a little

A little is a positive idea:

☐ They have a little money, so they're not poor. (= they have some money)

Little (or very little) is a negative idea:

☐ They have **little** money. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)



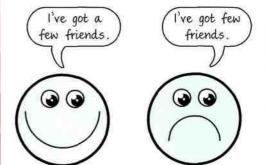
few and a few

A few is a positive idea:

☐ I've got a few friends, so I'm not lonely. (= I've got some friends)

Few (or very few) is a negative idea:

☐ I'm sad and I'm lonely. I've got **few** friends. (= nearly no friends)



Exercises Unit 84

84.1	Answer the questions with a little or a few.
	1 'Have you got any money?' 'Yes, a little '.' 2 'Have you got any envelopes?' 'Yes,
	3 'Do you want sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, , , please.' 4 'Did you take any photographs when you were on holiday?' 'Yes,
	6 'Are there any good restaurants in this town?' 'Yes,
84.2	Write a little or a few + these words:
	chairs days fresh air friends milk Russian times years
	1 Martin speaks Italian well. He lived in Italy for a few years 2 Can I have
84.3	Complete the sentences. Use very little or very few + these words:
	coffee hotels mistakes people rain time work
	1 Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes 2 I drink I don't like it. 3 The weather here is very dry in summer. There is 4 It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are 5 Hurry up. We've got 6 The town is very quiet at night go out. 7 Some people in the office are very lazy. They do
84.4	Write little / a little or few / a few.
	1 There was food in the fridge. It was nearly empty. 2 'When did Sarah go out?' ' minutes ago.' 3 I can't decide now. I need time to think about it. 4 There was traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected. 5 The bus service isn't very good at night – there are buses after 9 o'clock. 6 'Would you like some soup?' 'Yes,, please.' 7 I'd like to practise my English more, but I have opportunity.
84.5	Right or wrong? Change the sentences where necessary. Write <i>OK</i> if the sentence is correct.
	1 We're going away for few days next week. 2 Everybody needs little luck. 3 I can't talk to you now – I've got few things to do. 4 I eat very little meat – I don't like it very much. 5 Excuse me, can I ask you few questions? 6 There were little people on the bus – it was nearly empty. 7 Martin is a very private person. Few people know him well

old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)

adjective + noun (nice day / blue eyes etc.)

adjective + noun

It's a nice day today.

Laura has got brown eves.

There's a very old bridge in this village.

Do you like Italian food?

I don't speak any foreign languages.

There are some beautiful vellow flowers in the garden.

The adjective is *before* the noun:

- They live in a **modern house**. (not a house modern)
- ☐ Have you met any famous people? (not people famous)

The ending of an adjective is always the same:

a different place different places (not differents)

be (am/is/was etc.) + adjective

- ☐ The weather is nice today.
- ☐ These flowers are very beautiful.
- ☐ Are you cold? Shall I close the window?
- I'm hungry. Can I have something to eat?
- ☐ The film wasn't very good. It was boring.
- Please be quiet. I'm reading.



look/feel/smell/taste/sound + adjective



- "You look tired." 'Yes, I feel tired.'
- ☐ Gary told me about his new job. It sounds very interesting.
- I'm not going to eat this fish. It doesn't smell good.

Compare:

He	is feels looks	tired.
	looks	

They	are look sound	һарру.
------	----------------------	--------

It	is smells	good.
	tastes	

They live in a new house.

I

Exercises

85.1 Put the words in the right order.

- 1 (new / live in / house / they / a)
- 2 (like / jacket / I / that / green)
- 3 (music / like / do / classical / you?)
- 4 (had / wonderful / a / I / holiday)
- 5 (went to / restaurant / a / Japanese / we)

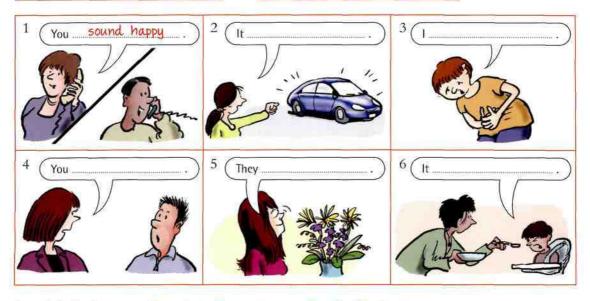
85.2 The words in the box are adjectives (black/foreign etc.) or nouns (air/job etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

air	clouds	foreign	holiday	job	languages	sharp
black	dangerous	fresh	hot	knife	long	water

- 1 Do you speak any foreign languages ?
- 3 Sue works very hard, and she's very tired. She needs a
- 4 I would like to have a shower, but there's no
- 5 Can you open the window? We need some
- 6 I need a ______ to cut these onions.
 7 Fire-fighting is a _____.

85.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.

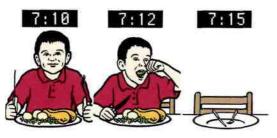
feel(s)	look(s)	sound(s)	4	happy	ill	nice
look(s)	smell(s)	taste(s)	т	horrible	new	surprised



85.4 A and B don't agree. Complete B's sentences. Use feel/look etc.

	A		
1 /	You look tired.	Do I? I don't feel tired	(feel)
2	This is a new coat.	Is it? It doesn't	(look)
3	I'm American.	Are you? You	(sound)
4	You look cold.	Do I? I	(feel)
5	These bags are heavy.	Are they? They	(look)
6	That soup looks good.	Maybe, but it	(taste)

quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)



He ate his dinner very quickly.



Suddenly the shelf fell down.

Quickly and suddenly are adverbs.

 $adjective + -ly \rightarrow adverb$:

adjective adverb quick quickly

bad badly sudden suddenly careful carefully heavy heavily

etc.

Spelling (\rightarrow Appendix 5): easy \rightarrow easily

heavy → heavily

Adverbs tell you how something happens or how somebody does something:

- ☐ The train stopped suddenly.
- I opened the door slowly.
- Please listen carefully.
- I understand you perfectly.



It's raining heavily.

Compare:

adjective

- Sue is very quiet.
- □ Be careful!
- ☐ It was a bad game.
- □ I felt nervous.

(= I was nervous)

adverb

- ☐ Sue **speaks** very **quietly**. (not speaks very quiet)
- Listen carefully! (not listen careful)
- Our team **played badly**. (not played bad)
- □ I waited nervously.

hard fast late early

These words are adjectives and adverbs:

- ☐ Sue's job is very hard.
- Ben is a fast runner.
- ☐ The bus was late/early.
- ☐ Sue works very hard. (not hardly)
- Ben can run fast.
- ☐ I went to bed late/early.

good (adjective) → well (adverb)

- Your English is very good.
- It was a good game.
- ☐ You speak English very well. (not very good)
- Our team played well.

But well is also an adjective (= not ill, in good health):

'I'm very well, thank you. And you?' ☐ 'How are you?'

Exercises Unit 86

86.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with these adverbs:

badly	dangerously	fast	heavily	quietly	
2	3	4		5	6
	STATE OF THE PARTY		1 3-	_ 30	
i Part	23	1 70	5,5	二世	
		N S			
- Ting	17	$\Pi = I$	12/	-	
1 1	5/1		_	<u> </u>	
	badly 2 Co	badly dangerously	badly dangerously fast	100	badly dangerously fast heavily quietly

1	It's raining heavily		he shouted at me	
	He sings very			
3	They came in	e ()	le was driving	

86.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come	know	sleep	win		carefully	clearly	hard	well
explain	-listen-	think	work	+	carefully	easily	quickly	well

- 1 I'm going to tell you something very important, so please ____listen carefully ____.
- 3 I'm tired this morning. I didn't ______ last night.
- 4 You play tennis much better than me. When we play, you always
- 5 _____ before you answer the question.
- 6 I've met Alice a few times, but I don't _____ her very _____.
- 8 Helen! I need your help.

86.3 Which is right?

- 1 Don't eat so quick/quickly. It's not good for you. (quickly is right)
- 2 Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything.
- 3 Can you speak slow/slowly, please?
- 4 Come on, Dave! Why are you always so slow/slowly?
- 5 Bill is a very careful/carefully driver.
- 6 Jane is studying hard/hardly for her examinations.
- 7 'Where's Diane?' 'She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly.'
- 8 Please be quiet/quietly. I'm studying.
- 9 Some companies pay their workers very bad/badly.
- 10 Those oranges look nice/nicely. Can I have one?
- 11 I don't remember much about the accident. Everything happened quick/quickly.

86.4 Write good or well.

- 1 Your English is very good . You speak it very well .
- 2 Jackie did very _____ in her exams.
- 4 Martin has a difficult job, but he does it
- 5 How are your parents? Are they _____?
- 6 Did you have a _____ holiday? Was the weather ____?

old/older expensive / more expensive

A



Older / heavier / more expensive are comparative forms.

The comparative is -er (older) or more ... (more expensive).

B older/heavier etc.

Short words (1 syllable) → -er:
old → older slow → slower
nice → nicer late → later big → bigger

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): big → bigger hot → hotter thin → thinner

Words ending in $-y \rightarrow -ier$:

easy → easier heavy → heavier early → earlier

- ☐ Rome is **old**, but Athens is **older**. (not more old)
- ☐ Is it **cheaper** to go by car or by train? (not more cheap)
- ☐ Helen wants a bigger car.
- ☐ This coat is OK, but I think the other one is nicer.
- ☐ Don't take the bus. It's easier to take a taxi. (not more easy)

far → further:

☐ 'How far is it to the station? A mile?' 'No, it's further. About two miles.'

more ...

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → more ...:

careful → more careful polite → more polite

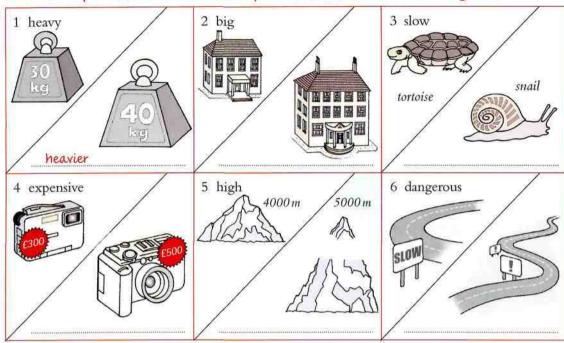
expensive → more expensive interesting → more interesting

- ☐ You must be more careful.
- □ I don't like my job. I want to do something more interesting.
- ☐ Is it more expensive to go by car or by train?

D good/well → better bad → worse

- ☐ The weather wasn't very **good** yesterday, but it's **better** today.
- ☐ 'Do you feel **better** today?' 'No, I feel **worse**.'
- ☐ Which is worse a headache or a toothache?

87.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (older / more interesting etc.).



87.2 Write the comparative.

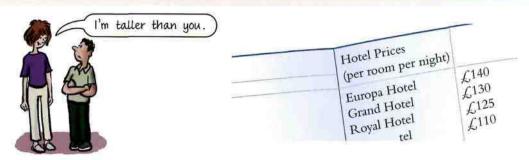
1	old	older	6	good	
2	strong		7	large	000000000000000000000000000000000000000
3	happy		8	serious	
4	modern		9	pretty	
5	important		10	crowded	30000000000000000000000000000000000000

87.3 Write the opposite.

1	younger	older	4	better	
2	colder		5	nearer	
3	cheaper		6	easier	

87.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

older than ... more expensive than ...



She's taller than him.

The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

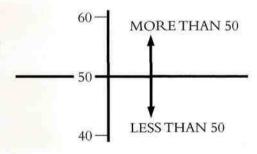
We use than after comparatives (older than ... / more expensive than ... etc.):

- Athens is older than Rome.
- ☐ Are oranges more expensive than bananas?
- ☐ It's easier to take a taxi than to take the bus.
- ☐ 'How are you today?' 'Not bad. Better than yesterday.'
- ☐ The restaurant is more crowded than usual.

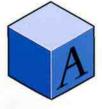
We usually say: than me / than him / than her / than us / than them. You can say:

- □ I can run faster than him. or I can run faster than he can.
- ☐ You are a better singer than me. or You are a better singer than I am.
- □ I got up earlier than her. or I got up earlier than she did.

- more/less than ...
 - ☐ A: How much did your shoes cost? £,50?
 - B: No, more than that. (= more than $\cancel{\ell}$,50)
 - ☐ The film was very short **less than** an hour.
 - ☐ They've got more money than they need.
 - ☐ You go out more than me.



a bit older / much older etc.









Box A is a bit bigger than Box B.

Canada is much bigger than France.

- bigger older a bit better than ... much more difficult more expensive
- □ Sue is a bit older than Gary she's 25 and he's 24.

Box C is much bigger than Box D.

- The hotel was much more expensive than I expected.
- You go out much more than me.

Exercises

88.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use than.



- 1 I'm 26.
- 2 I'm not a very good swimmer. 3 I'm 1 metre 68 tall.
- 4 I start work at 8 o'clock.
- 5 I don't work very hard.
- 6 I haven't got much money.
- 7 I'm a very good driver.
- 8 I'm not very patient.
- 9 I'm not a very good dancer.
- 10 I'm very intelligent.
- 11 I speak French very well.
- 12 I don't go to the cinema very much.

- 1 I'm 24.
- 2 I'm a very good swimmer.
- 3 I'm 1 metre 63 tall.
- 4 I start work at 8.30.
- 5 I work very hard.
- 6 I've got a lot of money.
- 7 I'm not a very good driver.
- 8 I'm very patient.
- 9 I'm a good dancer.
- 10 I'm not very intelligent.
- 11 I don't speak French very well.
- 12 I go to the cinema a lot.

	1 Liz is older than ben	7 Liz is a
	2 Ben is a better swimmer than Liz	8 Ben
	3 Liz is	9 Ben
	4 Liz starts Ben.	10 Liz
	5 Ben	11 Liz
	6 Ben has got	12 Ben
88.2	Complete the sentences. Use than.	
	1 He isn't very tall. You're taller than him	(OR taller than he is)
	2 She isn't very old. You're	
	3 I don't work very hard. You work	
	4 He doesn't watch TV very much. You	
	5 I'm not a very good cook. You	
	6 We don't know many people. You	
	7 They haven't got much money. You	
	8 I can't run very fast. You can	
	9 She hasn't been here very long. You	
	10 They didn't get up very early. You	
	11 He wasn't very surprised. You	
88.3	Complete the sentences with a bit or much	+ comparative (older/better etc.).
	1 Emma is 25. Gary is $24\frac{1}{2}$. Emma is a bit older than Gary.	
	2 Jack's mother is 52. His father is 69.	
	Jack's mother	
	3 My camera cost £100. Yours cost £96.	
	My camera	
	4 Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK. I feel	
	5 Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterda	
	6 Sarah is an excellent tennis player. I'm not ve Sarah	ery good.

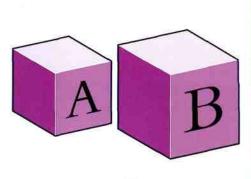
not as ... as

A

not as ... as







She's old, but she's not as old as he is.

Box A isn't as big as Box B.

- □ Rome is not as old as Athens. (= Athens is older)
- ☐ The Grand Hotel isn't as expensive as the Europa. (= the Europa is more expensive)
- ☐ I don't play tennis as often as you. (= you play more often)
- ☐ The weather is better than it was yesterday. It isn't as cold. (= as cold as it was yesterday)

В

not as much as ... / not as many as ...

- □ I haven't got as much money as you. (= you've got more money)
- ☐ I don't know as many people as you. (= you know more people)
- ☐ I don't go out as much as you. (= you go out more)

C

Compare not as ... as and than:

- □ Rome is **not as old as** Athens.
 Athens is **older than** Rome. (*not* older as Rome)
- ☐ Tennis isn't as popular as football.

 Football is more popular than tennis.
- ☐ I don't go out as much as you.
 You go out more than me.

D

We usually say: as me / as him / as her etc.

You can say:

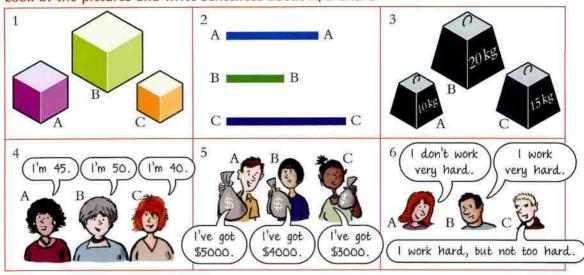
- ☐ She's not as old as him. or She's not as old as he is.
- ☐ You don't work as hard **as me**. or You don't work as hard **as I do**.

F

We say the same as ...:

- ☐ The weather today is **the same as** yesterday.
- My hair is the same colour as yours.
- □ I arrived at the same time as Tim.

89.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.



1	A is bug	ger than C, but not as big as B
2	A is	B, but not C.
3	C is	A, but
4	A is	, but
5	B has got	
6	C works	

89.2 Write sentences with as ... as

- 1 Athens is older than Rome.
- 2 My room is bigger than yours.
- 3 You got up earlier than me.
- 4 We played better than them.
- 5 I've been here longer than you.
- 6 She's more nervous than him.

Rome isn't as old as Athens	
Your room isn't	
w. 11 1 1	

89.3 Write as or than.

- 1 Athens is older than Rome. 5 Joe isn't as intelligent he thinks.
 2 I don't watch TV as much you. 6 Belgium is smaller Switzerland.
 3 You eat more me. 7 Brazil isn't as big Canada.
 4 I'm more tired today I was yesterday. 8 I can't wait longer an hour.
- 89.4 Complete the sentences about Julia, Andy and Laura. Use the same age / the same street etc.





Andy

I'm 24. I live in Baker Street. I got up at 7.15. My car is dark blue.



Laura

I'm 24.
I live in Hill Street.
I got up at 7.45.
I've got a car. It's dark blue.

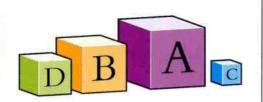
Julia

4 (colour) Andy's

1 (age) Andy is the same age as Laura
2 (street) Julia lives
3 (time) Julia got up

the oldest the most expensive

A



Box A is bigger than Box B.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.

Box A is the biggest box.

HOTEL PRICES IN KINTON

(Per room per night)

Europa Hotel	£140	Grosvenor	£100
Grand Hotel	£125	Bennets	£90
Royal	£120	Carlton	£85
Astoria	£115	Star	£75
Palace	£110	Station	£75

The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** all the other hotels in the city.

The Europa Hotel is the most expensive hotel in the city.

Bigger / older / more expensive etc. are comparative forms (→ Unit 87). Biggest / oldest / most expensive etc. are superlative forms.

B The superlative form is **-est** (**oldest**) or **most** ... (**most expensive**).

Short words (old/cheap/nice etc.) \rightarrow the -est:

old \rightarrow the oldest cheap \rightarrow the cheapest nice \rightarrow the nicest

but good → the best bad → the worst

Spelling (\rightarrow Appendix 5): big \rightarrow the biggest hot \rightarrow the hottest

Words ending in -y (easy/heavy etc.) → the -iest:

easy → the easiest heavy → the heaviest pretty → the prettiest

Long words (careful/expensive/interesting etc.) → the most ...:

careful → the most careful interesting → the most interesting

We say the oldest ... / the most expensive ... etc. (with the):

- ☐ The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town. (= it is **older than** all the other buildings)
- ☐ What is the longest river in the world?
- ☐ Money is important, but it isn't the most important thing in life.
- □ Excuse me, where is the nearest bank?

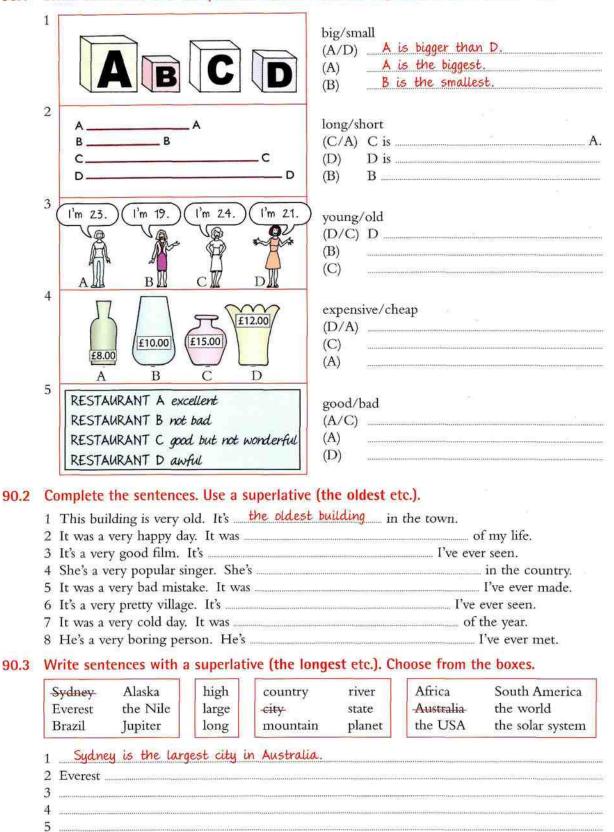
You can use the oldest / the best / the most expensive etc. without a noun:

- ☐ Ken is a good player, but he isn't **the best** in the team. (**the best** = the best player)
- You can use superlative + I've ever ... / you've ever ... etc.:
 - ☐ The film was very bad. I think it's the worst film I've ever seen.
 - ☐ What is the most unusual thing you've ever done?

D

E

90.1 Write sentences with comparatives (older etc.) and superlatives (the oldest etc.).



Unit 91

enough

A



She isn't going to take a taxi. She hasn't got **enough money**.



He can't reach the shelf. He isn't tall enough.

В

enough + noun (enough money / enough people etc.)

- 'Is there **enough milk** in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.'
- □ We wanted to play football, but we didn't have **enough players**.
- Why don't you buy a car? You've got enough money. (not money enough)

enough without a noun

I've got some money, but not **enough** to buy a car.

(= I need more money to buy a car)

- "Would you like some more to eat?" 'No, thanks. I've had enough."
- You're always at home. You don't go out enough.

C

adjective + enough (good enough / tall enough etc.)

- 'Shall we sit outside?' 'No, it isn't warm enough.' (not enough warm)
- ☐ Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?
- Don't buy that coat. It's nice, but it isn't long enough. (= it's too short)

Remember:

enough + noun but adjective + enough

enough money tall enough enough time good enough enough people old enough

D

We say:

enough for somebody/something

enough to do something

enough for somebody/something
to do something

- ☐ This pullover isn't big enough for me.
- ☐ I haven't got enough money for a new car.
- ☐ I haven't got **enough money to buy** a new car. (not for buy)
- Is your English good enough to have a conversation? (not for have)
- ☐ There aren't enough chairs for everybody to sit down.

Exercises Unit 91

91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use enough + these words:



- 91.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these adjectives + enough:

- 1 He isn't tall enough . 3 His legs aren't . 2 The car . 4 He .
- 91.3 Complete the sentences. Use enough with these words:

big eat loud milk old practise space time tired

1 'Is there enough milk in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.'

2 Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?

3 He can leave school if he wants – he's

4 When I visited New York last year, I didn't have to see all

- 4 When I visited New York last year, I didn't have _______ to see all the things I wanted to see.
- 5 This house isn't ______ for a large family.
 6 Tina is very thin. She doesn't _____.

- 9 Lisa isn't a very good tennis player because she doesn't ______.
- 91.4 Complete the sentences. Use enough with these words:

1	We haven't got enough money to buy a new car.	(money/buy)
2	This knife isn't tomatoes.	(sharp/cut)
3	The water wasn't swimming.	(warm/go)
4	Have we got sandwiches?	(bread/make)
5	We played well, but not the game.	(well/win)
6	I don't havenewspapers.	(time/read)

A



His shoes are too big for him.



There is too much sugar in it.

too + adjective / adverb (too big / too hard etc.)

- Can you turn the radio down? It's **too loud**. (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm too tired.
- I think you work too hard.



C

too much / too many = more than you want, more than is good:

- □ I don't like the weather here. There is too much rain. (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are too many people here.
- ☐ Emily studies all the time. I think she studies too much.
- ☐ Traffic is a problem in this town. There are **too many cars**.

D

Compare too and not enough:



too big

- ☐ The hat is **too big** for him.
- ☐ The radio is **too loud**. Can you turn it down, please?
- ☐ There's too much sugar in my coffee. (= more sugar than I want)
- ☐ I don't feel very well. I ate too much.



not big enough

- ☐ The hat isn't big enough for him. (= it's too small)
- ☐ The radio isn't loud enough. Can you turn it up, please?
- ☐ There's not enough sugar in my coffee. (= I need more sugar)
- You're very thin. You don't eat enough.

We say:

- too ... for somebody/something
- ☐ These shoes are too big for me.
- ☐ It's a small house too small for a large family.

- too ... to do something
- I'm too tired to go out. (not for go out) It's too cold to sit outside.
- too ... for somebody to do something
- She speaks too fast for me to understand.

92.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use too + these words:

	big	crowded	117		loud	low	
		2			4	5	
	2 The b	nusic is too to ox is et is	411111111111111111111111111111111111111	***************************************	. 5 The b	all is	 ***************************************
92.2	Write to	o / too much	/ too mai	ny or enou	gh.		
	2 I don't 4 There 5 You're 6 'Did y 7 You d 8 You d 9 I don't 10 Our to	always at home t like the weath wait for them. was nowhere to always tired. I you have rink on't eat t like the weath eam didn't play d you like some	er here. T I haven't o sit on the think you coff er here. It well. We	here's too got e beach. The work to eat?' ee. It's not vegetables.''s	Yes, thank good for yo You should	hard. you.' eat more. l. mistakes.	
92.3	Complet	e the sentence	es. Use to	o or enoug	gh with the	ese words:	
	2 Can ye 3 I don't 4 Don't 5 You ca 6 I could 7 Your y 8 I can't	dn't work. I ou turn the rad t want to walk buy anything in an't put all your dn't do the exer work needs to b talk to you no ght the film wa	io up, plea home. It's n that shop things in ccise. It we better. I	se? It	n't loud en	ough	. (loud) . (far) . (expensive) . (big) . (difficult) . (good) . (busy)
92.4	Complet	e the sentence	es. Use to	o (+ adiec	tive) + to .		
	1 (I'm n 2 (I'm n 3 (they'r 4 (noboo It's 5 (don't It's 6 (I didr	ot going out / ot going to bed e not getting m dy goes out at r phone Sue nov n't say anything	cold) l / early) narried / yonight / dar v / late) / surprised	It's It's oung) Th agerous)	s too colds ney're	l to go out	

Unit 93

He speaks English very well. (word order 1)

A

verb + object



The *verb* (**reads**) and the *object* (**a newspaper**) are usually together. We say:

Sue reads a newspaper every day. (not Sue reads every day a newspaper)



verb + object

He speaks English very well. (not He speaks very well English)

I like Italian food very much. (not I like very much ...)

Did you watch television all evening? (not Did you watch all evening ...)

Paul often wears a black hat. (not Paul wears often ...)

We invited a lot of people to the party.

I opened the door slowly.

Why do you always make the same mistake?

I'm going to borrow some money from the bank.

В

where and when

We went to a party last night . where? when?

Place (where?) is usually before time (when?). We say:

□ We went to a party last night. (not We went last night to a party)

place time (when? how long? how often?) (where?) Lisa walks to work every day. (not ... every day to work) Will you be at home this evening? (not ... this evening at home) (not ... early to bed) I usually go to bed early. at 7 o'clock. We arrived at the airport for 20 years. They've lived in the same house Joe's father has been in hospital since June.

Unit 94

always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)

A

These words (always/never etc.) are with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

always often ever rarely also already all usually sometimes never seldom just still both

- My brother never speaks to me.
- ☐ She's always late.
- □ Do you **often go** to restaurants?
- ☐ I sometimes eat too much. (or Sometimes I eat too much.)
- □ 'Don't forget to phone Laura.' 'I've already phoned her.'
- I've got three sisters. They're all married.

В

Always/never etc. are before the verb:

verb

always go
often play
never have
etc. etc.

- □ I always drink coffee in the morning. (not I drink always coffee)
- ☐ Helen **often goes** to London. (not Helen goes often)
- You sometimes look unhappy.
- ☐ They usually have dinner at 7 o'clock.
- ☐ We rarely (or seldom) watch television.
- □ Richard is a good footballer. He also plays tennis and volleyball. (not He plays also tennis)
- ☐ I've got three sisters. They all live in London.

But always/never etc. are after am/is/are/was/were:

am
is always often
never
was
were etc.

- □ I am always tired. (not I always am tired)
- They are never at home during the day.
- It is usually very cold here in winter.
- □ When I was a child, I was often late for school.
- 'Where's Laura?' 'She's still in bed.'
- ☐ I've got two brothers. They're both doctors.

Always/never etc. are between two verbs (have ... been / can ... find etc.):

•

verb 1 verb 2

vero 1		vero 2
will can do etc.	always often never	go find remember etc.
have has	etc.	gone been etc.

- □ I will always remember you.
- ☐ It doesn't often rain here.
- Do you usually go to work by car?
- ☐ I can never find my keys.
- ☐ Have you ever been to Egypt?
- ☐ A: Where's Laura?
 - B: She's just gone out. (She's = She has)
- ☐ My friends have all gone to the cinema.

94.1 Read Paul's answers to the questions. Write sentences about Paul with often/never etc.

94.2	Do you ever play tennis? Do you get up early? Are you ever late for work? Do you ever get angry? Do you ever get angry? Are you at home in the evenings? Write these sentences with never/always/usually etc. 1 My brother speaks to me. (never) 2 Susan is polite. (always) Susan 3 I finish work at 5 o'clock. (usually) I 4 Sarah has started a new job. (just) Sarah 5 I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) 6 The bus isn't late. (usually) 7 I don't eat fish. (often) 8 I will forget what you said. (never) 9 Have you lost your passport? (ever) 10 Do you work in the same place? (still) 11 They stay in the same hotel. (always)
	12 Jane doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually) 13 Is Tina here? (already) 14 What do you have for breakfast? (usually) 15 I can remember his name. (never)
94.3	Write sentences with also. 1 Do you play football? (tennis) 2 Do you speak Italian? (French) 3 Are you tired? (hungry) 4 Have you been to England? (Ireland) 5 Did you buy any clothes? (some books) Yes, and I
94.4	Write sentences with both and all. I live in London. I play football. I'm a student. I've got a car. I live in London. I play football. I'm a student. I've got a car.
	1 They both live in London. They football. students. cars. 2 They married. They England.

still yet already

A

still



The rain hasn't stopped



It is still raining now.

An hour ago it was raining.

still = something is the same as before:

- ☐ I had a lot to eat, but I'm still hungry. (= I was hungry before, and I'm hungry now)
- 'Did you sell your car?' 'No, I've still got it.'
- 'Do you still live in Barcelona?' 'No, I live in Madrid now.'

В

yet



Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Bill.



They are **still** waiting for Bill. Bill **hasn't come yet**.

yet = until now

We use **yet** in *negative* sentences (He **hasn't** come yet.) and in *questions* (**Has he** come yet?). **Yet** is usually at the end of a sentence:

- ☐ A: Where's Emma?
 - B: She isn't here yet. (= she will be here, but until now she hasn't come)
- ☐ A: What are you doing this evening?
 - B: I don't know yet. (= I will know later, but I don't know at the moment)
- ☐ A: Are you ready to go yet?
 - B: Not yet. In a minute. (= I will be ready, but I'm not ready at the moment)
- ☐ A: Have you finished with the newspaper yet?
 - B: No, I'm still reading it.

Compare yet and still:

- ☐ She hasn't gone **yet**. = She's **still** here. (*not* she is yet here)
- ☐ I haven't finished eating yet. = I'm still eating.

C

already = earlier than expected:

- "What time is Joe coming?" 'He's already here.' (= earlier than we expected)
- "I'm going to tell you what happened." "That's not necessary. I already know."
- ☐ Sarah isn't coming to the cinema with us. She has already seen the film.

Give me that book! Give it to me!

A

give lend pass send show

After these verbs (**give/lend** etc.), there are two possible structures:

give something to somebody

☐ I gave the keys to Sarah.

give somebody something

☐ I gave Sarah the keys.



В

give something to somebody

	something	to somebody
Give	it	to me.
give	them	·to her?
give	these flowers	to your mother?
lent	my car	to a friend of mine.
send	a postcard	to Kate?
showed	them	to us.
	Give give give lent send showed	Give it give them give these flowers lent my car send a postcard

o artizante

c

give somebody something

		somebody	something
Tom	Give gave	me his mother	that book. It's mine. some flowers.
Ĭ	lent	Joe	some money.
How much money did you	lend sent	him? you	an email. Did you get it?
Nicole	showed	us	her holiday photos.
Can you	pass	me	the salt, please?

You can also say 'buy/get somebody something':

- □ I bought my mother some flowers. (= I bought some flowers for my mother.)
- ☐ Can you **get** me a newspaper when you go out? (= get a newspaper **for** me)

D

You can say:

☐ I gave the keys to Sarah.

and I gave Sarah the keys.

(but not I gave to Sarah the keys)

☐ That's my book. Can you give it to me?

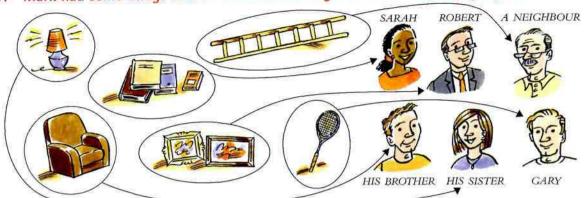
and Can you give me that book?

(but not Can you give to me that book?)

We prefer the first structure (give something to somebody) with it or them:

- ☐ I gave it to her. (not I gave her it)
- ☐ Here are the keys. Give them to your father. (not Give your father them)

96.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.



He gave it to his brother.

He gave

He

Write sentences beginning He gave

- 1 What did Mark do with the armchair?
- 2 What did he do with the tennis racket?
- 3 What happened to the books?
- 4 What about the lamp?
- 5 What did he do with the pictures?
- 6 And the ladder?

96.2 You gave presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.

1 PAUL	2 JOANNA	3 RICHARD	4 EMMA	5 RACHEL	6 KEVIN
4-6	(F3)	(TOS)	2	S Jun	2-
S. S.		W.O.			
- IT			Chocolato		

1	I gave Paul a book.	4	
2	I gave	5	
3	T	6	

96.3 Write questions beginning Can you give me ... ? / Can you pass me ... ? etc.

1	(you want the salt)	(pass)	Can you pass me the sait?
2	(you need an umbrella)	(lend)	Can you
3	(you want my address)	(give)	Can your
4	(you need twenty pounds)	(lend)	(0.000-
5	(you want some information)	(send)	
6	(you want to see the letter)	(show)	
7	(you want some stamps)	(get)	

96.4 Which is right?

- 1 I gave to Sarah the keys. / I gave Sarah the keys. (I gave Sarah the keys is right)
- 2 I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
- 3 Did you send the letter me? / Did you send the letter to me?
- 4 I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
- 5 Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
- 6 This is Lisa's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
- 7 I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.

and but or so because

A

and but or so because

We use these words (conjunctions) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A The car stopped. — The driver got out. sentence B

The car stopped and the driver got out.

B and/but/or

sentence A sentence B (we)* watched television. We stayed at home and My sister is married and (she)* lives in London. He doesn't like her, and she doesn't like him. I didn't read it. I bought a newspaper, but it hasn't got a garden. It's a nice house, but Do you want to go out, are you too tired? or

* It is not necessary to repeat 'we' and 'she'.

In lists, we use commas (,). We use and before the last thing:

- ☐ I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair and fell asleep.
- ☐ Karen is at work, Sue has gone shopping and Chris is playing football.

C

E

so (the result of something)

sentence A sentence B

It was very hot, so I opened the window.
Joe does a lot of sport, so he's very fit.

They don't like travelling, so they haven't been to many places.

D because (the reason for something)

I opened the window Joe can't come to the party
Lisa is hungry

Sentence B

it was very hot.
because he's going away.
because she didn't have breakfast.

Because is also possible at the beginning:

Because it was very hot, I opened the window.

In these examples there is more than one conjunction:

It was late and I was tired, so I went to bed.

☐ I always enjoy visiting London, but I wouldn't like to live there because it's too big.

97.1 Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use and/but/or.

- I stayed at home.
- I bought a newspaper.
- I went to the window.
- I wanted to phone you.
- I jumped into the river.
- I usually drive to work.
- Do you want me to come with you?
- I didn't have your number.
- Shall I wait here?
- I didn't read it.
- I went by bus this morning.
- I watched television.
- I swam to the other side.
- I looked out.

1	I stayed at home and watched television.
2	I bought a newspaper, but I didn't read it.
3	I
4	
5	
6	
7	

97.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use and/but/so/because.



- 1 It was very hot, 50 he opened the window.
- 2 They couldn't play tennis
- 3 They went to the museum,
- 4 Bill wasn't hungry,
- 5 Helen was late
- 6 Sue said

97.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use and/but etc.

1	(and)	In the evening I stayed at home and studied.
2	(because)	I went to bed very early because I was tired.
3	(but)	
4	(and)	
5	(so)	
6	(hecause)	

When ...

A

When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

when I went out + it was raining

You can say:

☐ When I went out, it was raining. or It was raining when I went out.

We write a comma (,) if **When** ... is at the beginning:

- □ { When you're tired, don't drive. Don't drive when you're tired.
- □ { Helen was 25 **when** she got married. **When** Helen got married, she was 25.



We do the same in sentences with before/while/after:

- Always look both ways **before** you cross the road. **Before** you cross the road, always look both ways.
- □ { While I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain. It began to rain while I was waiting for the bus.
- He never played football again after he broke his leg.

 After he broke his leg, he never played football again.

В

When I am ... / When I go ... etc.

Next week Sarah is going to New York. She has a friend, Lisa, who lives in New York, but Lisa is also going away – to Mexico. So they won't see each other in New York.

Lisa will be in Mexico when Sarah is in New York.

The time is *future* (**next week**) but we say:
... **when** Sarah **is** in New York.
(*not* when Sarah will be)



We use the present (I am / I go etc.) with a future meaning after when:

- □ When I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower. (not When I will get home)
- ☐ I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when I have more time.

We do the same after before/while/after/until:

- □ Please close the window **before** you **go** out. (not before you will go)
- Rachel is going to stay in our flat while we are away. (not while we will be)
- ☐ I'll wait here until you come back. (not until you will come back)

Exercises Unit 98

98.1 Write sentences beginning with when. Choose from the boxes.

,	When +	I went out I'm tired I phoned her I go on holiday the programme ended I got to the hotel	+	I turned off the TV I always go to the san there were no rooms it was raining there was no answer I like to watch TV	ne place	
1 2 3 4 5) 					
ϵ	5					
	before th	ly broke into the house ney crossed the road nt to live in New Zealand	W	efore they came here hile they were away	when they heard the news they didn't believe me	
2 3 4 5	They was After the Their has Where	vere very surprised	orm		?	
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	l I'm goi We mu Helen i Don't g We con When I I'm goi 'I need	I'll stay here until you coming to bed when I finish / st do something before it's s going away soon. I'm / so out yet. Wait until the see / We'll come and visit come / I'll come to see	I'll fir s / it v I'll be rain ste you w you to nope t ive / I	nish my work. vill be too late. very sad when she lead ops / will stop. hen we're / we'll be in morrow, I bring / I'll be o see some friends of tr 'Il give it to you before	England again. oring our holiday photos. nine while <u>I'm / I'll be</u> there. E I go / I'll go.'	
1 2 3 4 5	Can you What as When I'll wait When I	re you going to do when have enough money, for you while start my new job,	e <u>y</u> o	u go out));
6	Will yo	u be here when				ļ.

If we go ... If you see ... etc.

A



If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:

If at the beginning

If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.

If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.

If you're hungry, have something to eat.

If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

if in the middle

It will be cheaper
You'll miss the train
I'm going to the concert
Is it OK

if we go by bus.
if you don't hurry.
if I can get a ticket.
if I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the if-part of the sentence alone:

□ 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can get a ticket.'

If you see Ann tomorrow ... etc.

After if, we use the present (not will). We say 'if you see ...' (not if you will see):

- ☐ If you see Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
- ☐ If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (not if I will be)
- □ What shall we do **if** it **rains**? (not if it will rain)
- ☐ If I don't feel well tomorrow, I'll stay at home.

if and when

If I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure:

- ☐ A: Are you going out later?
- ☐ B: Maybe. If I go out, I'll close the windows.

When I go out = I'm going out (for sure):

- ☐ A: Are you going out later?
- ☐ B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I'll close the windows.

Compare when and if:

- □ When I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
- ☐ If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (not When I'm late)
- □ We're going to play tennis if it doesn't rain. (not when it doesn't rain)

Unit 99

Exercises

99.1 Write sentences beginning with if. Choose from the boxes.

	you don't hurry you pass the exam you fail the exam you don't want this magazine you want those pictures you're busy now you're hungry you need money		STER	you can have funch now you can have them I can lend you some you'll get a certificate you'll be late I'll throw it away we can talk later you can do it again			
	2 If	Min UNIT					
	5 6						
99.2	 Which is right? 1 If I'm / I'll be late this evening, don't wait for me. (I'm is right) 2 Will you call me if I give / I'll give you my phone number? 3 If there is /will be a fire, the alarm will ring. 4 If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I call / I'll call you in the evening. 5 I'm / I'll be surprised if Martin and Jane get / will get married. 6 Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you? 						
99.3	Use	your own ideas to complete th	ese se	entences.			
	2 If y 3 I d 4 If y 5 Tu 6 Tin 7 If I 8 We 9 I'll	you don't hurry, you'll miss to lon't want to disturb you if you go to bed early tonight, rn the television off if and won't pass her exams if have time tomorrow, e can go to the beach tomorrow be surprised if	he tra	a ticket. in.			
99.4	99.4 Write if or when. 1If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. 2 I'm going to do some shopping now I come back, we can have lunch. 3 I'm thinking of going to see Tim I go, will you come with me? 4 you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay at home. 5 Is it OK I close the window? 6 John is still at school he leaves school, he wants to go to college. 7 Shall we have a picnic tomorrow the weather is good? 8 We're going to Madrid next week. We haven't got anywhere to stay – we hope to hotel we get there. I don't know what we'll do we don't find						

If I had ... If we went ... etc.

A

Dan likes fast cars, but he doesn't have one. He doesn't have enough money.

If he had the money, he would buy a fast car.

Usually **had** is *past*, but in this sentence **had** is *not* past. **If** he **had** the money = if he had the money *now* (but he doesn't have it).



If	it d	nad / knew / lived / went (etc.) , lidn't have / didn't know (etc.) , were , could ,		would(n't)	buy be have go etc.
----	------	---	--	------------	---------------------------------

You can say:

- ☐ If he had the money, he would buy a car.
- or He would buy a car if he had the money.

I'd / she'd / they'd etc. = I would / she would / they would etc. :

- ☐ I don't know the answer. If I knew the answer, I'd tell you.
 - ☐ It's raining, so we're not going out. We'd get wet if we went out.
 - ☐ Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She wouldn't be happy if she lived in the country.
- ☐ If you didn't have a job, what would you do? (but you have a job)
- I'm sorry I can't help you. I'd help you if I could. (but I can't)
- ☐ If we had a car, we could travel more. (but we haven't got a car, so we can't travel much)

R

If (I) was/were ...

You can say 'if I/he/she/it was' or 'if I/he/she/it were':

- ☐ It's not a very nice place. I wouldn't go there if I were you. (or ... if I was you)
- ☐ It would be nice if the weather was better.

 (or ... if the weather were better)
- What would Tom do if he were here? (or ... if he was here)



C

Compare:

if I have / if it is etc.

- ☐ I must go and see Helen.

 If I have time, I will go today.

 (= maybe I'll have time, so maybe I'll go)
- □ I like that jacket.

I'll buy it if it isn't too expensive. (= maybe it will not be too expensive)

☐ I'll help you if I can. (= maybe I can help)

if I had / if it was etc.

- ☐ I must go and see Helen.

 If I had time, I would go today.

 (= I don't have time today, so I will not go)
- ☐ I like that jacket, but it's very expensive.

 I'd buy it if it wasn't so expensive.

 (= it is expensive, so I'm not going to buy it)
- I'd help you if I could, but I can't.

Exercises Unit 100

100.1 C	omplete the sentences.						
1	I don't know the answer. If I knew	the answer, I'd tell you.					
2	I have a car. I couldn't travel very much	if I didn't have a car.					
	I don't want to go out. If I						
4	We haven't got a key. If we	a key, we cou	ld get into the house.				
5	I'm not hungry. I would have something	g to eat if I	hungry.				
6	Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't do i						
	He can't speak any foreign languages. If						
*			speak a toteign				
0	language, perhaps he would get a better. You don't try hard enough. If you	harder was r	would have more success				
8	You don't try hard enough. If you	narder, you	would have more success.				
9	I have a lot to do today. If I	so mach to c	io, we could go out.				
100.2 P	ut the verb in the correct form.						
1	If he had the money, he would bu	y a fast car. (he/have)					
	Jane likes living in a city. She wouldn		he country. (she/not/be)				
	If I wanted to learn Italian,						
	I haven't told Helen what happened. Sh						
	If a ma						
	What would you do if						
	It's not a very good hotel.		A CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY O				
	If nearer London, we would go there more often. (we/live) It's a pity you have to go now nice if you had more time. (it/be)						
10	I'm not going to take the job. I'd take it	ī II	better.				
5904	(the salary/be)	- F-230 VC -5					
11	I don't know anything about cars. If the	car broke down,					
	what to do. (I/not/know)						
12	If you could change one thing in the wo	orld, what	?				
	(you/change)						
100.3 C	complete the sentences. Choose from t	he box and put the verb i	n the correct form.				
		* 4 h . 1 h . 1	14 13:				
	we (have) a bigger house	it (be) a bit cheaper	I (watch) it				
	we (buy) a bigger house	every day (be) the same	I (be) bored				
	we (have) some pictures on the wall	the air (be) cleaner					
	I'd buy that jacket if it was a bit ch						
	If there was a good film on TV tonight,						
	This room would be nicer if						
4	If there wasn't so much traffic,						
5	Life would be boring if						
6	If I had nothing to do,						
7	We could invite all our friends to stay if	Emission on the second					
8	If we had more money,						
100.4 C	omplete the sentences. Use your own	ideas.					
	I'd be happier if could get a better						
	If I could go anywhere in the world,						
	I wouldn't be very happy if						
	I'd buy if if						
	If I saw an accident in the street,						
6	The world would be a better blace if						

a person who ... a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1)



I met a woman. She can speak six languages.

she \rightarrow who

------1 sentence------

I met a woman who can speak six languages.



Jack was wearing a hat. It was too big for him.

it → that or which

...... 1 sentence-----

Jack was wearing a hat that was too big for him.

Jack was wearing a hat which was too big for him.

who is for people (not things):

A thief is a person Do you know anybody The man The people

who steals things.

who can play the piano? who phoned who work in the office

didn't give his name. are very friendly.

that is for things or people:

An aeroplane is a machine Emma lives in a house The people

that flies.

that is 400 years old. that work in the office

are very friendly.

You can use that for people, but who is more usual.

which is for things (not people):

An aeroplane is a machine Emma lives in a house

which flies. (not a machine who ...) which is 400 years old.

Do not use which for people:

Do you remember the woman who was playing the piano at the party? (not the woman which ...)

Exercises Unit 101

	necessary.	the boxes and	d write sentences: A .	is a per	rson wno Use	a dictionary
	a thief a butcher a musician	a dentist a fool a genius	doesn't tell the truth takes care of your te is very intelligent	eeth	is ill in hospital steals things does stupid things	is
	a patient	a liar	plays a musical instr	ument	sells meat	
1	A thief i	s a person w	ho steals things.			
2	A butcher is	a person				
3	A musician					
4						
5						
6	**********					
7						
8		Annana - Annan - Anna				
01.2 N	lake one ser	tence from t	wo.			
1			't give his name.) didn't give his name.			
2	*		or. She was wearing a		5	a yellow dre
3	3 (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.) Most of the students					
4	100	1 m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m	car. He wasn't very fri			***************************************
01.3 W	Vrite who or	which.				
1	I met a won	nan who	can speak six languages.			
			an has jus		vork in your office?	
			ver flows			
			was hanging o			
			wants to bu		7.5	
			are difficu		er.	
		The state of the s	is very good at repai			
			went to the party		it very much.	
			clothes ar			
		ig? Correct th				
	V 20 200	10 2 No		a perso	on who steals	
		erson which e is a machine		OK	311	
			ne who makes coffee.			
			that was on the table?			
			never stop talking.			
		ebody that car	117.7			
			orks in that shop.			

8 Correct the sentences who are wrong.

9 My neighbour bought a car who cost £40,000.

the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)

A



The man is carrying a bag. It's very heavy. 2 sentences

The bag (that) he is carrying is very heavy.



What is she going to do with it? 2 sentences

What is Kate going to do with the money

(that) she won?

1 sentence

You can say:

- ☐ The bag that he is carrying ... or The bag he is carrying ... (with or without that)
- ... the money that Kate won? or ... the money Kate won?

You do not need that/who/which when it is the object:

subject verb object The man → the bag (that) the man was carrying was carrying a bag some money → the money (that) Kate won Kate won some books You wanted → the books (that) you wanted → the people (who) we met We some people met

- Did you find the books you wanted? (or ... the books that you wanted?)
- ☐ The people we met were very friendly. (or The people who we met ...)
- □ Everything I said was true. (or Everything that I said ...)

We say:

В

C

☐ The film we saw was very good. (not The film we saw it was ...)

Sometimes there is a preposition (to/in/at etc.) after the verb:

Eve is talking to a man. \rightarrow Do you know the man Eve is talking to?

We stayed at a hotel. \rightarrow The hotel we stayed at was near the station.

I told you about some books.

These are the books I told you about.

We say:

... the books I told you about. (not the books I told you about them)

You can say '(a place) where ...':

☐ The hotel where we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed at ...)

You must use who/that/which when it is the subject (→ Unit 101):

- □ I met a woman who can speak six languages. (who is the subject)
- ☐ Jack was wearing a hat that was too big for him. (that is the subject)
- a person who ... , a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1) → Unit 101

Exercises Unit 102

102.1 Make one sentence from two. 1 (Helen took some photographs. Have you seen them?) Have you seen the photographs Helen took? 2 (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.) I've lost the 3 (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.) I like the 4 (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?) Where are the 5 (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.) 6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?) How 102.2 Make one sentence from two. 1 (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.) The bag I was carrying was very heavy. 2 (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.) The 3 (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.) The shoes ... 4 (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.) The _____ 102.3 You ask your friend some questions. Complete the sentences. 1 Your friend stayed at a hotel. You ask: What's the name of the hotel you stayed at 2 Your friend was talking to some people. You ask: Who are the people 3 Your friend was looking for some keys. You ask: Did you find the 4 Your friend is going to a party. You ask: Where is the 5 Your friend was talking about a film. You ask: What's the name of 6 Your friend is listening to some music. You ask: 7 Your friend was waiting for a letter. You ask: Did vou get 102.4 Complete the questions. Use where. 1 John stayed at a hotel. You ask him: Did you like the hotel where you stayed 2 Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her: What's the name of the restaurant 3 Sarah lives in a village. You ask her: How big is the 4 Richard works in a factory. You ask him: Where exactly is

Unit 103

at 8 o'clock on Monday in April

A

at



at 8 o'clock 10.30 midnight etc.

- ☐ I start work at 8 o'clock.
- ☐ The shops close at 5.30.

on



on Sunday(s) / Monday(s) etc. 25 April / 6 June etc. New Year's Day etc.

- ☐ Bye! I'll see you on Friday.
- ☐ What do you usually do on Sundays?
- ☐ The concert is on 22 November.

in



in April/June etc. 2003/1968 etc. summer/spring etc.

- ☐ I'm going on holiday in October.
- □ Emma was born in 1983.
- ☐ The park is beautiful in spring.

B We say:

at the weekend at night

at Christmas / at Easter

- at the end of ...
- at the moment
- ☐ Are you going away at the weekend?
- □ I can't sleep at night.
- □ Where will you be at Christmas? (but on Christmas Day)
- I'm going on holiday at the end of October.
- ☐ Are you busy at the moment?

c in the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening

- I always feel good in the morning.
- □ Do you often go out in the evening?

but

Е

on Monday morning / on Tuesday afternoon / on Friday evening / on Saturday night etc.:

- ☐ I'm meeting Joanne on Monday morning.
- ☐ Are you doing anything on Saturday night?

We do not use at/on/in before:

this ... (this morning / this week etc.)
last ... (last August / last week etc.)
next ... (next Monday / next week etc.)
every ... (every day / every week etc.)

- ☐ Are you going out this evening?
- □ We go on holiday every summer. Last summer we went to Canada.
- ☐ I'm leaving **next Monday**.

 (not on next Monday)

in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years etc.



- ☐ Hurry! The train leaves **in five minutes**. (= it leaves five minutes from now)
- ☐ Bye! I'll see you in a few days. (= a few days from now)

Exercises

103.1 Write at/on/in.

1 6 June	724 September	13 Friday morning
2 the evening	8Thursday	14Saturday night
3 half past two	9 11.45	15 night
4 Wednesday	10 Christmas Day	16 the end of the day
5 1997	11 Christmas	17 the weekend
6September	12the morning	18 winter

103.2 Write at/on/in.

1	Bye! See you	11 I often go away the weekend.	
2	Where were you 28 February?	12 I'm starting my new job 3 July.	
3	I got up	13 We often go to the beachsummer	Γ.
4	I like getting up early the morning.	14 George isn't here the moment.	
5	My sister got married May.	15 Jane's birthday is December.	
6	Diane and I first met 1991.	16 Do you work Saturdays?	
7	Did you go outTuesday?	17 The company started 1989.	
	Did you go outTuesday evening?	18 I like to look at the stars night.	
	Do you often go out the evening?	19 I'll send you the money the end of	of
	Let's meet 7.30 tomorrow evening.	the month.	
	auto-mente-musical mentenna armana amana da 1980 al 1986 de esta esta esta esta esta esta esta est		

103.3 Look at Lisa's diary for next week and complete the sentences.



1	Lisa is going to the cinema on Wednesday evening	
2	She has to phone Chris	13.E
3	She isn't doing anything special	
4	She's got a driving lesson	
5	She's going to a party	31 *
6	She's meeting Sam	82

103.4 Write sentences with in

1	It's 8.25 now. The train leaves at 8.30.	The train leaves in five minutes.
2	It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday.	I'll days.
3	Today is 14 June. My exam is on 28 June.	My
4	It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30.	Tom

103.5 Write at/on/in if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

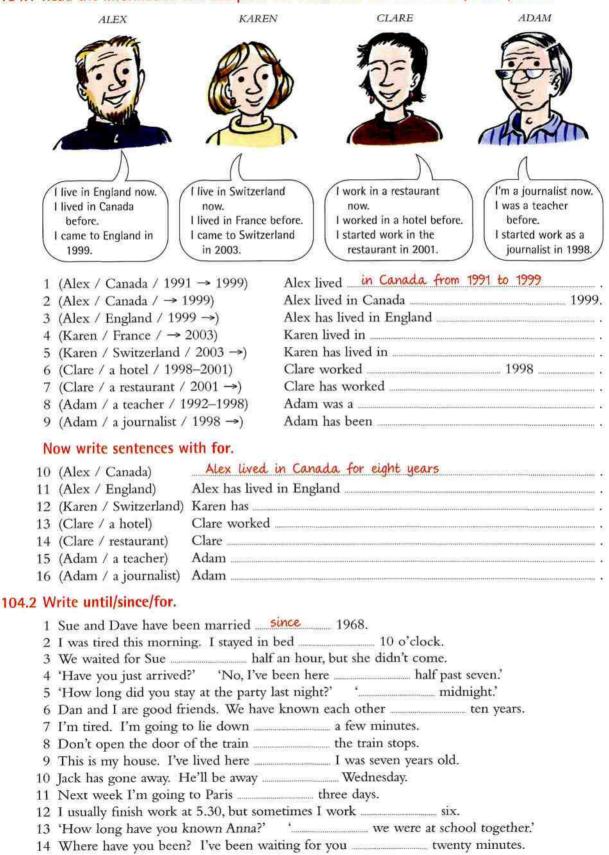
ou doing the weekend?
obert every Sunday.
ay tennis next Sunday?
to the partySunday.
out. I'll be back an hour.
en go out night.

Unit 104 from ... to until since for

from to					
	The same of the sa	n from 1992 to 2001. Onday to Friday.	from	m Monday to Fri	day
	(I) (I)	until : a from 1992 until 2001.	Monday		Frida
until					
until Dec	day cember o'clock ome back	 They're going away tomorrow They'll be away until Frida I went to bed early, but I was I read a book until 3 o'clos Wait here until I come ba 	y. isn't tired. ck .	until Fric	lay Frida
Compare:	here till I co	until):			
Me	onday	ast (to now) present perfect (have been / have Joe is in hospital. He has been in hospital since Monday.	done etc.):	T
since 2.3	nrrived	(= from Monday to now) Sue and Dave have been	Monday	ce Monday	no
We li	ived in Japar ived in Japar we live in O	n from 1992 to 2001. n until 2001. Canada. We came to Canada in 2 Canada since 2001. (= from 20	2001.	ow)	
	The state of the s	+ a period of time (three days / nospital for three days. (not since			
for + a peri	iod of time		£		
for ten y	e days years minutes	 Gary stayed with us for three days. I'm going away for a few weeks. 	Sunday	for three days Monday	Tuesda
a lor	ng time	☐ I'm going away for the weel ☐ They've been married for te			

Exercises Unit 104

104.1 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use from ... to / until / since.



Unit 105

before after during while

before, during and after







before the film

during the film

after the film

- Everybody feels nervous before exams.
- I fell asleep during the film.
- ☐ We were tired after our visit to the museum.

before, while and after







while we were playing



after we played

- Don't forget to close the window before you go out.
- ☐ I often fall asleep while I'm reading.
- ☐ They went home after they did the shopping.

during, while and for

We use during + noun (during the film). We use while + verb (while I'm reading):

- ☐ We didn't speak during the meal.
- We didn't speak while we were eating. (not during we were eating)

Use for (not during) + a period of time (three days / two hours / a year etc.):

- ☐ We played tennis **for two hours**. (*not* during two hours)
- ☐ I lived in London for a year. (not during a year)

D

- You can use before/after + -ing (before going / after eating etc.):
 - ☐ I always have breakfast **before going** to work. (= before I go to work)
 - ☐ After doing the shopping, they went home. (= after they did)

Remember we say before going (not before to go), after doing (not after to do) etc.:

- ☐ **Before eating** the apple, I washed it carefully. (not before to eat)
- ☐ I started work after reading the newspaper. (not after to read)

Exercises Unit 105

105.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

	after before	during while	+	lunch the concert the course	the end the exam the night	they went to Australia you're waiting	
2	2 I usually	y work fou	r hour	s in the morning	g, and another	three hours	
						wat - lat	
						arnt a lot	
						. Did you h	
		I was aslee			0		cur unjumg.
9		A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH					?
8	3 'Are vo	u going he	me	****	?'	'Yes, I have to get up ear	ly tomorrow.'
		ring/while				9	2
		Control of the contro					
				we were eati	ng.		
				you were out.			
	- 05			five days		an halidar	
				spapers			
				bored		111.	
				I was aslee	77.		
	The second secon			th			
				tl		• Andria A. •	
				you			
105.3	Complete	the sente	ences.	Use -ing (doing	g, having etc	.).	
	After	doing t	he sho	pping, they went	t home.		
12	2 I felt sic	k after		too muc	h chocolate.		
1	3 I'm goi	ng to ask y	ou a q	uestion. Think	carefully before	e it.	
4	I felt aw	ful when	I got u	p this morning.	I felt better a	ftera sh	ower.
5	After		n	y work, I left th	e office and w	ent home.	
(Before .			to a foreign cou	ntry, you shou	ld try and learn a little of	the
	languag			874	25 (59)	To.	
105.4	Write sen	tences wi	th bef	ore + -ing and	after + -ing	<u> </u>	
1				Then they went ing, they went	la ausa		
2				e worked in a bo		vo years.	
2				Then I went to	•		
4				rs. We were ver			
15		117		. Then we'll go			,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,

in at on (places 1)

in



in a room
in a shop
in a car
in the water



in a gardenin a townin the city centrein Brazil

- "Where's David?" 'In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In London."
- What's in that box / in that bag / in that cupboard?
- Rachel works in a shop / in a bank / in a factory.
- □ I went for a swim in the river / in the pool / in the sea.
- ☐ Milan is in the north of Italy. Naples is in the south.
- □ I live in a big city, but I'd like to live in the country.

B at



at the bus stop



at the door



at the traffic lights



at her desk

- ☐ There's somebody at the bus stop / at the door.
- ☐ The car is waiting at the traffic lights.
- Jane is working at her desk.

at the top / at the bottom / at the end (of ...):

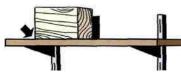
- □ Write your name at the top of the page.
- ☐ My house is at the end of the street.

at the top (of the page)



at the bottom (of the page)

on



on a shelf
on a plate
on a balcony
on the floor
etc.

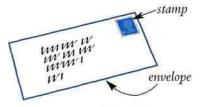


on a wall
on a door
on the ceiling
etc.

- ☐ There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.
- ☐ There are a lot of apples on those trees.
- Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
- ☐ There is a stamp on the envelope.

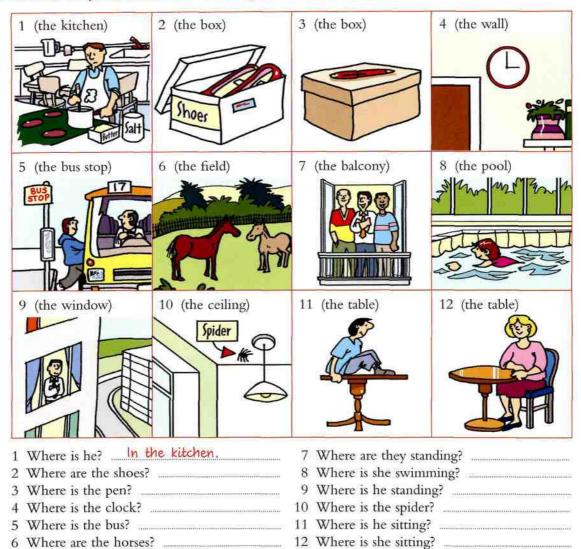
on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motorbike:

☐ Who is that man on the motorbike?



Exercises Unit 106

106.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on.



106.2 Write in/at/on.

- 1 Don't sit _____ the grass. It's wet.
- 2 What have you got your bag?
- 3 Look! There's a man the roof. What's he doing?
- 4 There are a lot of fish _____ this river.
- 5 Our house is number 45 the number is _____ the door.
- 6 'Is the post office near here?' 'Yes, turn left _____ the traffic lights.'
- 7 It's difficult to park _____ the centre of town. It's better to take the bus.
- 8 My sister lives Brussels.
- 9 There's a small park the top of the hill.
- 10 I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody the door.
- 11 Munich is a large city _____ the south of Germany.
- 12 There are a few shops the end of the street.
- 13 It's difficult to carry a lot of things _____ a bicycle.
- 14 I looked at the list of names. My name was the bottom.
- 15 There is a mirror _____ the wall ____ the living room.

in at on (places 2)

Α

in

in bed

in hospital

in the sky

in the world

in a newspaper / in a book

in a photograph / in a picture

in a car / in a taxi

in the middle (of ...)

- "Where's Kate?" 'She's in bed.'
- David's father is ill. He's in hospital.
- □ I like to look at the stars in the sky at night.
- ☐ What's the largest city in the world?
- ☐ I read about the accident in the newspaper.
- ☐ You look sad in this photograph.
- □ Did you come here in your car?
- ☐ There's a big tree in the middle of the garden.

at

at home

W. V

at work / at school

at university / at college

at the station / at the airport

at Jane's (house) / at my sister's (house) / at the doctor's / at the hairdresser's etc.

at a concert / at a party / at a football match etc.

☐ Will you be at home this evening?

"Where's Kate?" 'She's at work."

☐ Helen is studying law at university.

☐ I'll meet you at the station, OK?

A: Where were you yesterday?
B: At my sister's.

□ I saw Tom at the doctor's.

☐ There weren't many people at the party.

Often it is possible to use in or at for buildings (hotels, restaurants etc.):

□ We stayed at a nice hotel. or We stayed in a nice hotel.

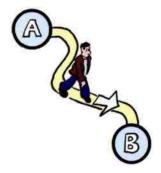
C on



on a bus



on the first floor



on the way from A to B

- on a bus / on a train / on a plane /
 on a ship
- **on** the ground floor / **on** the first floor etc.
- on the way (to ...) / on the way home
- ☐ Did you come here on the bus?
- ☐ The office is **on the first floor**. (not in the first floor)
- I met Ann on the way to work / on the way home.

Exercises Unit 107

107.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on.



to in at (places 3)

A

to

go/come/return/walk (etc.) to ...



- ☐ We're going to London on Sunday.
- □ I want to go to Italy next year.
- □ We walked from my house to the centre of town.
- □ What time do you go to bed?



- ☐ The bus is going to the airport.
- ☐ Karen didn't go to work yesterday.
- □ I went to a party last night.
- ☐ You must come to our house.

in/at (→ Units 106-107)

be/stay/do something (etc.) in ...



- □ Piccadilly Circus is in London.
- ☐ My brother lives in Italy.
- ☐ The main shops are in the centre of town.
- □ I like reading in bed.

be/stay/do something (etc.) at ...



- ☐ The bus is at the airport.
- □ Sarah wasn't at work yesterday.
- ☐ I met a lot of people at the party.
- ☐ Helen stayed at her brother's house.

B home

go/come/walk (etc.) home (without to):

- ☐ I'm tired. I'm going home. (not to home)
- □ Did you walk home?

be/stay/do something (etc.) at home:

- ☐ I'm staying at home tonight.
- ☐ Dan doesn't go to an office. He works at home.

arrive and get

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Italy / arrive in Paris etc.):

☐ They arrived in England last week. (not arrived to England)

arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work etc.):

□ What time did you arrive at the hotel? (not arrive to the hotel)

get to (a place):

- □ What time did you get to the hotel?
- □ What time did you get to Paris?

get home / arrive home (no preposition):

☐ I was tired when I got home. or I was tired when I arrived home.

Exercises Unit 108

108.1 W	/rite to or in.		
2 3	I like reading bed. We're going Italy next month. Sue is on holiday Italy at the moment. I have to go the bank today.	6 7	I was tired, so I stayed bed late. What time do you usually go bed? Does this bus go the centre? Would you like to live another country?
108.2 W	rite to or at if necessary. One sentence is all	rea	dy complete, and no word is necessary.
2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Paula didn't go work yesterday. I'm tired. I'm going home. (already come the Would you like to come a party on Satur'Is Liz home?' 'No, she's gone There were 20,000 people the football n Why did you go home early last night? A boy jumped into the river and swam the bow had a good meal a restaurant, and the	doorda . w nate he	ctor. y? ork.' ch. other side. stop.
	Irite to, at or in if necessary. One sentence is ecessary.	a	ready complete, and no word is
2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14	I'm not going out this afternoon. I'm staying We're going a concert tomorrow evening I went New York last year. How long did you stay New York? Next year we hope to go Canada to visit Do you want to go the cinema this even Did you park your car the station? After the accident three people were taken How often do you go the dentist? 'Is Sarah here?' 'No, she's Helen's.' My house is the end of the street on the I went Maria's house, but she wasn't There were no taxis, so we had to walk I'who did you meet the party?' 'I didn't	g. t so ing lef	ome friends. hospital. ft. home. me. go the party.'
	Irite to, at or in if necessary. Sometimes the ord is necessary.	sei	ntence is already complete, and no
2	What time do you usually get home?	5	When did you arrive London? What time does the train get Paris? We arrived home very late.
108.5 Co	omplete these sentences about yourself. Use	to	/in/at.
2 3 4 5	At three o'clock this morning I was in bed Yesterday I went At 11 o'clock yesterday morning I was One day I'd like to go I don't like going At 9 o'clock yesterday evening I was		

under, behind, opposite etc.

A

next to / beside / between / in front of / behind



A is next to B. or A is beside B.

B is between A and C.

D is in front of B.

E is behind B.

also

A is on the left.

C is on the right.

B is in the middle (of the group).

В

opposite / in front of



A is sitting **in front of** B. A is sitting **opposite** C. C is sitting **opposite** A.

C

by (= next to / beside)



- Our house is by the sea. (= beside the sea)
- □ Who is that man standing by the window?
- ☐ If you feel cold, why don't you sit by the fire?

by the window

D

under



under the table



under a tree

- The cat is under the table.
- ☐ The girl is standing under a tree.
- I'm wearing a jacket under my coat.

E

above and below



A is **above the line**. (= higher than the line)



B is **below the line**. (= lower than the line)



The pictures are above the shelves.

The shelves are below the pictures.

109.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.



DONNA

Емма

FRANK

1 Colin is standing	na Frank.
2 Frank is sitting	Emma.
3 Emma is sitting	Barbara.
4 Emma is sitting	Donna and Frank.
5 Donna is sitting	Emma.
6 Frank is sitting	Colin.
7 Alan is standing	Donna.
8 Alan is standing	left.
9 Barbara is standing	middle.

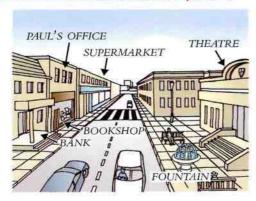
109.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- 1 The cat is under the table, 2 There is a big tree _____ the house.

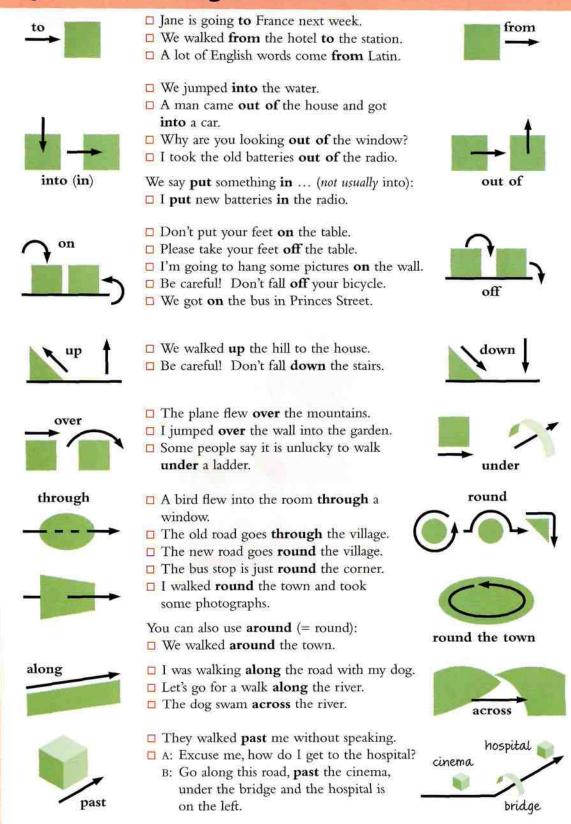
- 5 The cinema is _____ the right.
- 6 She's sitting _____ the phone.
- 7 The switch is _____ the window.
- 8 The cupboard is _____ the sink.
- 3 The plane is flying the clouds. 9 There are some shoes the bed. 4 She is standing the piano. 10 The plant is the piano.
 - 11 Paul is sitting Fiona.
 - 12 In Britain people drive _____ the left.

109.3 Write sentences about the picture.



1	(next to) The bank is next to the bookshop.
	(in front of) The in front of
3	(opposite)
4	(next to)
5	(above)
6	(between)

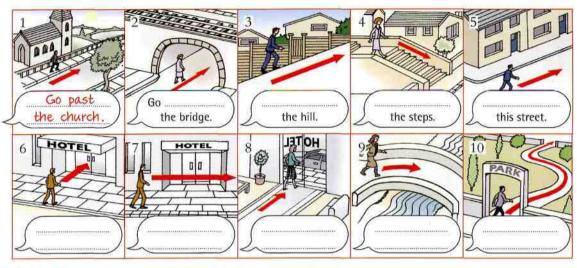
up, over, through etc.



Unit 110 Exercises

110.1 Somebody asks you how to get to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning Go





110.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- 1 The dog swam across the river. 2 A book fell _____ the shelf. 3 A plane flew _____ the village.
- 4 A woman got _____ the car.
- 5 A girl ran _____ the road.
- 6 Suddenly a car came the corner.
- 7 They drove _____ the village.
- 8 They got _____ the train. 9 The moon travels _____ the earth.
- 10 They got _____ the house ____ a window.

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use over/from/into etc.

- 1 I looked _____ the window and watched the people in the street.
- 2 My house is very near here. It's just _____ the corner.
- 3 'Where's my phone?' 'You put it ______ your bag.'
 4 How far is it ______ here _____ the airport?
- 5 We walked _____ the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
- 6 You can put your coat _____ the back of the chair.
- 7 In tennis, you have to hit the ball the net.
- 8 Silvia took a key her bag and opened the door.

on at by with about

Α

on

on holiday on television on the radio on the phone on fire on time (= not late)

- ☐ Jane isn't at work this week. She's on holiday.
- □ We watched the news **on television**.
- We listened to the news on the radio.
- ☐ I spoke to Rachel on the phone last night.
- ☐ The house is **on fire**! Call the fire brigade.
- "Was the train late?" 'No, it was on time."

В

at

at (the age of) 21 / at 50 kilometres an hour / at 100 degrees etc.:

- Lisa got married at 21. (or ... at the age of 21.)
- ☐ A car uses more petrol at 120 kilometres an hour than at 90.
- ☐ Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.

by

by car / by bus / by plane / by bike etc.:

- ☐ Do you like travelling by train?
- ☐ Jane usually goes to work by bike.

but on foot:

- ☐ You can't get there **by car**. You have to go **on foot**. (= you have to walk)
- a book **by** ... / a painting **by** ... / a piece of music **by** ... etc.:
 - ☐ Have you read any books by Charles Dickens?
 - □ Who is that painting by? Picasso?

by after the passive (→ Unit 21):

□ I was bitten by a dog.

by bus





D with/without

- □ Did you stay at a hotel or with friends?
- ☐ Wait for me. Please don't go without me.
- Do you like your coffee with or without milk?
- I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.

a man with a beard / a woman with glasses etc. :

- □ Do you know that man with the beard?
- I'd like to have a house with a big garden.







a woman with glasses

about

talk/speak/think/hear/know about ...:

- □ Some people talk about their work all the time.
- ☐ I don't know much about cars.
- a book / a question / a programme / information (etc.) about ...:
 - ☐ There was a programme about volcanoes on TV last night. Did you see it?

Exercises Unit 111

111.1 Complete the sentences. Use on + these words:

holiday the phone the radio television time

1 We heard the news on the radio
2 Please don't be late. Try to be here
3 I won't be here next week. I'm going ...
4 'Did you see Linda?' 'No, but I talked to her ...
5 'What's this evening?' 'Nothing that I want to watch.'

111.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with at/by/with etc.



- 1 I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.
- 2 She usually goes to work car.
- 3 Who is the womanshort hair?
- 4 They are talking ____ the weather.
- 5 The car is fire.

- 6 She's listening to some music _____ Mozart.
- 7 The plane is flying 600 miles an hour.
- 8 They're holiday.
- 9 Do you know the mansunglasses?
- 10 He's reading a book grammar Vera P. Bull.

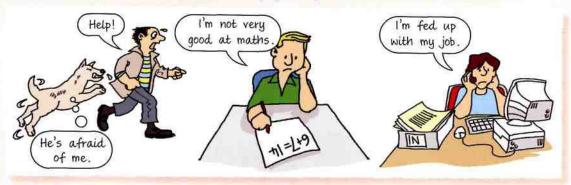
111.3 Complete the sentences. Use at/by/with etc.

- 1 In tennis, you hit the ball a racket.
- 2 It's cold today. Don't go out a coat.
- 4 Do you know anything computers?
- 5 My grandmother died the age of 98.
- 6 How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles _____ plane?
- 7 I didn't go to the football match, but I watched it ______ television.
- 8 My house is the one the red door on the right.
- 9 These trains are very fast. They can travel very high speeds.
- 10 I don't use my car very often. I prefer to go bike.
- 11 Can you give me some information _____ hotels in this town?
- 12 I was arrested _____ two policemen and taken to the police station.
- 13 The buses here are very good. They're nearly always _____ time.
- 14 What would you like to drink _____ your meal?
- 15 We travelled from Paris to Moscow train.
- 16 The museum has some paintings _____ Rembrandt.

afraid of ..., good at ... etc. of/at/for etc. (prepositions) + -ing

A

afraid of ... / good at ... etc. (adjective + preposition)



afraid of ...

angry with somebody
angry about something

different from ...
or different to ...

fed up with ...

full of ...
good at ...
interested in ...
married to ...

nice/kind of somebody to ...
be nice/kind to somebody

sorry about a situation sorry for/about doing something

be/feel sorry for somebody

- ☐ Are you afraid of dogs?
- □ Why are you **angry** with me? What have I done?
- ☐ Are you **angry about** last night? (= something that happened last night)
- ☐ Lisa is very different from (or to) her sister.
- ☐ I'm **fed up with** my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)
- ☐ The room was full of people.
- ☐ Are you good at maths?
- ☐ I'm not interested in sport.
- ☐ Sue is **married to** a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
- ☐ It was **kind of** you to help us. Thank you very much.
- David is very friendly. He's always very nice to me.
- ☐ I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm sorry about that.
- ☐ I'm **sorry for/about** not phoning you yesterday. (or I'm sorry I didn't phone you)
- ☐ I feel **sorry for** them. They are in a very difficult situation.

В

of/at/for (etc.) + -ing

After a preposition (of/at/for etc.), a verb ends in -ing:

I'm not very good at Are you fed up with	telling doing	stories. the same thing every day?
I'm sorry for	not phoning	you yesterday.
Thank you for	helping	me.
Mark is thinking of	buying	a new car.
Tom left without	saying	goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye)
After	doing	the shopping, they went home.

112.1 L	k at the pictures and complete the sentences with of/with/in etc.	hel
	Woof! 2 3 4 5 6 you This is my husband. Spanish Spanish	
2	He's afraid of dogs. She's interested science. She's married a footballer. He's married a footballer. He's married b footballer. He's fed up the weather. He's married b footballer. He's fed up the weather. He's fed up the weather.	
112.2	nplete the sentences with in/of/with etc.	
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	'm not interested sport. 'm not very good sport. like Sarah. She's always very kind me. 'm sorry your broken window. It was an accident. He's very brave. He isn't afraid anything. t was very nice Jane to let us stay in her apartment. iffe today is very different life 50 years ago. Are you interested politics? feel sorry her, but I can't help her. Chris was angry what happened. Chese boxes are very heavy. They are full books. 'm sorry getting angry you yesterday.	
	mplete the sentences.	
1 2 3 4	'm not very good at telling stories. (good/tell) wanted to go to the cinema, but Paula wasn't	
5	'myou up in the middle of the night. (sorry/wake)	
6	orry I'm late! (thank you / wait)	
112.4	nplete the sentences. Use without -ing.	
	Tom left / he didn't say goodbye) Tom left without saying goodbye. Sue walked past me / she didn't speak) ue walked	foreste
3	don't do anything / ask me first) Don't	
371	went out / 1 than t lock the door)	
112 F V		
112.5 V	te sentences about yourself.	
1	nterested) <u>I'm interested in sport.</u>	00000
	nfraid) I'm	777770
	not very good) I'm not	*****
	not interested)	*****
3	fed up)	TTTTT .

Unit **113**

listen to ..., look at ... etc. (verb + preposition)

A

ask (somebody) for ...
belong to ...

happen to ...

listen to ...

speak/talk to somebody about
something

thank somebody for ...

think about ... or think of ...

wait for ...

write to somebody

but phone/call somebody (without to)

- ☐ A man stopped me and asked me for money.
- □ Does this book **belong to** you? (= Is this your book?)
- ☐ I can't find my pen. What's happened to it?
- Listen to this music. It's great.
- Did you talk to Paul about the problem?
- (on the phone) Can I speak to Chris, please?
- Thank you very much for your help.
- ☐ He never thinks about (or of) other people.
- Mark is thinking of (or about) buying a new computer.
- Wait for me. I'm nearly ready.
- □ I couldn't contact the company by phone. I had to write to them.
- I'm going to **phone** my parents this evening. (not phone to my parents)

В

look at / look for / look after

look at ...



- ☐ He's looking at his watch.
- Look at these flowers! They're beautiful.
- □ Why are you **looking at** me like that?

look for ...

(= try to find)



- She's lost her key. She's looking for it.
- ☐ I'm looking for Sarah. Have you seen her?

look after ...

(= take care of, keep safe)

- When Emily is at work, a friend of hers looks after her children.
- ☐ Don't lose this book. **Look after** it. (= Keep it safe.)

C

depend

We say depend on ...:

- ☐ A: Do you like eating in restaurants?
 - B: Sometimes. It **depends on** the restaurant. (not it depends of)

You can say it depends what/where/how (etc.) with or without on:

- ☐ A: Do you want to come out with us?
 - B: It depends where you're going. or It depends on where you're going.

113.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with to/for/at etc.

	TAXUS	4	PAUL	5	6 Where's Tom?
THE STATE OF THE S		JANE	-49		SUE

- 1 She's looking at her watch. 4 Paul is talking Jane.
 2 He's listening the radio. 5 They're looking a picture.
- 3 They're waiting _____ a taxi.

- 6 Sue is looking ____ Tom.

113.2 Complete the sentences with to/for/about etc. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.

- 1 Thank you very much for your help.
- 2 This isn't my umbrella. It belongs _____ a friend of mine.
- 3 (on the phone) Can I speak _____ Steven Davis, please?
- 4 (on the phone) Thank you _____ calling. Goodbye.
- 5 What happened _____ Ella last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
- 6 We're thinking going to Australia next year.
- 7 We asked the waiter _____ coffee, but he brought us tea.
- 8 'Do you like reading books?' 'It depends the book.'
- 9 John was talking, but nobody was listening what he was saying.
- 10 We waited Karen until 2 o'clock, but she didn't come.
- 11 If you want to contact me, you can write _____ me at this address.
- 12 Don't forget to phone ______ your mother tonight.
- 13 He's alone all day. He never talks anybody.
- 'It depends the type of room.' 14 'How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?'
- 15 Catherine is thinking changing her job.

113.3 Complete these sentences. Use at/for/after.

- 1 I looked _____ the newspaper, but I didn't read it carefully.
- 2 When you are ill, you need somebody to look ______you.
- 4 Goodbye! Have a great holiday and look ______yourself.
- 5 I want to take a photograph of you. Please look _____ the camera and smile.
- 6 Barry is looking _____ a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

113.4 Answer these questions with It depends

1

2

3

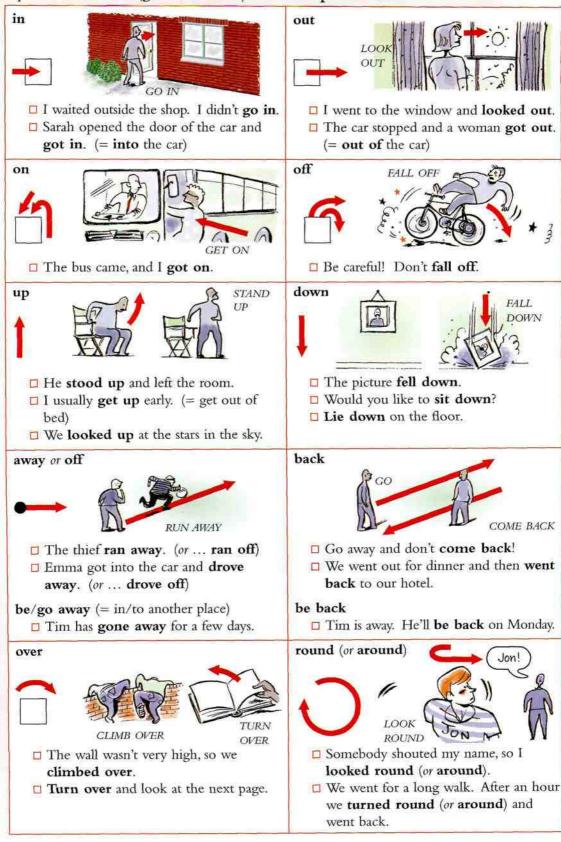
4 5

Do you want to go out with us? Do you like eating in restaurants? Do you enjoy watching TV? Can you do something for me? Are you going away this weekend? Can you lend me some money?

It depends where you're going. It depends on the restaurant. It depends

go in, fall off, run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)

A phrasal verb is a verb (go/look/be etc.) + in/out/up/down etc.



114.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these verbs + in/out/up etc.

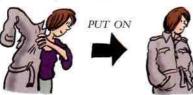
	got	got	looked	looked	rode	sat	turned	went
	1	52	2	4	3 8		4	O
	5 (Hello	A		o BUS o ≡ 6			8	
	2 The do 3 He hea	or was op rd a plane	ndow andben, so wee, so hee, so hee		6 The b	us stopped, a was a free so		
114.2	Complete	the sen	tences. Use o	ut/away/bacl	cetc.			
	1 'What I 2 Wait a 3 Lisa he: 4 I'm goi 5 I'm fee 6 When 7 Mark is 8 We hav 9 I was v 10 A: 'Wh B: 'On	happened minute. I ard a nois ing	to the picture Don't go	on the wall?'	'It fell yant to ask y ppping. I'll on and re ow, but he v i't get	to see whose the sofa. ad the other vants to go	at it was. at 5 o's side.	
114.3			s exercise, stu tences. Choos					ssary, put
	break carry	fall get	give hold go slow	speak	wake +	on/off/up/	/down/over	•
	2 'It's tim 3 The tra 4 I like fl	e to go.' inying, but	t 10 o'clock ar	vous when th	nd finally sto e plane	inute. I'm i opped.	not ready ye	
			iildren? How ear you. Can y					ol?
			y good. It has					
	9 The ho		to walk, they ar from here. I					road, you'll
	10 I tried	to find a	job, but I			It was i	mpossible.	201600
	11 The fir	e alarm	: ::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::		and ever	yone had to	leave the b	uilding.

115 (phrasal verbs 2)

put on your shoes put your shoes on

Sometimes a phrasal verb (put on / take off etc.) has an object. For example:

verb object put on your coat



You can say:

put on your coat put your coat on

But it/them (pronouns) always go before on/off etc.: put it on (not put on it)

☐ It was cold, so I **put on** my coat. (or I put my coat on)

☐ Here's your coat. Put it on.

verb object take off your shoes



You can say:

take off your shoes or take your shoes off

take **them off** (not take off them)

- I'm going to take off my shoes. (or take my shoes off)
- ☐ Your shoes are dirty. **Take them off**.

Some more phrasal verbs + object:

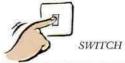
turn on / turn off (lights, machines, taps etc.):

- ☐ It was dark, so I turned on the light. (or I turned the light on)
- □ I don't want to watch this programme. You can turn it off.

also switch on / switch off (lights, machines etc.):

□ I switched on the light and switched off the television.

ON OFF



pick up / put down:

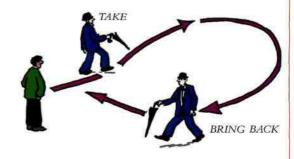
- □ Those are my keys on the floor. Can you pick them up for me?
- □ I stopped reading and **put** my book down.

(or put down my book)



bring back / take back / give back / put back:

- ☐ You can take my umbrella, but please bring it back.
- □ I took my new sweater back to the shop. It was too small for me.
- I've got Rachel's keys. I have to give them back to her.
- □ I read the letter and then **put it** back in the envelope.



115.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?

3			
	5		
1 2 3	He turned on the light She He 'ou can write these sentences in	. 5 He	plete the table.
1	I turned on the radio.	I turned the radio on.	I turned it on.
2	Beautiful and or see It would be appropriate to the second	He	He
3		She took her glasses off.	
4	I picked up the phone.		
.5	They gave back the key.		
6		We turned the lights off.	***************************************
	bring back pick up	switch off take bac	
	I wanted to watch something on My new lamp doesn't work. I'm		
	There were some gloves on the f		
4	the table. The heating was on but it was to	o warm so I	

5 Thank you for lending me these books. I won't forget to

115.4 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 7 (page 251). Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box. Sometimes you will also need to use it/them/me.

fill in	knock down	look up	show round	turn down
give up	knock over	put out	throw away	try on

1 They knocked a lot of houses down when they built the new road.

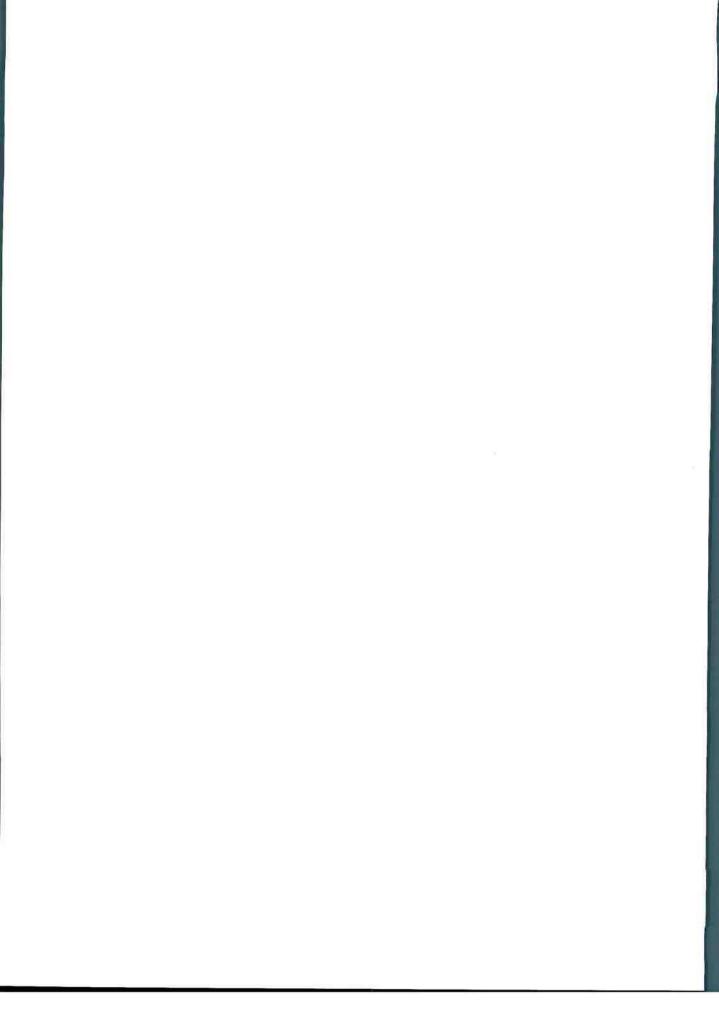
2 That music is very loud. Can you turn it down? a glass and broke it.

a pair of shoes in the shop, but I didn't buy them. 7 I visited a school last week. One of the teachers

8 'Do you play the piano?' 'No, I started to learn, but I _____ after a month.'

9 Somebody gave me a form and told me to ______.

10 Smoking isn't allowed here. Please _______ your cigarette ______.



Appendix 1 Active and passive

Present and past

	active	passive		
present	☐ We make butter from milk.	☐ Butter is made from milk.		
simple	Somebody cleans these rooms even	These rooms are cleaned every d	ay.	
	day. ☐ People never invite me to parties.	☐ I am never invited to parties.		
	☐ How do they make butter?	☐ How is butter made?		
nast	☐ Somebody stole my car last week.	The Exceeding of the Control of the		
past simple	Somebody stole my keys yesterday	A202.		
simple	☐ They didn't invite me to the par			
	☐ When did they build these house			
	when did they build these nouse	when were these nouses built:		
present	☐ They are building a new airport	at A new airport is being built at the	ne	
continuous	the moment. (= it isn't finished)	moment.		
	☐ They are building some new how	uses Some new houses are being buil	t	
	near the river.	near the river.		
past	□ When I was here a few years ago,	☐ When I was here a few years ago,	a	
continuous	they were building a new airpor	new airport was being built.		
	(= it wasn't finished at that time)			
present	□ Look! They have painted the do	or. Dook! The door has been painted	ed.	
perfect	☐ These shirts are clean. Somebody			
	has washed them.	been washed.		
	☐ Somebody has stolen my car.	☐ My car has been stolen.		
past perfect	☐ Tina said that somebody had stol her car.	en ☐ Tina said that her car had been stolen.		
.2 will /	can / must / have to etc.			
- Control of the Cont	active	passive		
□ Someboo	ly will clean the office tomorrow.	☐ The office will be cleaned tomorrow.		
□ Someboo	ly must clean the office.	☐ The office must be cleaned.		
	ney'll invite you to the party.	☐ I think you'll be invited to the party.		
	n't repair my watch.	☐ My watch can't be repaired.		
□ You sho	uld wash this sweater by hand.	☐ This sweater should be washed by hand	i.	
□ They are	going to build a new airport.	☐ A new airport is going to be built.		
□ Someboo	ly has to wash these clothes.	☐ These clothes have to be washed.		
	d to take the injured man to	☐ The injured man had to be taken to		
hospital.		hospital.		

Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs (→ Unit 24)

infinitive	past simple	past participle
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent

infinitive	past simple	past participle
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read (reed)*	read (red)*	read (red)*
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

* pronunciation

The following verbs can be regular (-ed) or irregular (-t):

	.9
infinitive	past simple / past participle
burn	burned or burnt
dream	dreamed or dreamt

infinitive	past simple / past participle
learn	learned or learnt
smell	smelled or smelt

Appendix 3

Irregular verbs in groups

The past simple and past participle are the same:

let let → cost cost put cut \rightarrow put \rightarrow cut hit shut shut hit \rightarrow hurt → hurt

lose lost lend lent send \rightarrow sent shoot shot spend \rightarrow spent got build built light lit \rightarrow sit sat burn \rightarrow burnt learnt keep kept learn \rightarrow \rightarrow smelt sleep \rightarrow slept smell \rightarrow feel \rightarrow felt left leave \rightarrow meet \rightarrow met dream → dreamt (dremt)* mean -> meant (ment)*

3 bring → brought (brort)*
buy → bought (bort)*
fight → fought (fort)*
think → thought (thort)*
catch → caught (kort)*
teach → taught (tort)*

sell sold \rightarrow tell \rightarrow told find \rightarrow found had have heard hear hold held read \rightarrow read (red)* said (sed)* say paid pay made make → stood understand → understood The past simple and past participle are different:

break → broke broken chose chosen choose → spoken \rightarrow spoke speak stole stolen steal \rightarrow woken woke wake

2 driven drive drove ride rode ridden risen rise \rightarrow rose write wrote written beat \rightarrow beat beaten bit bitten bite \rightarrow hid hidden hide

3 eat \rightarrow ate eaten fall fallen fell forget forgot forgotten \rightarrow give gave given \rightarrow see saw seen take took taken \rightarrow

4 blow → blew blown grow grew grown know → knew known throw threw thrown flown fly flew draw \rightarrow drew drawn show showed shown

5 begin began begun drink drank drunk swim swam swum ring rang rung sing sang sung ran run run

6 come → came come become → became become

^{*} pronunciation

Appendix 4

Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.)

4.1	In spoken English we usually	pronounce 'I am'	as one word.	The short form	(I'm) is a way	of
	writing this:				o	

```
I am → I'm
it is → it's
they have → they've
etc.

□ I'm feeling tired this morning.
□ 'Do you like this jacket?' 'Yes, it's nice.'
□ 'Where are your friends?' 'They've gone home.'
```

When we write short forms, we use ' (an apostrophe):

```
I \not x m \rightarrow I' m he is \rightarrow he's you bave \rightarrow you've she will \rightarrow she'll
```

4.2 We use these forms with I/he/she etc.:

am	\rightarrow	'n	ľm						
is	\rightarrow	's		he's	she's	it's			
are	\rightarrow	're					we're	you're	they're
have	\rightarrow	've	I've				we've	you've	they've
has	\rightarrow	's		he's	she's	it's			
had	\rightarrow	'n	I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd
will	\rightarrow	'11	1'11	he'll	she'll		we'll	you'll	they'll
would	\rightarrow	'd	I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd

- I've got some new shoes.
- We'll probably go out this evening.
- □ It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.

s = is or has:

- □ She's going out this evening. (she's going = she is going)
- ☐ She's gone out. (she's gone = she has gone)

'd = would or had:

- ☐ A: What would you like to eat?
 - B: I'd like a salad, please. (I'd like = I would like)
- □ I told the police that I'd lost my passport. (I'd lost = I had lost)

Do not use 'm/'s/'d etc. at the end of a sentence (\rightarrow Unit 40):

- "Are you tired?" 'Yes, I am.' (not Yes, I'm.)
- ☐ She isn't tired, but he is. (not he's)
- 4.3 We use short forms with I/you/he/she etc., but you can use short forms (especially 's) with other words too:
 - □ Who's your favourite singer? (= who is)
 - □ What's the time? (= what is)
 - ☐ There's a big tree in the garden. (= there is)
 - My sister's working in London. (= my sister is working)
 - □ Paul's gone out. (= Paul has gone out)
 - □ What colour's your car? (= What colour is your car?)

Appendix 4 Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.)

4.4 Negative short forms (→ Unit 43):

<pre>isn't (= is not) aren't (= are not) wasn't (= was not) weren't (= were not) hasn't (= has not) haven't (= have not) hadn't (= had not)</pre>	don't (= do not) doesn't (= does not) didn't (= did not)	<pre>can't (= cannot) couldn't (= could not) won't (= will not) wouldn't (= would not) shouldn't (= should not) mustn't (= must not)</pre>
---	--	--

- We went to her house, but she wasn't at home.
- " 'Where's David?' 'I don't know. I haven't seen him.'
- ☐ You work all the time. You shouldn't work so hard.
- ☐ I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 's (apostrophe + s)

's can mean different things:

- (1) $\dot{s} = is \text{ or has } (\rightarrow section 4.2 \text{ of this appendix})$
- (2) let's = let us (\rightarrow Units 35, 53)
 - ☐ It's a lovely day. Let's go out. (= Let us go out.)
- (3) Kate's camera = her camera my brother's car = his car

the manager's office = his/her office etc.

(→ Unit 64)

Compare:

- □ Kate's camera was very expensive. (Kate's camera = her camera)
- ☐ Kate's a very good photographer. (Kate's = Kate is)
- □ Kate's got a new camera. (Kate's got = Kate has got)

Appendix 5 Spelling

5.1 Words + -s and -es (birds/watches etc.)

```
noun + s (plural) (→ Unit 66)
bird → birds mistake → mistakes hotel → hotels

verb + s (he/she/it -s) (→ Unit 5)
think → thinks live → lives remember → remembers
```

but

```
+ es after -s / -sh / -ch / -x
  bus → buses
                      pass → passes
                                                address → addresses
  dish → dishes
                      wash → washes
                                                finish → finishes
  watch → watches
                        teach → teaches
                                                sandwich → sandwiches
  box \rightarrow boxes
also
  potato → potatoes
                        tomato → tomatoes
  do → does
                        go → goes
-f/-fe \rightarrow -ves
  shelf → shelves
                        knife → knives
                                                but roof → roofs
```

5.2 Words ending in -y (baby \rightarrow babies / study \rightarrow studied etc.)

```
-y \rightarrow -ies
  study → studies (not studys)
                                                     family → families (not familys)
  story → stories
                           city → cities
                                                     baby → babies
                           marry → marries
                                                     fly → flies
  try → tries
-y \rightarrow -ied (\rightarrow Unit 11)
  study → studied (not studyed)
  try → tried
                            marry → married
                                                     copy → copied
-y \rightarrow -ier/-iest (\rightarrow Units 87, 90)
   easy → easier/easiest (not easyer/easyest)
                                                      lucky → luckier/luckiest
   happy → happier/happiest
  heavy → heavier/heaviest
                                                      funny → funnier/funniest
-y \rightarrow -ily (\rightarrow Unit 86)
   easy → easily (not easyly)
                                                     lucky → luckily
   happy → happily
                           heavy → heavily
```

```
y does not change to i if the ending is -ay/-ey/-oy/-uy:
holiday → holidays (not holidaies)
enjoy → enjoys/enjoyed stay → stays/stayed buy → buys key → keys

but
say → said pay → paid (irregular verbs)
```

Appendix 5 Spelling

5.3 -ing

```
Verbs that end in -e (make/write/drive etc.) → -★ing:
make → making write → writing come → coming dance → dancing

Verbs that end in -ie → -ying:
lie → lying die → dying tie → tying
```

5.4 stop \rightarrow stopped, big \rightarrow bigger etc.

Vowels and consonants:

```
Vowel letters: a e i o u

Consonant letters: b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y
```

Sometimes a word ends in a *vowel* + a *consonant*. For example: stop, big, get. Before -ing/-ed/-er/-est, p/g/t etc. become pp/gg/tt etc.

For example:

	V	+C				V = vowel
stop	ST O	P	$p \rightarrow pp$	stopping	stopped	C = consonant
run	R U	N	$n \rightarrow nn$	ru nn ing		
get	GE	T	$t \rightarrow tt$	getting		
swim	SW I	M	$m \rightarrow mm$	swimming		
big	В 1	G	$g \rightarrow gg$	bigger	biggest	
hot	н о	T	$t \rightarrow tt$	hotter	hottest	
thin	TH I	N	$n \rightarrow nn$	thi nn er	thi nn est	

This does not happen

(1) if the word ends in two consonant letters (C + C):

```
help HE L P helping helped work WO R K working worked fast FA S T faster fastest
```

(2) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C):

```
need N E E D needing needed wait W A I T waiting waited cheap CH E A P cheaper cheapest
```

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is not stressed:

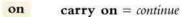
```
happen
              HAP-pen → happening/happened (not happenned)
     visit
                VIS-it
                          → visiting/visited
remember
           re-MEM-ber → remembering/remembered
but
    prefer
           pre-FER
                       (stress at the end)
                                             preferring/preferred
            be-GIN
                       (stress at the end)
    begin
                                             beginning
```

(4) if the word ends in **-y** or **-w**. (At the end of words, **y** and **w** are not consonants.) enjoy \rightarrow enjoying/enjoyed snow \rightarrow snowing/snowed few \rightarrow fewer/fewest

Appendix 6

Phrasal verbs (take off / give up etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (→ Unit 114).



- Don't stop working. Carry on. (= continue working)
- ☐ A: Excuse me, where is the station?

B: Carry on along this road and turn right at the lights. (= Continue along ...) also go on / walk on / drive on etc. = continue going/walking/driving etc.

Don't stop here. Drive on.

come on = be quick

□ Come on! Everybody is waiting for you.

get on = manage (in a job, at school, in an exam etc.)

□ How was your exam? How did you **get on**? (= how did you do?)

hold on = wait

☐ Can you **hold on** a minute? (= can you wait?)

off take off = leave the ground (for planes)

☐ The plane **took off** 20 minutes late, but arrived on time.

go off = explode (a bomb etc.) or ring (an alarm, an alarm clock etc.)

- A bomb went off and caused a lot of damage.
- ☐ A car alarm **goes off** if somebody tries to break into the car.

up give up = stop trying

☐ I know it's difficult, but don't **give up**. (= don't stop trying)

grow up = become an adult

☐ What does your son want to do when he **grows up**?

hurry up = do something more quickly

□ Hurry up! We haven't got much time.

speak up = speak more loudly

☐ I can't hear you. Can you speak up, please?

wake up = stop sleeping

□ I often wake up in the middle of the night.

wash up = wash the plates etc. after a meal

□ Do you want me to **wash up?** (or ... to do the washing-up?)

slow down = go more slowly

☐ You're driving too fast. Slow down!

break down = stop working (for cars, machines etc.)

☐ Sue was very late because her car **broke down**.

over fall over = lose your balance

I fell over because my shoes were too big for me.



TAKE OFF







GROW UP





WASH UP





down

Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (put out a fire / give up your job etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (\rightarrow Unit 115).

in/out fill in / fill out a form = complete a form

Can you fill in this form, please? or Can you fill out this form, please?



out put out a fire, a cigarette etc.

☐ The fire brigade arrived and put the fire out.

cross out a mistake, a word etc.

If you make a mistake, cross it out.



CROSS OUT

on **try on** clothes = put on clothes to see if they fit you

(in a shop) This is a nice jacket. Shall I try it on?

give up something = stop doing it up

□ Sue gave up her job when her baby was born. (= she stopped working)

"Are you still learning Italian?" 'No, I gave it up.'

look up a word in a dictionary etc.

☐ I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I **looked it up** in a dictionary.

turn up the TV, radio, music, heating etc. = make it louder or warmer

Can you turn the radio up? I can't hear it.

wake up somebody who is sleeping

☐ I have to get up early tomorrow. Can you wake me up at 6.30?

down knock down a building = demolish it

> ☐ They are going to knock down the school and build a new one.

turn down the TV, radio, music, heating etc.

= make it more quiet or less warm

☐ The music is too loud. Can you turn it down?



over

knock over a cup, a glass, a person etc.

Be careful. Don't knock your cup over.

☐ There was an accident at the end of the road. A man was knocked over by a car. (or A man was knocked down by a car.)





KNOCK DOWN

away throw away rubbish, things you don't want

☐ These apples are bad. Shall I throw them away?

Don't throw away that picture. I want it.

put something away = put it in the place where you usually keep it

☐ After they finished playing, the children put their toys away.



back

pay somebody **back** = give back money that you borrowed

Thank you for lending me the money. I'll pay you back next week.

round/ show somebody round/around = take somebody on a tour of a place

around

☐ We visited a factory last week. The manager showed us round.

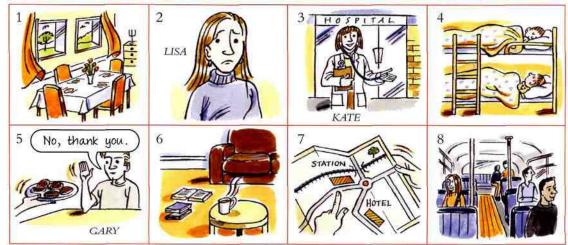
Additional exercises

List of exercises:

1-2	am/is/are	Units 1–2
3	present continuous	Units 3–4
4	present simple	Units 5–7
5-7	present simple, am/is/are and have (got)	Units 1-2, 5-7, 9
8-9	present continuous and present simple	Units 3–8
10-13	was/were and past simple	Units 10-12
14	past simple and past continuous	Units 11-14
15	present and past	Units 3-14
16-18	present perfect	Units 15-19
19-22	present perfect and past simple	Units 18-20
23	present, past and present perfect	Units 3-20
24-27	passive	Units 21–22
28	future	Units 25-28
29	past, present and future	Units 3-20, 25-28
30-31	past, present and future	Units 3-22, 25-28, 52, 54, 98, 105
32	-ing and to	Units 51-55, 105, 112
33-34	a and the	Units 65, 69-73
35	prepositions	Units 103-108, 111

am/is/are Units 1-2

Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + is/isn't/are/aren't.



The windows Lisa

Kate

The children

Gary

The books

The hotel

The bus

on the table

hungry

asleep

open-

full

near the station

a doctor

happy

44	- 7			
The	larend	MATE	ave	ADON

2 Lisa isn't happy.

WWW.IELTSPOP.COM

2	C	omplete the sentences.							
	1	'Are you hungry?' 'No, butl'm thirsty.'							
		"How are your parents?" 'They're fine.'							
		'Is Anna at home?' 'No, at wor							
	4								
		Where is Paul from? American or							
		very hot today. The temperature is		9					
		'Are you a teacher?' 'No, a stud							
	8	' your umbrella?' 'G	reen.'						
	9	Where's your car? in the car park	?						
		'tired?' 'No, I'm fine.'							
	11	And the second s	?'	'Fifty pounds.'					
pre	eser	nt continuous (I'm working / are you working? etc	e)	Units 3-4					
3	~~	se the words in brackets to write sentences.	,	onits 5-4					
		A: Where are your parents?							
		B: They're watching TV.	(they / w	ratch / TV)					
	2	A: Paula is going out.	W 140 W	N N N					
		B: Where's she going?	(where /	she / go?)					
	3	A: Where's David?							
		B:	(he / hav	e / a shower)					
	4	A:?	(the child	ren / play?)					
		B: No, they're asleep.	.5	* 3 %					
	5	A:?	(it / rain?)					
		B: No, not at the moment.	Andrew Holderstein	2					
	6	A: Where are Sue and Steve?							
	O	B:	(thou / co	ome / now)					
	7	A: ?	(2)	15					
	1		The second secon	ou / stand / here?)					
		В;	(1 / wait	/ for somebody)					
	_								
pre	eser	it simple (I work / she doesn't work / do you wor	k? etc.)	Units 5-7					
4		omplete the sentences. Use the present simple.							
	1	Sue always gets to work early.		(Sue / always / get)					
		We don't watch TV very often.		(we / not / watch)					
	3	How often do you wash your hair?		(you / wash)					
	4	I want to go to the cinema, but	to go.	(Sam / not / want)					
		to go out tonigh		(you / want)					
		near here?		(Helen / live)					
	7	a lot of people.		(Sarah / know)					
	8	I enjoy travelling, but	zery much	(I / not / travel)					
	0	What time in the							
		My parents are usually at home in the evening.	morning!	(you / usually / get up)					
	10	INTERNATION OF THE PROPERTY OF		Alm I I					
	4.4	very often.	1	(they / not / go out)					
		work at five o'cl	OCK.	(Tom / always / finish)					
	12	A: What?		(Julia / do)					
		B: in a hotel,		(she / work)					

present simple, am/is/are and have (got)

Units 1-2, 5-7, 9

5	Read the	questions and	Clare's a	inswers. Then	write senten	ces about Clare.
•	LICAN CIT	questions and	Cluic 3 d	HISWEIS, THE	WILL SCHECH	Les about Claic.

1	Are you married?	No.	lare 1	She isn't married.
2	Do you live in London?	Yes.	(c) 2	She lives in London.
3	Are you a student?	Yes.	3	
4	Have you got a car?	No.	4	
5	Do you go out a lot?	Yes.	5	
6	Have you got a lot of friends?	Yes.	6	
7	Do you like London?	No.	7	
8	Do you like dancing?	Yes.	8	***************************************
9	Are you interested in sport?	No.	9	

6

Co	mplete the questions.
1	What's your name? married? Where ? any children? How ? Brian. Yes, I am. In Barton Road. Yes, a daughter. She's three.
2	? ? ! I'm 29. I work in a supermarket. No, I hate it. Yes, I have. No, I usually go by bus.
3	Who is this man? That's my brother. Michael. He's a travel agent.

Write sentences from these words. All the sentences are present. 7

1	Sarah often / tennis	Sarah often plays tennis.
2	my parents / a new car	My parents have got a new car.
3	my shoes / dirty	My shoes are dirty.
4	Sonia / 32 years old	Sonia
5	I / two sisters	
6	we often / TV in the evening	***************************************
7	Jane never / a hat	
8	a bicycle / two wheels	
9	these flowers / beautiful	
10	Mary / German very well	

present continuous (I'm working) and present simple (I work)

Units 3-8

8 Complete the sentences.



9 Which is right?

- 1 'Are you speaking / Do you speak English?' 'Yes, a little.' (Do you speak is right)
- 2 Sometimes we're going / we go away at weekends.
- 3 It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
 4 (You meet Kate in the street.) Hello, Kate. Where are you going / do you go?
- 5 How often are you going / do you go on holiday?
- 6 Emily is a writer. She's writing / She writes books for children.
- 7 I'm never reading / I never read newspapers.
- 8 'Where are Michael and Jane?' 'They're watching / They watch TV in the living room.'
- 9 Helen is in her office. She's talking / She talks to somebody.
- 10 What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
- 11 John isn't at home at the moment. He's visiting / He visits some friends.
- 12 'Would you like some tea?' 'No, thank you. I'm not drinking / I don't drink tea.'

was/were and past simple (I worked / did you work? etc.)

Units 10-12

10	Complete	the	sentences.	Use	one	word	only	1
----	----------	-----	------------	-----	-----	------	------	---

- 1 I got up early and had a shower.
 2 Tom was tired last night, so he _______ to bed early.
- 3 I _____ this pen on the floor. Is it yours?
- 4 Kate got married when she ______23.
- 5 Helen is learning to drive. She ______ her first lesson yesterday.
- 6 'I've got a new job.' 'Yes, I know. David _____ me.'
- 7 'Where did you buy that book?' 'It was a present. Jane ______ it to me.'
- 8 We _____ hungry, so we had something to eat.
- 9 'Did you enjoy the film?' 'Yes, I ______ it was very good.'
- 10 'Did Andy come to your party?' 'No, we him, but he didn't come.'

No.

Yes.

Yes.

No.

No.

Look at the questions and Kevin's answers. Write sentences about 11

Kevin when he was a child.

When you were a child ...

Were you tall? Did you like school?

Were you good at sport?

Did you play football?

Did you work hard at school?

Did you have a lot of friends?

Did you have a bicycle? Were you a quiet child?

Yes. No.



1 He wasn't tall.

2 He liked school. Yes.

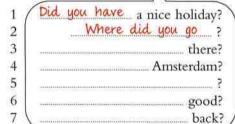
3 He

5

6 7

Complete the questions. 12







Yes, it was great, thanks.

To Amsterdam.

Five days.

Yes, very much.

I have friends in Amsterdam, so I stayed with them.

Yes, it was warm and sunny.

Yesterday.

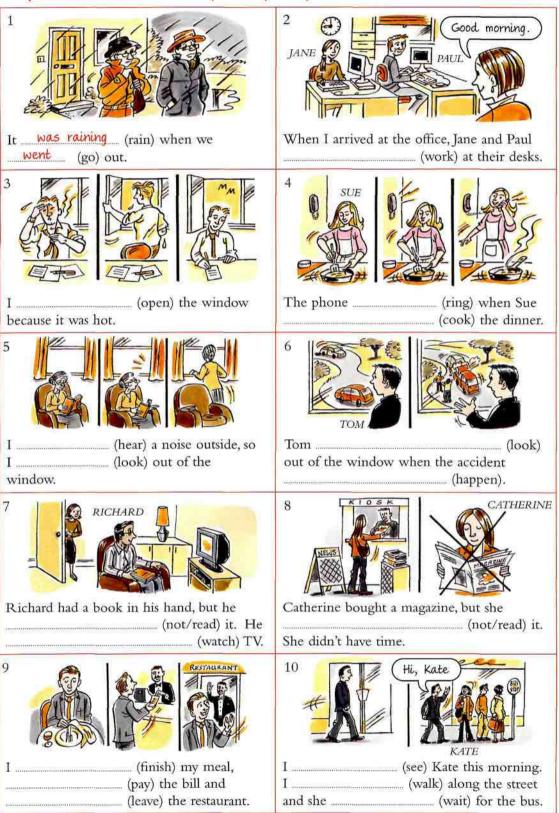
Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative or question). 13

- 1 It was a good party. | enjoyed it. (I / enjoy)
- 2 Did you do the shopping?' (you / do) 'No, I didn't have time.' (I / have)
- 4 I like your new watch. Where ______ it? (you / get)
- 5 I saw Lucy at the party, but _______ to her. (I / speak)
- 6 A: ______ a nice weekend? (you / have)
 - B: Yes, I went to stay with some friends of mine.
- 7 Paul wasn't well yesterday, so to work. (he / go)
 8 'Is Mary here?' 'Yes, five minutes ago.' (she / arrive)
 9 Where before he moved here? (Robert / live)
- 10 The restaurant wasn't expensive. very much. (the meal / cost)

past simple (I worked) and past continuous (I was working)

Units 11-14

14 Complete the sentences. Use the past simple or past continuous.



present and past Units 3–14

15 Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms:

present simple (I work/drive etc.) present continuous (I am working/driving etc.)

past simple (I worked/drove etc.) past continuous (I was working/driving etc.) past simple (I worked/drove etc.) past continuous (I was working/driving etc.) 1 You can turn off the television. I 'm not watching (not/watch) it. 2 Last night Jenny fell (fall) asleep while she was reading (read). 3 Listen! Somebody (play) the piano. 4 'Have you got my key?' 'No, I (give) it back to you.'

5 David is very lazy. He (not/like) hard work. 6 Where _____ (your parents / go) for their holidays last year? 7 I ______(see) Diane yesterday. She (drive) her new car. 8 A: (you/watch) television very much? B: No, I haven't got a television set. 9 A: What ______(you/do) at 6 o'clock last Sunday morning? B: I was in bed asleep. 10 Andy isn't at home very much. He ______(go) away a lot. 11 I _____ (try) to find a job at the moment. It's very difficult. 12 I'm tired this morning. I (not/sleep) very well last night.

present perfect (I have done / she has been etc.)

Units 15-19

16 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.





17	Complete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words).	
	1 Mark and Liz are married. They have been married for five years.	
	2 David has been watching TV 5 o'clock.	
	3 Martin is at work. He at work since 8.30.	
	4 'Have you just arrived in London?' 'No, I've been here	five days'
	5 I've known Helen we were at school together.	Hvc days.
	6 'My brother lives in Los Angeles.' 'Really? How long	there?
	7 George has had the same job 20 years.	there:
	8 Some friends of ours are staying with us at the moment. They	
	here since Monday.	
18	Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.	
	1 I've never ridden a horse.	
	2 I've been to London many times.	
	3 I've just	
	4 I've	
	(once / twice / a few times / many times)	
	5 I haven't	
	6 I've never	
	7 I've since	
	8 I've for	
19	Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences (positive or neg	gative).
	1 A: Do you like London?	
	B: I don't know. I haven't been there.	
	2 A: Have you seen Kate?	
	B: Yes, I her five minutes ago.	
	3 A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new?	
	B: Yes, I it last week.	
	4 A: Are you tired this morning?	
	B: Yes, I to bed late last night.	
	5 A: Do you want this newspaper, or can I have it?	
	B: You can have it. Iit.	
	6 A: Are you enjoying your new job?	
	B: I yet. My first day is next Monday.	
	7 A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it?	
	B: No, but it nice yesterday.	
	8 A: Was Helen at the party on Saturday?	
	B: I don't think so. I her there.	
	9 A: Is your son still at school?	
	B: No, he school two years ago.	
	B: No, he school two years ago. 10 A: Is Silvia married?	
	B: No, he school two years ago. 10 A: Is Silvia married? B: Yes, she married for five years.	
	B: No, heschool two years ago. 10 A: Is Silvia married? B: Yes, she married for five years. 11 A: Have you heard of George Washington?	ed States
	B: No, he school two years ago. 10 A: Is Silvia married? B: Yes, she married for five years.	ed States.

20 Write sentences with the present perfect or past simple. 1 A: Have you been to Thailand? B: Yes, went there last year. (I / go / there / last year) 2 A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I've never been there. (I / never / there) 3 A: What time is Paul going out? (he / already / go) 4 A: Has Catherine gone home? (she / leave / at 4 o'clock) B: Yes, 5 A: New York is my favourite city. ? (how many times / you / there?) B: Is it? 6 A: What are you doing this weekend? B: I don't know. (I / not / decide / yet) 7 A: I can't find my address book. Have you seen it? (it / on the table / last night) 8 A: Do you know the Japanese restaurant in Leeson Street? (I / eat / there a few times) B: Yes, 9 A: Paula and Sue are here. B: Are they? ______ ? (what time / they / arrive?) 21 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences. 1 A: Have you been to France? B: Yes, many times. A: When _____ the last time? B: Two years ago. 2 A: Is this your car? B: Yes, it is. Is this your A: How long _____ it? car? B: It's new. I it yesterday. 3 A: Where do you live? B: In Harold Street. A: How long _____ there? B: Five years. Before that in Mill Road. Where do A: How long _____ in Mill Road? you live? B: About three years. 4 A: What do you do? B: I work in a shop. A: How long there? B: Nearly two years. What do A: What before that? you do?

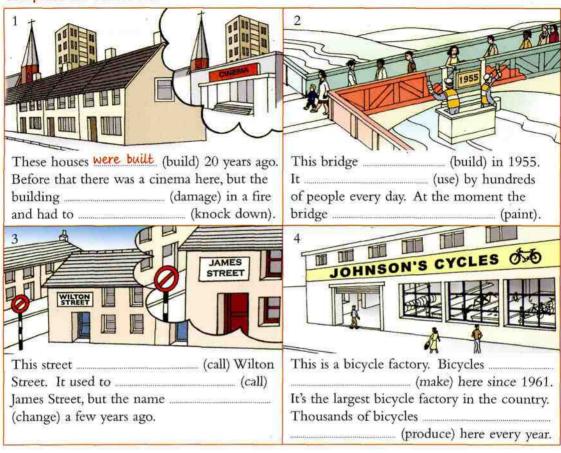
B: I _____ a taxi driver.

22	Write sentences about yourself.					
	1 (yesterday morning) 2 (last night) 3 (yesterday afternoon) 4 (days ago) 5 (last week) 6 (last year)					
pre	ent, past and present perfect Units 3–20					
23	Which is right?					
	1 ' Is Sue working? (C) 'No, she's on holiday.' A Does Sue work? B Is working Sue? C Is Sue working? D Does work Sue?					
	2 'Where?' 'In a village near London.' A lives your uncle B does your uncle live C your uncle lives D does live your uncle					
	3 I speak Italian, but French. A I speak not B I'm not speaking C I doesn't speak D I don't speak					
	4 'Where's Tom?' A He's having B He have C He has D He has had					
	5 Why angry with me yesterday? A were you B was you C you were D have you been					
	6 My favourite film is Cleo's Dream. it four times. A I'm seeing B I see C I was seeing D I've seen					
	7 I out last night. I was too tired. A don't go B didn't went C didn't go D haven't gone					
	8 Liz is from Chicago. She					
	9 My friend for me when I arrived. A waited B has waited C was waiting D has been waiting					
€	10 'How long English?' 'Six months.' A do you learn B are you learning C you are learning D have you been learning					
	11 Paul is Canadian, but he lives in France. He has been there A for three years B since three years C three years ago D during three years					
	12 'What time?' 'About an hour ago.' A has Lisa phoned B Lisa has phoned C did Lisa phone D is Lisa phoning					
	13 What when you saw her? A did Sue wear B was Sue wearing C has Sue worn D was wearing Sue					
	14 'Can you drive?' 'No, a car, but I want to learn.' A I never drive B I'm never driving C I've never driven D I was never driving					
	15 I saw Helen at the station when I was going to work this morning, but she me. A didn't see B don't see C hasn't seen D didn't saw					

passive

Units 21-22, Appendix 1

24 Complete the sentences.



25 Complete the sentences.

1 We were invited (invite) to the party, but we didn't go.
2 The museum is very popular. Every year it (visit) by thousands of people.
3 Many buildings (damage) in the storm last week.
4 A new road is going to (build) next year.
5 'Where's your jacket?' 'It (clean). It will be ready tomorrow.'
6 She's famous now, but in a few years her name will (forget).
7 'Shall I do the washing-up?' 'No, it (already/do).'
8 Milk should (keep) in a fridge.
9 (you/ever/bite) by a snake?
10 My bag (steal) from my car yesterday afternoon.

26 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1	Somebody has stolen my keys.	My keys have been stolen.
2	Somebody stole my car last week.	My car
3	Somebody wants you on the phone.	You
4	Somebody has eaten all the bananas.	All the
5	Somebody will repair the machine.	The
6	Somebody is watching us.	We
7	Somebody has to do the housework.	The

21	A	active or passive? Complete the sentences.	
	1	They are building (build) a new airport	at the moment.
	2	These shirts are clean now. They have been	n washed (wash)
		'How did you fall?' 'Somebody	
		'How did you fall?' 'I	
		I can't find my bag. Somebody	
		My watch is broken. It	
	7	Who (invent)	(repair) at the moment.
		When (the ca	
		These shirts are clean now. They	69 50
		These shirts are clean now. I	
		The letter was for me, so why	
	12	? The information will	(send) to you as soon as possible.
fut	ture		Units 25-28
28	N	Which is the best alternative?	
	1	We're having (B) a party next Sunday.	I hope you can come
		A We have B We're having C We'll have	1 hope you can come.
		Control of the contro	2 2 3 122 123 1 2
	2	2 Do you know about Karen?	
		A She leaves B She's going to leave C Sl	ne'll leave
	3	There's a programme on television that I want	to watch.
		in five minutes.	
		A It starts B It's starting C It will start	
	1	The weather is nice now, but I think	Taras
	ार		
		A it rains B it's raining C it will rain	
	5	6 'Whatnext w	
		A do you do B are you doing C will yo	u do
	6	'When you see Tina, can you ask her to phone	e me?' 'OKher.
		A I ask B I'm going to ask C I'll ask	*
	7	'What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?'	ii .
	8		tea,
		please.'	
		A I have B I'm going to have C I'll have	
	8	B Don't take that newspaper away.	
		A I read B I'm going to read C I'll read	
	9	Rachel is ill, so	to the party tomorrow night
	- 5	A she doesn't come B she isn't coming (
	24.20		
	10	I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time	e?
		A does her train arrive B is her train going	
	11	'Will you be at home tomorrow evening?'	
		A I go out B I'm going out C I'll go ou	it
	12	2 you tomorrow	
		A Do I phone B Am I going to phone (

past, present and future

Units 3-20, 25-28

00	C	lada di anasasi	
29	Comp	lete the sen	tences.

1	Α.	Did you go (you/go) or	ut lest night?
_		No,	
		What	A CONTROL OF THE PROPERTY OF T
		Wild	
			(you/go) out tomorrow night?
		Yes,	
			(you/see)?
	B:	(1/ not/ ki	now). (I/not/decide) yet
2	A:	Are you on holiday here?	Are you on
		Yes, we are.	holiday here?
		How long	(you/be) here?
		<i>Q</i>	
		And how long	
		Until the end of next week.	
		And	
			(we/have) a wonderful time.
3	A:	Oh,	(I/just/remember) –
		(Karen/phone) while you we	
	в:		(she/always/phone) when I'm not here.
	536		
	Α.		(she/want) you to call her back as soon as possible.
		OK,	
	D.	OK,	The state of the s
	۸.		
	Α.	its in my address book	(I/get) it for you.
4	Α.		(I/go) out with Chris and Steve this evening.
			(you/want) to come with us?
		Yes, where	MANAGEMENT CONTROL OF THE STATE
			Forth Street. (you/ever/eat)
		there?	
			(I/be) there two or three times. In fact I
			(go) there last night, but I'd love to go again!
<u>.</u>	ä		(1.0)
)			and the control of th
			3 - 0 / 0 / 1
		when	The state of the s
		Well,	
		them now, so where are they	
		•	
	A:	No.	(I/go) and look now.

past, present and future

Units 3-22, 25-28, 52, 54, 98, 105

30 Rachel is talking about her best friend, Carolyn. Put the verbs in the correct form.

2.7		meet). It was our first day at secondary
35	A 80.50	(we/sit) next to each other
7 Caralum V		(we/not/know) any
Carolyn (C)	other students in our class, and	so (4) (we/become)
00	friends. We found that (5)	(we/like) the same things,
	especially music and sport, and	so (6) (we/spend)
5.	a lot of time together.	
A MA	(we/	leave) school five years ago, but
	(8) (we/	meet) as often as we can. For the last six
	months Carolyn (9)	(be) in Mexico – at the
1 7 1	moment (10)	(she/work) in a school as a teaching
	assistant. (11)	(she/come) back to England next
Rachel		(she/come) back,
	(13)	(we/have) lots of things to talk about.
	N 18	(it/be) really nice to see her again.

31 Nick and his friend Jon are travelling round the world. Read the emails between Nick and his parents, and put the verbs in the correct form.

Dear I	Mum and Dad	
trip! (1 (2)	in Los Angeles, the first stop on our round-the-world We arrived (we/arrive) here yesterday, and now (we/stay) at a hotel near the	
	t. The flight was twelve hours, but (3)	
some f	njoy) it. (4) (we/watch) films and (5) (sleep) a few hours, is unusual for me – usually (6)	١
	/sleep) well on planes.	١
(7)	is a rest day for us and (7)	1
	ot/do) anything special, but tomorrow	١
	(we/go) to Hollywood	
	(see) the film studios.	١
	(we/not/decide) yet	1
what t	to do after Los Angeles. Jon (11)	l
(want)	to drive up the coast to San Francisco, but I'd prefer	
(12)	(go) south to San Diego.	ı
I hope	e all is well with you – (13)(I/send)	١
	nother email next week.	ı
Love		ŀ
Nick		L





	Ø	
Dear Nick Thanks for your mail. It's good to hear that (14) (you/have) a good time. We're fine – Ellie and Jo (15) (work) hard for their exams next month. Dad has been busy at work and last week (16) (he/have) a lot of important meetings. He's a little		
tired – I think (17)		•
Mum		w ///

A month later ...

Hi Mum and Dad	
The state of the s	e/be) in California for a month now. (19) (we/get)
	terday after (20) (see) many wonderful places.
I think the place (21)	(I/like) most was Yosemite National Park –
	22)(we/go) cycling a lot. The day before
(23)	(we/leave), Jon (24) (have) an accident on his
bike. Luckily (25)	(he/not/injure), but the bike
(26)	(damage).
(27)	(we/change) our travel plans since my last message: now
	(we/leave) for Hawaii on Monday (not Tuesday).
	(we/stay) there for a week before (30)
	(that/be) different, I'm sure!
All the best to Ellie and	Jo for their exams.
Love	AS TO A S OF THE REAL PROPERTY OF THE PERTY
Nick	

Hi Nick Have a good time in Hawaii! Ellie and Jo (32) (finish) their exams yesterday – (33) (I/let) you know when (34) (we/get) the results.	
We're all OK. Dad and I (35) (look) forward to our holiday next month. (36) (we/go) to Italy for two weeks – (37) (we/send) you an email from there.	
Take care!	
Love	_
Mum	~
	111

-ing and to ...

Units 51-55, 105, 112

32 Which is correct?

1	Don't forget to switch (B) off the light before you go out. A switch B to switch C switching
2	It's late. I must now. A go B to go C going
3	I'm sorry, but I haven't got time to you now. A for talking B to talk C talking
4	Gary is always in the kitchen. He enjoys
5	We've decided away for a few days. A go B to go C going
6	You're making too much noise. Can you please stop ? A shout B to shout C shouting
7	Would you like to dinner on Sunday? A come B to come C coming
8	That bag is too heavy for you. Let me you. A help B to help C helping
9	There's a swimming pool near my house. I go every day. A to swim B to swimming C swimming
10	Did you use a dictionary the letter? A to translate B for translating C for translate
	I'd love a car like yours. A have B to have C having
12	Could you me with this bag, please? A help B to help C helping
13	I don't mind here, but I'd prefer to sit by the window. A sit B to sit C sitting
14	Do you want you? A that I help B me to help C me helping
15	I usually read the newspaper before work. A start B to start C starting
16	I wasn't feeling very well, but the medicine made me better. A feel B to feel C feeling
17	Shall I phone the restaurant a table? A for reserve B for reserving C to reserve
18	Tom looked at me without anything. A say B saying C to say

a and the Units 65, 69–73

33 Complete the sentences.



34	W	rite a/an or the if necessary. If a/an/the are not necessary, leave an empty space (-).
34		
		Who is best player in your team?
		I don't watch television very often.
		'Is there a bank near here?' 'Yes, at the end of this street.'
		I can't ride horse.
		sky is very clear tonight.
		Do you live here, or are youtourist?
		What did you have forlunch?
		Who was first President of United States?
		'What time is it? 'I don't know. I haven't got watch.'
		I'm sorry, but I've forgotten your name. I can never remember names.
		What time is next train to London?
		Kate never sends emails. She prefers to phone people.
		'Where's Sue?' 'She's in garden.'
		Excuse me, I'm looking for
		Gary was ill last week, so he didn't go to work.
		Everest is highest mountain in world.
		I usually listen to radio while I'm having breakfast.
		I like sport. My favourite sport is basketball.
		Julia is doctor. Her husband is art teacher.
	20	My apartment is on second floor. Turn left at top of stairs, and it's on right.
	21	After dinner, we watched television.
		Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France.
	713.077.	
	_	
pre	pos	SELUCE STREET PROPERTY.
35	W	Units 103–108, 111
	1	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.).
	4	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.).
		rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying lawat university.
	2	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying lawat university. What is the longest river Europe?
	2	Helen is studying law university. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening?
	2 3 4	Helen is studying lawt university. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening? We arrived the hotel after midnight.
	2 3 4 5	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying lawat university. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening? We arrived the hotel after midnight. 'Where's Mike?' 'He's holiday.'
	2 3 4 5 6	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law
	2 3 4 5 6 7	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law
	2 3 4 5 6 7 8	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying lawat university. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening? We arrived the hotel after midnight. 'Where's Mike?' 'He's holiday.' Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still bed. Lisa is away. She's been away Monday. The next meeting is 15 April.
	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying lawat university. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening? We arrived the hotel after midnight. 'Where's Mike?' 'He's holiday.' Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still bed. Lisa is away. She's been away Monday. The next meeting is 15 April. I usually go to work car.
	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law
	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law
	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law
	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law
	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law
	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law
	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law
	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law
	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law
	2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19	rite a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law

Study guide

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use this study guide.

You have to decide which alternative (A, B, C etc.) is right. SOMETIMES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS CORRECT.

If you don't know (or if you are not sure) which alternatives are correct, study the unit (or units) on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

The key to this study guide is on page 314.

IF Y	OU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY
Dunne		UNIT
Prese		
1.1	A I cold B I'm cold C I have cold D It has cold	1
1.2	Tom in politics. A isn't interested B not interested C doesn't interested D doesn't interest	1
1.3	'?' 'No, she's out.' A Is at home your mother B Does your mother at home C Is your mother at home D Are your mother at home	2
1.4	These postcards are nice. A How much are they? B How many are they? C How much they are? D How much is they?	2
1.5	Look, there's Sarah. A She wearing B She has wearing C She is wearing D She's wearing	3, 23
1.6	You can turn off the television it. A I'm not watch B I'm not watching C I not watching D I don't watching	3, 23
1.7	'today?' 'No, he's at home.' A Is working Paul B Is work Paul C Is Paul work D Is Paul working	4, 23
1.8	Look, there's Emily! A Where she is going? B Where she go? C Where's she going? D Where she going?	4, 23
1.9	The earth round the sun. A going B go C goes D does go E is go	5, 23
1.10	We away at weekends. A often go B go often C often going D are often go	5, 23, 94
1.11	Wetelevision very often. A not watch B doesn't watch C don't watch D don't watching E watch not	6, 23
1.12	on Sundays?' 'No, not usually.' A Do you work B Are you work C Does you work D Do you working E Work you	7, 23
1.13	I don't understand this sentence. What? A mean this word B means this word C does mean this word D does this word mean E this word means	7, 23

IF Y	OU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY
1.14	Please be quiet. A I working. B I work. C I'm working. D I'm work.	8, 23
1.15	Tom a shower every morning. A has B having C is having D have	8, 58
1.16	What at the weekend? A do you usually B are you usually doing C are you usually do D do you usually do E you do usually	8, 23
1.17	Sarah isn't feeling well a headache. A She have B She have got C She has D She's got	9, 58
1.18	Tracey and Jeff any children. A don't have B doesn't have C no have D haven't got E hasn't got	9, 58
Past		
2.1	The weather last week. A is good B was good C were good D good E had good	10
2.2	Why late this morning? A you was B did you C was you D you were E were you	10
2.3	Terry in a bank from 1996 to 2003. A work B working C works D worked E was work	11
2.4	Caroline to the cinema three times last week. A go B went C goes D got E was	11
2.5	I television yesterday. A didn't watch B didn't watched C wasn't watched D don't watch E didn't watching	12, 23
2.6	'How?' 'I don't know. I didn't see it.' A happened the accident C does the accident happen E the accident happened 'I don't know. I didn't see it.' B did happen the accident D did the accident happen	12
2.7	What at 11.30 yesterday? A were you doing B was you doing C you were doing D were you do E you was doing	13
2.8	Jack was reading a book when the phone A ringing B ring C rang D was ringing E was ring	14
2.9	I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They at the bus stop. A waiting B waited C were waiting D was waiting E were waited	14
Prese	ent perfect	
3.1	'Where's Rebecca?' ' to bed.' A She is gone B She has gone C She goes D She have gone E She's gone	15
3.2	'Are Diane and Paul here?' 'No, they' A don't arrive yet B have already arrived C haven't already arrived D haven't arrived yet	16

IF Y	OU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY
3.3	My sister by plane. A has never travel B has never travelled C is never travelled D has never been travelled E have never travelled	17, 23
3.4	that woman before, but I can't remember where. A I see B I seen C I've saw D I've seen E I've seeing	17, 23
3.5	'How long married?' 'Since 1998.' A you are B you have been C has you been D are you E have you been	18
3.6	'Do you know Lisa?' 'Yes, her for a long time.' A I knew B I've known C I know D I am knowing	18
3.7	Richard has been in Canada	19, 104
3.8	'When did Tom go out?' A For ten minutes. B Since ten minutes. C Ten minutes ago. D In ten minutes.	19
3.9	We a holiday last year. A don't have B haven't had C hasn't had D didn't have E didn't had	20
3.10	Where on Sunday afternoon? I couldn't find you. A you were B you have been C was you D have you been E were you	20
Passi	ve	
4.1	This house 100 years ago. A is built B is building C was building D was built E built	21, 23
4.2	We to the party last week. A didn't invite B didn't invited C weren't invited D wasn't invited E haven't been invited	21, 23
4.3	'Where born?' 'In Cairo.' A you are B you were C was you D are you E were you	21
4.4	My car is at the garage. It	22
4.5	I can't find my keys. I think	22
Verb	forms	
5.1	It, so we didn't need an umbrella. A wasn't rained B wasn't rain C didn't raining D wasn't raining	23
5.2	Somebody this window. A has broke B has broken C has breaked D has break	24

IF Y	OU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY
		UNIT
Futu	re	
6.1	Andrew tennis tomorrow. A is playing B play C plays D is play	25
6.2	Out tonight? A Are you going B Are you go C Do you go D Go you E Do you going	25
6.3	'What time is the concert tonight?' 'It at 7.30.' A is start B is starting C starts D start E starting	25
6.4	What to the wedding next week? A are you wearing B are you going to wear C do you wear D you are going to wear	26
6.5	I think Kelly the exam. A passes B will pass C will be pass D will passing	27
6.6	to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? A We go B We'll go C We're going D We will going	27
6.7	you tomorrow, OK?' 'OK, bye.' A I phone B I phoning C I'm phoning D I'll phone	28
6.8	There's a good film on TV tonight. it. A I watch B I'll watch C I'm going to watch D I'll watching	28
6.9	It's a nice day for a walk? A Do we go B Shall we go C Are we go D We go E Go we	28
Mod	als, imperative etc.	rdeff, is
	to the cinema this evening, but I'm not sure. A I'll go B I'm going C I may go D I might go	29
7.2	here?' 'Yes, of course.' A Can I sit B Do I sit C May I sit D Can I to sit	29, 30
7.3	I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel A can't come B can't to come C can't coming D couldn't come	30
7.4	Before Maria came to Britain, she understand much English. A can B can't C not D couldn't E doesn't	30
7.5	We walk home last night. There were no buses. A have to B had to C must D must to E must have	31, 33
7.6	I go yet. I can stay a little longer. A must B mustn't C must not D don't need E don't need to	31
7.7	It's a good film. You go and see it. A should to B ought to C ought D should E need	32
7.8	What time go to the dentist tomorrow? A you must B you have to C have you to D do you have to	33
7.9	We wait long for the bus – it came in a few minutes. A don't have to B hadn't to C didn't have to D didn't had to E mustn't	33

IF Y	OU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY
7.10	' some coffee?' 'No, thank you.' A Are you liking B You like C Would you like D Do you like	34
7.11	Please	35
7.12	Dave in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket. A working B works C worked D use to work E used to work	36
There	e and it	
8.1	Excuse me, a hotel near here? A has there B is there C there is D is it	37
8.2	a lot of accidents on this road. It's very dangerous. A Have B It has C There have D They are E There are	37
8.3	I was hungry when I got home, but anything to eat. A there wasn't B there weren't C it wasn't D there hasn't been	38
8.4	Three kilometres from our house to the city centre. A It's B It has C There is D There are	39
8.5	True that you're going away? A Is there B Is it C Is D Are you	39
Auxil	liary verbs	
9.1	I haven't got a car, but my sister A have B is C has D hasn't E has got	40
9.2	I don't like hot weather, but Sue A does B doesn't C do D does like E likes	40
9.3	'Nicole got married last week.' Really?' A Is she? B Got she? C Did she? D Has she?	41
9.4	You haven't met my mother, ? A haven't you B have you C did you D you have E you haven't	41
9.5	Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers	42
9.6	'I'd like to go to Australia.' A So do I. B So am I. C So would I. D Neither do I. E So I would.	42
9.7	Sue much at weekends. A don't B doesn't C don't do D doesn't do	43
Ques	tions	
10.1	'When ?' 'I'm not sure. More than 100 years ago.' A did the telephone invent C was invented the telephone E the telephone was invented 'I'm not sure. More than 100 years ago.' B has the telephone invented D was the telephone invented	44
10.2	'I broke my finger last week.' 'How that?' A did you B you did C you did do D did you do	44

IF Y	OU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY
10.3	Why me last night? I was waiting for you to phone. A didn't you phone B you not phone C you don't phone D you didn't phone	44
10.4	'Who in this house?' 'I don't know.' A lives B does live C does lives D living	45
10.5	What when you told him the story? A said Paul B did Paul say C Paul said D did Paul said	45
10.6	'Tom's father is in hospital.' A In which hospital he is? B In which hospital he is in? D Which hospital is he in?	46
10.7	Did you have a good holiday? A How was the weather like? B What was the weather like? D Was the weather like?	46
10.8	Taller – Joe or Gary? A Who is B What is C Which is D Who has	47
10.9	There are four umbrellas here. is yours? A What B Who C Which D How E Which one	47, 75
10.10	How long to cross the Atlantic by ship? A is it B does it need C does it take D does it want	48
10.11	I don't remember what at the party. A Kate was wearing B was wearing Kate C was Kate wearing	49
10.12	'Do you know ?' 'Yes, I think so.' A if Jack is at home B is Jack at home C whether Jack is at home D that Jack is at home	49
Repo	rted speech	
11.1	I saw Steve a week ago. He said that me, but he didn't. A he phone B he phones C he'll phone D he's going to phone E he would phone	50
11.2	'Why did Tim go to bed so early?' 'He' A said he was tired B said that he was tired C said me he was tired D told me he was tired E told that he was tired	50
-ing	and to	
12.1	You shouldn't so hard. A working B work C to work D worked	51
12.2	It's late. I now. A must to go B have go C have to going D have to go	51
12.3	Tina has decided her car. A sell B to sell C selling D to selling	52
12.4	I don't mind early. A get up B to get up C getting up D to getting up	52

IF Y	OU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY
		UNIT
12.5	Do you like early? A get up B to get up C getting up D to getting up	52
12.6	Do you want you some money? A me lend B me lending C me to lend D that I lend	53
12.7	He's very funny. He makes	53
12.8	Paula went to the shop a newspaper. A for get B for to get C for getting D to get E get	54
Go, g	get, do, make and have	
13.1	It's a nice day. Let's go A for a swim B on a swim C to swimming D swimming	55
13.2	I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she better soon. A has B makes C gets D goes	56
13.3	Kate the car and drove away. A went into B went in C got in D got into	56
13.4	'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll it.' A do B make C get D open	57
13.5	I'm sorry, I a mistake. A did B made C got D had	57
13.6	' a good time in London?' 'Yes, I really enjoyed it.' A Have you B Had you C Do you have D Did you have	58
Pron	ouns and possessives	B
14.1	I don't want this book. You can have	59, 62
14.2	Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with? A her B they C them D him	59, 62
14.3	I know Donna, but I don't know husband. A their B his C she D her	60, 62
14.4	Oxford is famous for university. A his B its C it's D their	60
14.5	I didn't have an umbrella, so Helen gave me	61, 62
14.6	I went out to meet a friend of	61, 62
14.7	We had a good holiday. We enjoyed A us B our C ours D ourself E ourselves	63
14.8	Kate and Helen are good friends. They know well. A each other B them C themselves D theirselves	63

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY
	UNIT
14.9 Have you met? A the wife of Mr Black B Mr Black wife D Mr Black's wife E the Mr Black's wife C the wife Mr Black D Mr Black's wife	64
14.10 Have you seen? A the car of my parents B my parent's car C my parents' car D my parents car	64
A and the	
15.1 I'm going to buy A hat and umbrella B a hat and a umbrella C a hat and an umbrella D an hat and an umbrella	65, 67
15.2 'What's your job?' '	65
15.3 I'm going shopping. I need	66
15.4 I like the people here. very friendly. A She is B They are C They is D It is E He is	66
15.5 We can't get into the house without	67
15.6 I'd likeabout hotels in London. A some information B some informations C an information	68
15.7 We enjoyed our holiday was very nice. A Hotel B A hotel C An hotel D The hotel	69, 70
15.8 My house is at A end of street B end of the street C the end of the street D the end of street	70
15.9 What did you have for? A the breakfast B breakfast C a breakfast	70
15.10 I finish at 5 o'clock every day. A the work B work C a work	71
15.11 I'm tired. I'm going	71
15.12 We don't eat very often. A the meat B some meat C a meat D meat	72
15.13 is in New York. A The Times Square B Times Square	73
15.14 My friends are staying at	73

IF Y	OU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY
		UNIT
Dete	rminers and pronouns	
16.1	'I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, nice.' A it's B this is C that's	74
16.2	'Is there a bank near here?' 'Yes, there's at the end of this street.' A some B it C one D a one	75
16.3	This cup is dirty. Can I have ? A clean one B a clean one C clean D a clean	75
16.4	I'm going shopping. I'm going to buy clothes. A any B some	76
16.5	'Where's your luggage?' 'I haven't got' A one B some C any	76
16.6	Tracey and Jeff	77, 78
16.7	'How much money have you got?' A No. B No-one. C Any. D None.	77
16.8	There is in the room. It's empty. A anybody B nobody C anyone D no-one	78, 79
16.9	'What did you say?' '	78, 79
16.10	I'm hungry. I want	79
16.11	Bill watches TV for about two hours	80
16.12	friends. A Everybody need B Everybody needs C Everyone need D Everyone needs	80
16.13	children like playing. A Most B The most C Most of D The most of	81
16.14	I like those pictures. A both B both of C either D either of	82
16.15	I haven't read these books. A neither B neither of C either D either of	82
16.16	Have you got friends? A a lot of B much C many D much of E many of	83
16.17	We like films, so we go to the cinema	83
16.18	There were people in the theatre. It was nearly empty. A a little B few C little D a few of	84
16.19	They have money, so they're not poor. A a little B a few C few D little E little of	84

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY
	UNIT
Adjectives and adverbs	
17.1 I don't speak any	85
17.2 He ate his dinner very	86
17.3 You speak English very	86
17.4 Helen wants	87
17.5 'Do you feel better today?' 'No, I feel	87
17.6 Athens is olderRome. A as B than C that D of	88
17.7 I can run faster	88 e
17.8 Tennis isn't football. A popular as B popular than C as popular than D so popular that E as popular as	89
17.9 The weather today is the same yesterday. A as B that C than D like	89
17.10 The Europa Hotel is in the city. A the more expensive hotel C the hotel most expensive E the hotel more expensive D the hotel the more expensive	90
17.11 The film was very bad. I think it's the film I've ever seen. A worse B baddest C most bad D worst E more worse	90
17.12 Why don't you buy a car? You've got A enough money B money enough C enough of money	91
17.13 Is your English a conversation? A enough good to have B good enough for have C enough good for D good enough to have	91
17.14 I'm out. A too tired for go B too much tired for going C too tired to go D too much tired to go	92
Word order	
18.1 Sue is interested in the news. She A reads every day a newspaper B reads a newspaper every day C every day reads a newspaper	93
18.2 coffee in the morning. A I drink always B Always I drink C I always drink	94

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY
18.3 during the day. A They are at home never C They never are at home D Never they are at home	94
18.4 'Where's Emma?' 'She' A isn't here yet B isn't here already C isn't here still	95
18.5 I locked the door and I gave	96
Conjunctions and clauses	
19.1 I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when m A I'll have B I had C I have D I'm going to have	nore time. 98
19.2 late this evening, don't wait for me. A If I'm B If I'll be C When I'm D When I'll be	99
19.3 I don't know the answer. If I the answer, I'd tell you A know B would know C have known D knew	100
19.4 I like this jacket. it if it wasn't so expensive. A I buy B I'll buy C I bought D I'd bought E I'd buy	100
19.5 Emma lives in a house is 400 years old. A who B that C which D it E what	101
19.6 The people work in the office are very friendly. A who B that C they D which E what	101
19.7 Did you find the book ? A who you wanted B that you wanted C what you wanted D you wanted E you wanted it	102
19.8 I met can speak six languages. A a woman who B a woman which C a woman D a woman	n she
Prepositions	
20.1 Bye! I'll see you A until Friday B at Friday C in Friday D on Friday	103
20.2 Hurry! The train leaves five minutes. A at B on C from D after E in	103
20.3 'How long will you be away?' ' Monday.' A On B To C Until D Till E Since	104
20.4 We played tennis yesterday. We played two hours. A in B for C since D during	105
20.5 I always have breakfast before to work. A I go B go C to go D going	105
20.6 Write your name the top of the page. A at B on C in D to	106

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY
20.7 There are a lot of apples those trees. A at B on C in D to	106
20.8 What's the largest city the world? A at B on C in D of	107
20.9 The office is the first floor. A at B on C in D to	107
20.10 I met a lot of people the party. A on B to C in D at	108
20.11 I want to go	108
20.12 What time did you arrive the hotel? A at B on C in D to	108
20.13 'Where is David in this picture?' 'He's Barbara.' A at front of B in the front of C in front of D in front from	109
20.14 I jumped the wall into the garden. A on B through C across D over E above	110
20.15 Jane isn't at work this week. She's holiday. A on B in C for D to E at	111
20.16 Do you like travelling ? A with train B with the train C in train D on train E by	y train
20.17 I'm not very good telling stories. A on B with C at D in E for	112
20.18 Tom left without goodbye. A say B saying C to say D that he said	112
20.19 I'm going to phone this evening. A with my parents B to my parents C at my parents D my	parents 113
20.20 'Do you like eating in restaurants?' 'It depends the A in B at C of D on E over	restaurant.' 113
Phrasal verbs	
21.1 The car stopped and a woman got A off B down C out D out of	114
21.2 It was cold, so I A put on my coat B put my coat on C put the coat on me D put me the coat on	115
21.3 I've got Rachel's keys. I have to to her. A give back B give them back C give back them D give it be	115 back

Key to Exercises

UNIT 1

1

- 2 they're
- 3 it isn't / it's not
- 4 that's
- 5 I'm not
- 6 you aren't / you're not

1.2

- 2 'm/am 6 are
- 3 is 7 is ... are
- 4 are 8 'm/am ... is
- 5 's/is

1.3

- 2 I'm / I am
- 3 He's / He is
- 4 they're / they are
- 5 It's / It is
- 6 You're / You are
- 7 She's / She is
- 8 Here's / Here is

1.4

Example answers:

- 1 My name is Robert.
- 2 I'm from Australia.
- 3 I'm 25.
- 4 I'm a gardener.
- 5 My favourite colours are black and white.
- 6 I'm interested in plants.

1.5

- 2 They're / They are cold.
- 3 He's / He is hot.
- 4 He's / He is afraid.
- 5 They're / They are hungry.
- 6 She's / She is angry.

1.6

- 2 It's/It is windy today. or It isn't/It's not windy today.
- 3 My hands are cold. or My hands aren't/are not cold
- 4 Brazil is a very big country.
- 5 Diamonds aren't/are not cheap.
- 6 Toronto isn't/is not in the US.
- 8 I'm/I am hungry. or I'm not/I am not hungry.

- 9 I'm/I am a good swimmer. or I'm not/I am not a good swimmer.
- 10 I'm/I am interested in football. or I'm not/I am not interested in football.

UNIT 2

2.1

- 2 F 6 E 3 H 7 B
- 4 C 8 I 5 A 9 D

2.2

- 3 Is your job interesting?
- 4 Are the shops open today?
- 5 Where are you from?
- 6 Are you interested in sport?
- 7 Is the post office near here?
- 8 Are your children at school?
- 9 Why are you late?

2.3

- 2 Where's / Where is
- 3 How old are
- 4 How much are
- 5 What's / What is
- 6 Who's / Who is
- 7 What colour are

2.4

- 2 Are you American?
- 3 How old are you?
- 4 Are you a teacher?
- A Are you a teacher:
- 5 Are you married?
- 6 Is your wife a lawyer?
- 7 Where's/Where is she from?
- 8 What's/What is her name?
- 9 How old is she?

2.

- 2 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 3 Yes, it is. or
- No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
- 4 Yes, they are. or No, they aren't. / No, they're not.
- 5 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
- 6 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.

UNIT 3

3.1

- 2 's/is waiting
- 3 're/are playing
- 4 He's/He is lying
- 5 They're/They are having
- 6 She's/She is sitting

3.2

- 2 's/is cooking
- 3 're/are standing
- 4 's/is swimming
- 5 're/are staying
- 6 's/is having
- 7 're/are building
- 8 'm/am going

3.3

- 3 She's/She is sitting on the floor.
- 4 She isn't/She's not reading a book.
- 5 She isn't/She's not playing the piano.
- 6 She's/She is laughing.
- 7 She's/She is wearing a hat.
- 8 She isn't/She's not writing a letter.

3.4

- 3 I'm sitting on a chair. or I'm not sitting on a chair.
- 4 I'm eating. or I'm not eating.
- 5 It's raining. or It isn't raining. / It's not raining.
- 6 I'm learning English.
- 7 I'm listening to music. or I'm not listening to music.
- 8 The sun is shining. or The sun isn't shining.
- 9 I'm wearing shoes. or I'm not wearing shoes.
- 10 I'm not reading a newspaper.

UNIT 4

- 2 Are you going now?
- 3 Is it raining?
- 4 Are you enjoying the film?
- 5 Is that clock working?
- 6 Are you waiting for a bus?

4.2

- 2 Where is she going?
- 3 What are you eating?
- 4 Why are you crying?
- 5 What are they looking at?
- 6 Why is he laughing?

4.3

- 3 Are you listening to me?
- 4 Where are your friends going?
- 5 Are your parents watching television?
- 6 What is Jessica cooking?
- 7 Why are you looking at me?
- 8 Is the bus coming?

4.4

- 2 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 3 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 4 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
- 5 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 6 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.

UNIT 5

5.1

- 2 thinks 5 has
- 3 flies 6 finishes
- 4 dances

5.2

- 2 live 5 They go
- 3 She eats 6 He sleeps
- 4 He plays

5.3

- 2 open 7 costs
- 3 closes 8 cost 4 teaches 9 boils
- 5 meet 10 like ... likes
- 6 washes

5.4

- 2 I never go to the cinema.
- Martina always works hard.
- Children usually like chocolate.
- 5 Julia always enjoys parties.
- 6 I often forget people's names.
- 7 Tim never watches television.
- 8 We usually have dinner at 7.30.
- 9 Jenny always wears nice clothes.

5.5

Example answers:

- 2 I sometimes read in bed.
- 3 I often get up before 7 o'clock.
- 4 I never go to work by bus.
- 5 I usually drink two cups of coffee in the morning.

UNIT 6

6.1

- 2 Jane doesn't play the piano very well.
- 3 They don't know my phone number.
- 4 We don't work very hard.
- 5 He doesn't have a bath every day.
- 6 You don't do the same thing every day.

6.2

- Kate doesn't like classical music.
 I like (or I don't like)
 - classical music.
- 3 Ben and Sophie don't like boxing. Kate likes boxing.
 - I like (or I don't like) boxing.
- 4 Ben and Sophie like horror films.
 - Kate doesn't like horror films.
 - I like (or I don't like) horror films.

6.3

Example answers:

- 2 I never go to the theatre.
- 3 I don't ride a bicycle very often.
- 4 I never eat in restaurants.
- 5 I often travel by train.

6.4

- 2 doesn't use
- 3 don't go
- 4 doesn't wear
- 5 don't know
- 6 doesn't cost
- 7 don't see

6.5

- 3 don't know
- 4 doesn't talk
- 5 drinks
- 6 don't believe
- 7 like
- 8 doesn't eat

UNIT 7

7.1

- 2 Do you play tennis?
- 3 Does Lucy live near here?
- 4 Do Tom's friends play tennis? / Do they play tennis?
- 5 Does your brother speak English? / Does he speak English?
- 6 Do you do yoga every morning?
- 7 Does Paul often go away? / Does he often go away?
- 8 Do you want to be famous?
- 9 Does Anna work hard? / Does she work hard?

7.2

- 3 How often do you watch TV?
- 4 What do you want for dinner?
- 5 Do you like football?
- 6 Does your brother like football?
- 7 What do you do in your free time?
- 8 Where does your sister work?
- 9 Do you often go to the cinema?10 What does this word
- mean?
- 11 Does it often snow here?
- 12 What time do you usually go to bed?
- 13 How much does it cost to phone New York?
- 14 What do you usually have for breakfast?

7.3

- 2 Do you enjoy / Do you like
- 3 do you start
- 4 Do you work
- 5 do you go
- 6 does he do
- 7 does he teach
- 8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

- 2 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 3 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 4 Yes, it does. or No, it doesn't.
- 5 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.

UNIT 8

8.1

- 2 No, she isn't. Yes, she does. She's playing the piano.
- 3 Yes, he does. Yes, he is. He's cleaning a window.
- 4 No. they aren't. Yes, they do. They teach.

8.2

- 2 don't 6 do
- 3 are 7 does
- 8 doesn't 4 does
- 5 's/is ... don't

8.3

- 4 is singing
- 5 She wants
- 6 do you read
- 7 you're sitting
- 8 I don't understand
- 9 I'm going ... Are you coming
- 10 does your father finish
- 11 I'm not listening
- 12 He's/He is cooking
- 13 doesn't usually drive ... usually walks
- 14 doesn't like ... She prefers

UNIT 9

9.1

- 2 he's got
- 3 they've got
- 4 she hasn't got
- 5 it's got
- 6 I haven't got

- 2 He's got a computer. or He has a computer.
- 3 He hasn't got a dog. or He doesn't have a dog.
- 4 He hasn't got a mobile phone. or He doesn't have a mobile phone.
- 5 He's got a watch. or He has a watch.
- 6 He's got two brothers and a sister. or He has two brothers and a sister.
- 7 I've got a computer. / I have a computer. or I haven't got a computer. / I don't have a computer.

- 8 I've got a dog. / I have a I haven't got a dog. / I don't have a dog.
- 9 I've got a bike. / I have a bike. or I haven't got a bike. / I don't have a bike.
- 10 (Example answer) I've got a brother and a sister.

9.3

- 3 He's got a new job.
- 4 They haven't got much
- 5 Have you got an umbrella?
- 6 We've got a lot of work to
- 7 I haven't got your phone number.
- 8 Has your father got a car?
- 9 How much money have we got?

- 3 's got / has got (or has)
- 4 haven't got (or don't have)
- 5 've got / have got (or have)
- 6 haven't got (or don't
- 7 hasn't got (or doesn't have)

- 3 have got four wheels or have four wheels
- 4 's got / has got a lot of friends or has a lot of friends
- 5 haven't got a key or don't have a key
- 6 has got six legs or has six legs
- 7 haven't got much time or don't have much time

UNIT 10

- 2 Jack and Kate were at/in the cinema.
- 3 Sue was at the station.
- 4 Mr and Mrs Hall were in/at a restaurant.
- 5 Ben was on the beach / on a beach / at the beach / at the seaside.
- 6 (Example answer) I was at work.

10.2

- 2 is ... was 6 're/are
- 3 'm/am 7 Was
- 4 was 8 was
- 5 were 9 are ... were

10.3

- 2 wasn't ... was
- 3 was ... were
- 4 'Were Kate and Bill at the party? 'Kate was there. but Bill wasn't.' or 'Kate wasn't there, but Bill was.'
- 5 were
- 6 weren't ... were

10.4

- 2 Was your exam difficult?
- 3 Where were Sue and Chris last week?
- 4 How much was your new camera?
- 5 Why were you angry vesterday?
- 6 Was the weather nice last week?

UNIT 11

11.1

- 2 opened
- 3 started ... finished
- 4 wanted
- 5 happened
- 6 rained
- 7 enjoyed ... stayed
- 8 died

11.2

- 2 saw 8 thought 3 played 9 copied
- 4 paid 10 knew
- 5 visited
- 11 put
- 6 bought 12 spoke
- 7 went

- 2 got 9 checked
- 3 had 10 had
- 4 left 11 waited
- 5 drove 12 departed
- 6 got 13 arrived
- 7 parked 14 took
- 8 walked

11.4

- 2 lost her keys
- 3 met her friends
- 4 bought two newspapers
- 5 went to the cinema
- 6 ate an orange
- 7 had a shower
- 8 came (to see us)

11.5

Example answers:

- 2 I got up late yesterday.
- 3 I met some friends at lunchtime.
- 4 I went to the supermarket.
- 5 I phoned a lot of people.
- 6 I lost my keys.

UNIT 12

12.1

- 2 didn't work 4 didn't have
- 3 didn't go 5 didn't do

12.2

- 2 Did you enjoy the party?
- 3 Did you have a good holiday?
- 4 Did you finish work early?
- 5 Did you sleep well last night?

12.3

- 2 I got up before 7 o'clock. or I didn't get up before 7 o'clock.
- 3 I had a shower. or I didn't have a shower.
- 4 I bought a magazine. or I didn't buy a magazine.
- 5 I ate meat. or I didn't eat meat.
- 6 I went to bed before 10.30. or I didn't go to bed before 10.30.

12.4

- 2 did you arrive
- 3 Did you win
- 4 did you go
- 5 did it cost
- 6 Did you go to bed late
- 7 Did you have a nice time
- 8 did it happen / did that happen

12.5

- 2 bought 6 didn't have
- 3 Did it rain 7 did you do
- 4 didn't stay 8 didn't know
- 5 opened

UNIT 13

13.1

- 2 Jack and Kate were at the cinema. They were watching a film.
- 3 Tim was in his car. He was driving.
- 4 Tracey was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
- 5 Mr and Mrs Hall were in the park. They were walking.
- 6 (Example answer) I was in a café. I was having a drink with some friends.

13.2

- 2 she was playing tennis
- 3 she was reading a/the newspaper
- 4 she was cooking (lunch)
- 5 she was having breakfast
- 6 she was cleaning the kitchen

13.3

- 2 What were you doing
- 3 Was it raining
- 4 Why was Sue driving
- 5 Was Tim wearing

13.4

- 2 He was carrying a bag.
- 3 He wasn't going to the dentist.
- 4 He was eating an icecream.
- 5 He wasn't carrying an umbrella.
- 6 He wasn't going home.
- 7 He was wearing a hat.
- 8 He wasn't riding a bicycle.

UNIT 14

14.1

- 1 happened ... was painting ... fell
- 2 arrived ... got ... were waiting
- 3 was walking ... met ... was going ... was carrying ... stopped

14.2

- 2 was studying
- 3 did the post arrive ... came ... was having
- 4 didn't go
- 5 were you driving ... stopped ... wasn't driving

- 6 Did your team win ... didn't play
- 7 did you break ... were playing ... kicked ... hit
- 8 Did you see ... was wearing
- 9 were you doing
- 10 lost ... did you get ... climbed

UNIT 15

15.

- 2 She has/She's closed the door.
- 3 They have/They've gone to bed.
- 4 It has/It's stopped raining.
- 5 He has/He's had a shower.
- 6 The picture has fallen down.

15.2

- 2 've bought / have bought
- 3 's gone / has gone
- 4 Have you seen
- 5 has broken
- 6 've told / have told
- 7 has taken
- 8 haven't seen 9 has she gone
- 10 've forgotten / have forgotten
- 11 's invited / has invited
- 12 Have you decided
- 13 haven't told
- 14 've read / have read

UNIT 16

16.1

- 2 He's/He has just got up.
- 3 They've/They have just bought a car.
- 4 The race has just started.

16 3

- 2 they've/they have already seen it.
- 3 I've/I have already phoned him.
- 4 He's/He has already gone (away).
- 5 I've/I have already read it.
- 6 She's/She has already started (it).

- 2 The bus has just gone.
- 3 The train hasn't left yet.
- 4 He hasn't opened it yet.

- 5 They've/They have just finished their dinner.
- 6 It hasn't stopped raining yet.

16.4

- 2 Have you met your new neighbours yet?
- 3 Have you paid your phone bill yet?
- 4 Has Tom/he sold his car yet?

UNIT 17

17.1

- 3 Have you ever been to Australia?
- 4 Have you ever lost your passport?
- 5 Have you ever flown in a helicopter?
- 6 Have you ever won a race?
- 7 Have you ever been to New York?
- 8 Have you ever driven a bus?
- 9 Have you ever broken your leg?

17.2

Helen:

- 2 She's/She has been to Australia once.
- 3 She's/She has never won a race.
- 4 She's/She has flown in a helicopter a few times.

You (example answers):

- 5 I've/I have never been to New York.
- 6 I've/I have played tennis many times.
- 7 I've/I have never driven a lorry.
- 8 I've/have been late for work a few times.

17.3

2-6

- She's/She has done a lot of interesting things.
- She's/She has travelled all over the world. or
- She's/She has been all over the world.
- She's/She has been married three times.
- She's/She has written ten books.
- She's/She has met a lot of interesting people.

17.4

- 2 gone
- 3 been ... been
- 4 been
- 5 gone
- 6 been
- 7 been
- 8 gone

UNIT 18

18.1

- 3 have been
- 4 has been
- 5 have lived / have been living
- 6 has worked / has been working
- 7 has had
- 8 have been learning

18.2

- 2 How long have they been there? *or* ... been in Brazil?
- 3 How long have you known her? or ... known Amy?
- 4 How long has she been learning Italian?
- 5 How long has he lived in Canada? / How long has he been living ... ?
- 6 How long have you been a teacher?
- 7 How long has it been raining?

18.3

- 2 She has lived in Wales all her life.
- 3 They have been on holiday since Sunday.
- 4 The sun has been shining all day.
- 5 She has been waiting for ten minutes.
- 6 He has had a beard since he was 20.

18.4

- 2 I know
- 3 I've known
- 4 have you been waiting
- 5 works
- 6 She has been reading
- 7 have you lived
- 8 I've had
- 9 is ... He has been

UNIT 19

19.1

- 3 for 6 for
- 4 since 7 for
- 5 since 8 for ... since

19.2

Example answers:

- 2 A year ago.
- 3 A few weeks ago.
- 4 Two hours ago.
- 5 Six months ago.

19.3

- 3 for 20 years
- 4 20 years ago
- 5 an hour ago
- 6 a few days ago
- 7 for six months
- 8 for a long time

19.4

- 2 Jack has been here since Tuesday.
- 3 It's been raining for an hour.
- 4 I've known Sue since 2002.
- 5 Claire and Matthew have been married for six months.
- 6 Liz has been studying medicine (at university) for three years.
- 7 David has played / David has been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

19.5

Example answers:

- 1 I've lived in ... all my life.
- 2 I've been in the same job for ten years.
- 3 I've been learning English for six months.
- 4 I've known Chris for a long time.
- 5 I've had a headache since I got up this morning.

UNIT 20

- 2 I started (it)
- 3 they arrived
- 4 she went (away)
- 5 I wore it

- 3 I finished
- 4 OK
- 5 did you finish
- 6 OK
- 7 (Steve's grandmother) died
- 8 Where were you / Where did you go

20.3

- 3 played
- 4 did you go
- 5 Have you ever met
- 6 wasn't
- 7 's/has visited
- 8 switched
- 9 lived
- 10 haven't been

20.4

- 1 Did you have was
- 2 Have you seen went haven't seen
- 3 has worked / has been working was worked
- didn't enjoy
 4 've/have seen
 've/have never spoken
 Have you ever spoken
 met

UNIT 21

21.1

- 3 Glass is made from sand.
- 4 Stamps are sold in a post office.
- 5 This room isn't used very often.
- 6 Are we allowed to park here?
- 7 How is this word pronounced?
- 9 The house was painted last month.
- 10 My phone was stolen a few days ago.
- 11 Three people were injured in the accident.
- 12 When was this bridge built?
- 13 I wasn't woken up by the noise.
- 14 How were these windows broken?
- 15 Were you invited to Jon's party last week?

21.2

- 2 Football is played in most
- 3 Why was the letter sent to ...?
- 4 ... where cars are repaired.
- 5 Where were you born?
- 6 How many languages are spoken ...?
- 7 ... but nothing was stolen.
- 8 When was the bicycle invented?

21.3

- 3 is made
- 4 were damaged
- 5 was given
- 6 are shown
- 7 were invited
- 8 was made
- 9 was stolen ... was found

21.4

- 2 Sally was born in Manchester.
- 3 Her parents were born in Ireland.
- 4 I was born in ...
- 5 My mother was born in

UNIT 22

22.

- 2 A bridge is being built.
- 3 The windows are being cleaned.
- 4 The grass is being cut.

222

- 3 The window has been broken.
- 4 The roof is being repaired.
- 5 The car has been damaged.
- 6 The houses are being knocked down.
- 7 The trees have been cut down.
- 8 They have been invited to a party.

22.3

- 3 has been repaired
- 4 was repaired
- 5 are made
- 6 were they built
- 7 Is the computer being used (or Is anybody using the computer)

- 8 are they called
- 9 were stolen
- 10 was damaged ... hasn't been repaired

UNIT 23

23.1

3 are 7 do 4 Does 8 Is 5 Do 9 does 6 Is 10 Are

23.2

- 2 don't
- 3 'm/am not
- 4 isn't
- 5 don't
- 6 doesn't
- 7 'm/am not
- 8 aren't / 're not

23.3

20.0		
2 Did	7	were
3 were	8	Has
4 was	9	did
5 Has	10	have
6 did		

23.4

	T. C. C.		
2	was	6	've/have
3	Have	7	is
4	are	8	was
5	were	9	bas

23.5

-			
3	eaten	8	understand
4	enjoying	9	listening
5	damaged	10	pronounced
6	use	11	open
7	gone		827

UNIT 24

24.1

3 got 10 happened
4 brought 11 heard
5 paid 12 put
6 enjoyed 13 caught
7 bought 14 watched
8 sat 15 understood
9 left

24.2

2 began begun 3 ate eaten 4 drank drunk 5 drove driven 6 spoke spoken

- 7 wrote written 8 came come
- 9 knew known
- 10 took taken

- 11 went gone
- 12 gave given
- 13 threw thrown
- 14 forgot forgotten

- 3 slept
- 4 saw
- 5 rained
- 6 lost ... seen
- 7 stolen
- 8 went
- 9 finished
- 10 built
- 11 learnt/learned
- 12 ridden
- 13 known
- 14 fell ... hurt
- 15 ran ... run

24.4

- 2 told 8 spoken
- 3 won 9 cost
- 4 met 10 driven
- 5 woken up 11 sold
- 6 swam 12 flew
- 7 thought

UNIT 25

25.1

- 2 Richard is going to the cinema.
- 3 Rachel is meeting Dave.
- 4 Karen is having lunch with Ken.
- 5 Tom and Sue are going to a party.

25.2

- 2 Are you working next week?
- 3 What are you doing tomorrow evening?
- 4 What time are your friends coming?
- 5 When is Liz going on holiday?

25.3

Example answers:

- 3 I'm going away at the weekend.
- 4 I'm playing basketball tomorrow.
- 5 I'm meeting a friend this evening.
- 6 I'm going to the cinema on Thursday evening.

25.4

- 3 She's getting
- 4 are going ... are they going
- 5 finishes
- 6 I'm not going
- 7 I'm going ... We're meeting
- 8 are you getting ... leaves
- 9 does the film begin
- 10 are you doing ... I'm working

UNIT 26

26.1

- 2 I'm going to have a bath.
- 3 I'm going to buy a car.
- 4 We're going to play football.

26.2

- 3 'm/am going to walk
- 4 's/is going to stay
- 5 'm/am going to eat
- 6 're/are going to give
- 7 's/is going to lie down
- 8 Are you going to watch
- 9 is Rachel going to do

26.3

- The shelf is going to fall (down).
- 3 The car is going to turn (right).
- 4 He's / He is going to kick the ball.

26.4

Example answers:

- 1 I'm going to phone Maria this evening.
- 2 I'm going to get up early tomorrow.
- 3 I'm going to buy some shoes tomorrow.

UNIT 27

27.1

- 2 she'll be 5 she's
- 3 she was 6 she was
- 4 she'll be 7 she'll be

27.2

Example answers:

- 2 I'll be at home.
- 3 I'll probably be in bed.
- 4 I'll be at work.
- 5 I don't know where I'll be.

27.3

- 2 'll/will 5 'll/will
- 3 won't 6 'll/will
- 4 won't 7 won't

27.4

- 3 I think we'll win the game.
- 4 I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.
- 5 I think Sue will like her present.
- 6 I don't think they'll get married.
- 7 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.

27.5

- 2 are you doing
- 3 They're going
- 4 will lend
- 5 I'm going
- 6 will phone
- 7 He's working
- 8 Will you
- 9 are coming

UNIT 28

28.1

- 2 I'll send 5 I'll do
- 3 I'll eat 6 I'll stay
- 4 I'll sit 7 I'll show

28.2

- 2 I think I'll have
- 3 I don't think I'll play
- 4 I think I'll buy
- 5 I don't think I'll buy

28.3

- 2 I'll do
- 3 I watch
- 4 I'll go
- 5 is going to buy
- 6 I'll give
- 7 Are you doing ... I'm going
- 8 I'm working

20 /

- 2 Shall I turn off the television?
- 3 Shall I make some sandwiches?
- 4 Shall I turn on the light?

- 2 where shall we go?
- 3 what shall we buy?
- 4 who shall we invite?

29.1

- 2 I might see you tomorrow.
- 3 Sarah might forget to phone.
- 4 It might snow today.
- 5 I might be late tonight.
- 6 Mark might not be here next week.
- 7 I might not have time to go out.

29.2

- 2 I might go away.
- 3 I might see her on Monday.
- 4 I might have fish.
- 5 I might get/take a taxi. or ... go by taxi.
- 6 I might buy a new car.

- 3 He might get up early.
- 4 He isn't/He's not working tomorrow.
- 5 He might be at home tomorrow morning.
- 6 He might watch television.
- 7 He's going out in the afternoon.
- 8 He might go shopping.

Example answers:

- 1 I might read a newspaper.
- 2 I might go out with some friends in the evening.
- 3 I might have an egg for breakfast.

UNIT 30

30.1

- 2 Can you ski?
- 3 Can you play chess?
- 4 Can you run ten kilometres?
- 5 Can you drive (a car)?
- 6 Can you ride (a horse)?
- 7 I can/can't swim.
- 8 I can/can't ski.
- 9 I can/can't play chess.
- 10 I can/can't run ten kilometres.
- 11 I can/can't drive (a car).
- 12 I can/can't ride (a horse).

30.2

2 can see 4 can't find 3 can't hear 5 can speak

30.3

- 2 couldn't eat
- 3 can't decide
- 4 couldn't find
- 5 can't go
- 6 couldn't go

- 2 Can/Could you pass the salt (please)?
- 3 Can/Could you turn off the radio (please)?
- 4 Can/Could I have your phone number (please)?
- 5 Can/Could I look at your newspaper (please)? or Can/Could I have a look at your newspaper (please)?
- 6 Can/Could I use your pen (please)?

UNIT 31

31.1

- 2 must meet
- 3 must wash
- 4 must learn
- 5 must go
- 6 must win
- 7 must be

31.2

- 2 I must 5 I had to 3 I had to 6 I had to
- 4 I must 7 I must

31.3

- 2 don't need to hurry
- 3 mustn't lose
- 4 don't need to wait
- 5 mustn't forget
- don't need to phone

31.4

2 C 4 B 3 A 5 D

31.5

- 3 don't need to
- 4 had to
- 5 must
- 6 mustn't
- 7 must
- 8 had to
- 9 don't need to
- 10 mustn't

UNIT 32

32.1

- 2 You should go
- 3 You should eat
- 4 you should visit
- 5 you should wear
- 6 You should take

- 2 He shouldn't eat so much.
- 3 She shouldn't work so
- 4 He shouldn't drive so fast.

- 2 Do you think I should learn (to drive)?
- 3 Do you think I should get another job?
- 4 Do you think I should invite Gary (to the party)?

32.4

- 3 I think you should sell it.
- 4 I think she should have a holiday.
- 5 I don't think they should get married.
- 6 I don't think you should go to work.
- 7 I think he should go to the doctor.
- 8 I don't think we should stay there.

32.5

Example answers:

- 2 I think everybody should have enough food.
- 3 I think people should drive more carefully.
- 4 I don't think the police should carry guns.
- 5 I think I should take more exercise.

UNIT 33

- 2 have to do
- 3 has to read
- 4 have to speak
- 5 has to travel

6 have to hit

- 2 have to go
- 3 had to buy
- 4 have to change
- 5 had to answer

- 2 did he have to wait
- 3 does she have to go
- 4 did you have to pay
- 5 do you have to do

33.4

- 2 doesn't have to wait.
- 3 didn't have to get up early.
- 4 doesn't have to work (so)
- 5 don't have to leave now.

33.5

- 3 have to pay
- 4 had to borrow
- 5 must stop or have to stop (both are correct)
- 6 has to meet
- 7 must tell or have to tell (both are correct)

- 2 I have to go to work every
- 3 I had to go to the dentist vesterday.
- 4 I have to go shopping tomorrow.

UNIT 34

- 2 Would you like an apple?
- 3 Would you like some coffee? / ... a cup of coffee?
- 4 Would you like some cheese? / ... a piece of cheese?
- 5 Would you like a sandwich?
- 6 Would you like some cake? /... a piece of cake?

34.2

- 2 Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
- 3 Would you like to come to a concert next week?
- 4 Would you like to borrow my umbrella?

34.3

- 2 Do you like
- 3 Would you like
- 4 would you like
- 5 Would you like
- 6 I like
- 7 would you like
- 8 Would you like
- 9 Do you like
- 10 I'd like

- 11 I'd like
- 12 do you like

UNIT 35

35.1

- 3 Don't buy
- 4 Smile
- 5 Don't sit
- 6 Have
- 7 Don't forget
- 8 Sleep
- 9 Be ... Don't drop

- 2 let's take a taxi
- 3 let's watch TV
- 4 let's go to a restaurant
- 5 let's wait a little

- 3 No, let's not go out. or No, don't let's go out.
- 4 No, don't close the window.
- 5 No, don't phone me (tonight).
- 6 No, let's not wait for Andy. or No. don't let's wait for Andy.
- 7 No, don't turn on the
- 8 No, let's not go by bus. or No, don't let's go by bus.

UNIT 36

- 2 He used to play football.
- 3 She used to be a taxi driver.
- 4 They used to live in the country.
- 5 He used to wear glasses.
- 6 This building used to be a hotel.

36.2

2-6

- She used to play volleyball. She used to go out most evenings. / She used to go out a lot.
- She used to play the
- She used to read a lot. / She used to like reading.
- She used to go away two or three times a year. / She used to travel a lot.

36.3

- 3 used to have
- 4 used to be
- 5 go / travel
- 6 used to eat
- 7 watches
- 8 used to live
- 9 get
- 10 did you use to play

UNIT 37

37.1

- 3 There's/There is a hospital.
- 4 There isn't a swimming pool.
- 5 There are two cinemas.
- 6 There isn't a university.
- 7 There aren't any big hotels.

37.2

Example answers:

- 3 There is a university in ...
- 4 There are a lot of big shops.
- 5 There isn't an airport.
- 6 There aren't many factories.

37.3

- 2 There's/There is
- 3 is there
- 4 There are
- 5 are there
- 6 There isn't
- Is there
- 8 Are there
- 9 There's / There is ... There aren't

37.4

2 - 6

- There are eight planets in the solar system.
- There are fifteen players in a rugby team.
- There are twenty-six letters in the English
- alphabet. There are thirty days in September.
- There are fifty states in the USA.

- 2 It's
- 3 There's
- 4 There's ... Is it
- 5 Is there ... there's
- 6 It's
- 7 Is there

38.1

- 2 There was a carpet
- 3 There were three pictures
- 4 There was a small table
- 5 There were some flowers
- 6 There were some books
- 7 There was an armchair
- 8 There was a sofa

38.2

- 3 There was
- 4 Was there
- 5 there weren't
- 6 There wasn't
- 7 Were there
- 8 There wasn't
- 9 There was
- 10 there weren't

38.3

- 2 There are
- 3 There was
- 4 There's/There is
- 5 There's been/There has been or There was
- 6 there was
- 7 there will be
- 8 there were ... there are
- 9 There have been
- 10 there will be or there are

UNIT 39

39.1

- 2 It's cold.5 It's snowing.3 It's windy.6 It's cloudy.
- 4 It's sunny/fine. or It's a nice day.

39.2

- 2 It's / It is
- 3 Is it
- 4 is it ... it's / it is
- 5 It's / It is
- 6 Is it
- 7 is it
- 8 It's / It is
- 9 It's / It is

39.3

- 2 How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
- 3 How far is it from New York to Washington?
- 4 How far is it from your house to the airport?

39.4

- 3 It
- 4 It ... It 7 It ... there
- 5 There 8 It

39.5

- 2 It's nice to see you again.
- 3 It's impossible to work in this office.
- 4 It's easy to make friends.
- 5 It's interesting to visit different places.
- 6 It's dangerous to go out alone

UNIT 40

40.1

- 2 is 5 will 6 was 3 can
- 4 has

40.2

- 2 'm not 5 isn't 3 weren't 6 hasn't
- 4 haven't

40.3

- 3 doesn't 6 does
- 4 do 7 don't
- 5 did 8 didn't

40.4

Example answers:

- 2 I like sport, but my sister doesn't.
- 3 I don't eat meat, but Jenny does.
- 4 I'm American, but my husband isn't.
- 5 I haven't been to Japan, but Jenny has.

40.5

- 2 wasn't 7 has
- 3 are 8 do
- 9 hasn't 4 has
- 5 can't 10 will
- 6 did 11 might

40.6

- 2 Yes, I have. or
- No, I haven't. 3 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 4 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't.
- 5 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 6 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 7 Yes, I will. or No, I won't.
- 8 Yes, I have. or No, I haven't.
- 9 Yes, I did. or No, I didn't.
- 10 Yes, I was. or No, I wasn't.

UNIT 41

41.1

- 2 Do you? 5 Do I?
- 3 Didn't you? 6 Did she?
- 4 Doesn't she?

- 3 Have you? 8 Aren't you?
- 9 Did you? 4 Can't she?
- 5 Were you? 10 Does she?
- 6 Didn't you? 11 Won't you?
- 7 Is there? 12 Isn't it?

41.3

- 2 aren't they
- 3 wasn't she
- 4 haven't you
- 5 don't you
- 6 doesn't he
- 7 won't you

41.4

- 6 didn't she 2 are you
- 3 isn't she 7 was it
- 4 can't you 8 doesn't she
- 5 do you 9 will you

UNIT 42

42.1

- 2 either 5 either
- 3 too 6 either
- 4 too 7 too

42.2

- 2 So am L
- 3 So have I.
- 4 So do I.
- 5 So will I.
- 6 So was I.
- 7 Neither can I.
- 8 Neither did I.
- 9 Neither have I.
- 10 Neither am I. 11 Neither do I.

- 1 So am I.
- 2 So can I. or I can't.
- 3 Neither am I. or I am.
- 4 So do I. or I don't.
- 5 Neither do I. or I do.
- 6 So did I. or I didn't. 7 Neither have I. or
- I have. 8 Neither do I. or I do.
- 9 So am I. or I'm not.
- 10 Neither have I. or I have.
- 11 Neither did I. or I did.
- 12 So do I. or I don't.

43.1

- 2 They aren't / They're not married.
- 3 I haven't had dinner.
- 4 It isn't cold today.
- 5 We won't be late.
- 6 You shouldn't go.

43.2

- 2 I don't like cheese.
- 3 They didn't understand.
- 4 He doesn't live here.
- 5 Don't go away!
- 6 I didn't do the shopping.

43.3

- 2 They haven't arrived.
- 3 I didn't go to the bank.
- 4 He doesn't speak German.
- 5 We weren't angry.
- 6 He won't be pleased.
- 7 Don't phone me tonight.
- 8 It didn't rain yesterday.
- 9 I couldn't hear them.
- 10 I don't believe you.

43.4

- 2 'm not / am not
- 3 can't
- 4 doesn't
- 5 isn't / 's not
- 6 don't ... haven't
- 7 Don't
- 8 didn't
- 9 haven't
- 10 won't
- 11 didn't
- 12 weren't
- 13 hasn't
- 14 shouldn't / mustn't

43.5

- 3 He wasn't born in London.
- 4 He doesn't like London.
- 5 He'd like to live in the country.
- 6 He can drive.
- 7 He hasn't got a car.
- 8 He doesn't read newspapers.
- 9 He isn't interested in politics.
- 10 He watches TV most evenings.
- 11 He didn't watch TV last night.
- 12 He went out last night.

UNIT 44

44.1

- 3 Were you late this morning?
- 4 Has Kate got a key?
- 5 Will you be here tomorrow?
- 6 Is Paul going out this evening?
- 7 Do you like your job?
- 8 Does Nicole live near here?
- 9 Did you enjoy the film?
- 10 Did you have a good holiday?

44.2

- 2 Do you use it a lot?
- 3 Did you use it yesterday?
- 4 Do you enjoy driving?
- 5 Are you a good driver?
- 6 Have you ever had an accident?

44.3

- 3 What are the children doing?
- 4 How is cheese made?
- 5 Is your sister coming to the party?
- 6 Why don't you tell the truth?
- 7 Have your guests arrived vet?
- 8 What time does your train leave?
- 9 Why didn't Emily go to work?
- 10 Was your car damaged in the accident?

44.4

- 3 What are you reading?
- 4 What time did she go (to bed)?
- 5 When are they going (on holiday)?
- 6 Where did you see him?
- 7 Why can't you come (to the party)?
- 8 Where has she gone?
- 9 How much (money) do you need?
- 10 Why doesn't she like you?
- 11 How often does it rain?
- 12 When did you do it? / ... the shopping?

UNIT 45

45.1

- 2 What fell off the shelf?
- 3 Who wants to see me?
- 4 Who took your umbrella? / Who took it?
- 5 What made you ill?
- 6 Who is / Who's coming?

45.2

- 3 Who did you phone?
- 4 What happened last night?
- 5 Who knows the answer?
- 6 Who did the washing-up?
- 7 What did Jane do? / What did she do?
- 8 What woke you up?
- 9 Who saw the accident?
- 10 Who did you see?
- 11 Who has got your pen? /
 Who has got it? or
 Who's got ...?
- 12 What does this word mean? / What does it mean?

45.3

- 2 Who phoned you ? What did she want?
- 3 Who did you ask? What did he say?
- 4 Who got married? Who told you?
- 5 Who did you meet? What did she tell you?
- 6 Who won? What did you do (after the
- game)?

 7 Who gave you a/the book?
 What did Catherine give
 you?

UNIT 46

- 2 What are you looking for?
- 3 Who did you go to the cinema with?
- 4 What/Who was the film about?
- 5 Who did you give the money to?
- 6 Who was the book written

- 2 What are they looking at?
- 3 Which restaurant is he going to?
- 4 What are they talking about?
- 5 What is she listening to?
- 6 Which bus are they waiting for?

46.3

- 2 Which hotel did you stay at?
- 3 Which (football) team does he play for?
- 4 Which school did you go to?

46.4

- 2 What is the food like?
- 3 What are the people like?
- 4 What is the weather like?

46.5

- 2 What was the film like?
- 3 What were the lessons like?
- 4 What was the hotel like?

UNIT 47

47.1

- 3 What colour is it?
- 4 What time did you get up?
- 5 What type of music do you like?
- 6 What kind of car do you want (to buy)?

47.2

- 2 Which coat
- 3 Which film/movie
- 4 Which bus

47.3

- 3 Which 8 Who
- 4 What 9 What
- 5 Which 10 Which
- 6 What 11 What
- 7 Which

47.4

- 2 How far
- 3 How old
- 4 How often
- 5 How deep
- 6 How long

47.5

- 2 How heavy is this box?
- 3 How old are you?

- 4 How much did you spend?
- 5 How often do you watch TV?
- 6 How far is it from Paris to Moscow?

UNIT 48

48.1

- 2 How long does it take by car from Milan to Rome?
- 3 How long does it take by train from Paris to Geneva?
- 4 How long does it take by bus from the city centre to the airport?

48.2

Example answers:

- 2 It takes ... hours to fly from ... to New York.
- 3 It takes ... years to study to be a doctor in
- 4 It takes ... to walk from my home to the nearest shop.
- 5 It takes ... to get from my home to the nearest airport.

48.3

- 2 How long did it take you to walk to the station?
- 3 How long did it take him to paint the bathroom?
- 4 How long did it take you to learn to ski?
- 5 How long did it take them to repair the computer?

48.4

- 2 It took us 20 minutes to walk home. / ... to get home.
- 3 It took me six months to learn to drive.
- 4 It took Mark/him three hours to drive to London. / ... to get to London.
- 5 It took Lisa/her a long time to find a job. / ... to get a job.
- 6 It took me ... to ...

UNIT 49

49.1

- 2 I don't know where she is.
- 3 I don't know how old it is.

- 4 I don't know when he'll be here.
- 5 I don't know why he was angry.
- 6 I don't know how long she has lived here.

49.2

- 2 where Susan works
- 3 what Peter said
- 4 why he went home early
- 5 what time the meeting begins
- 6 how the accident happened

49.3

- 2 are you
- 3 they are
- 4 the museum is
- 5 do you want
- 6 elephants eat
- 7 it is

49.4

- 2 Do you know if/whether they are married?
- 3 Do you know if/whether Sue knows Bill?
- 4 Do you know if/whether Gary will be here tomorrow?
- 5 Do you know if/whether he passed his exam?

49 5

- 2 Do you know where Paula is?
- 3 Do you know if/whether she is working today? / ... she's working today?
- 4 Do you know what time she starts work?
- 5 Do you know if/whether the shops are open tomorrow?
- 6 Do you know where Sarah and Tim live?
- 7 Do you know if/whether they went to Jane's party?

49.6

Example answers:

- 2 Do you know what time the bus leaves?
- 3 Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is?
- 4 I don't know what I'm going to do this evening.
- 5 Do you know if there's a restaurant near here?
- 6 Do you know how much it costs to rent a car?

50.1

- 2 She said (that) she was very busy.
- 3 She said (that) she couldn't go to the party.
- 4 He said (that) he had to go out.
- 5 He said (that) he was learning Russian.
- 6 She said (that) she didn't feel very well.
- 7 They said (that) they would be home late. / ... they'd be ...
- 8 She said (that) she had just come back from holiday. / ... she'd just come back ...
- 9 She said (that) she was going to buy a new computer.
- 10 They said (that) they hadn't got a key. / They said (that) they didn't have a key.

50.2

- 2 She said (that) she wasn't hungry.
- 3 he said (that) he needed it.
- 4 she said (that) she didn't want to go.
- 5 She said (that) I could have it.
- 6 He said (that) he would send me a postcard. / ... he'd send ..
- 7 Nicole said (that) he had gone home. / ... he'd gone home.
- 8 He said (that) he wanted to watch TV.
- 9 She said (that) she was going to the cinema.

50.3

3 said 7 said 8 told 4 told 9 tell 5 tell 6 say 10 say

UNIT 51

51.1

- 3 phone
- 4 phone Paul
- 5 to phone Paul
- 6 to phone Paul
- phone Paul 7
- 8 to phone Paul
- 9 phone Paul
- 10 phone Paul

51.2

- 3 get
- 4 going
- 5 watch
- 6 flying
- 7 listening
- 8 eat
- 9 waiting
- 10 wear
- 11 doing ... staying

51.3

- 4 to go 13 having 5 rain 14 to have
- 6 to leave 15 hear
- 7 help 16 go
- 8 studying 17 listening
- 9 to go 18 to make 10 wearing 19 to know ...
- 11 to stay
- tell 12 have 20 use

UNIT 52

52.1

- 3 to see
- 4 to swim
- 5 cleaning
- 6 to ask
- 7 visiting
- 8 going 9 to be
- 10 waiting
- 11 to do
- 12 to speak
- 13 to go
- 14 crying / to cry
- 15 to work ... talking

52.2

- 2 to help
- 3 to see
- 4 reading
- 5 to lose
- 6 to send
- 7 raining
- 8 to go
- 9 watching / to watch
- 10 to wait

52.3

- 2 going to museums
- 3 to go
- 4 writing / to write letters
- 5 to go (there)
- 6 travelling by train
- 7 walking

Example answers:

- I enjoy cooking.
- 2 I don't like driving.

- 3 If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like to have a picnic by the lake.
- 4 When I'm on holiday, I like to do very little.
- 5 I don't mind travelling alone, but I prefer to travel with somebody.
- 6 I wouldn't like to live in a big city.

UNIT 53

53.1

- 2 I want you to listen carefully.
- 3 I don't want you to be
- 4 Do you want me to wait for you?
- 5 I don't want you to phone me tonight.
- 6 I want you to meet Sarah.

- 2 A woman told me to turn left after the bridge.
- 3 I advised him to go to the doctor.
- 4 She asked me to help her.
- 5 I told him to come back in ten minutes.
- 6 Paul let me use his phone.
- 7 I told her not to phone before 8 o'clock.
- 8 Ann's mother taught her to play the piano.

53.3

- 2 to repeat
- 3 wait
- 4 to arrive
- 5 to get
- 6 go
- 7 borrow
- 8 to tell
- 9 to make (or to get)
- 10 think

UNIT 54

54.1

2-4

- I went to the café to meet a friend.
- I went to the chemist to get some medicine.
- I went to the supermarket to buy some food.

- 2 to read the newspaper
- 3 to open this door
- 4 to get some fresh air
- 5 to wake him up
- 6 to see who it was

54.3

Example answers:

- 2 to talk to you now
- 3 to tell her about the party
- 4 to do some shopping
- 5 to buy a car

54.4

- 2 to 7 to 3 to 8 to 4 for 9 for 5 to 10 for
- 6 for 11 to ... for

54.5

- 2 for the film to begin
- 3 for it to arrive
- 4 for you to tell me

UNIT 55

55.1

- 3 to
- 4 to
- 5 (no preposition)
- 6 for
- 7 to
- 8 on ... to
- 9 for
- 10 on
- 11 to
- 12 (no preposition)
- 13 on
- 14 for
- 15 on

55.2

- 2 went fishing
- 3 goes swimming
- 4 going skiing
- 5 go shopping
- 6 went jogging

55.3

- 2 to university
- 3 shopping
- 4 to sleep
- 5 home
- 6 skiing
- 7 riding
- 8 for a walk
- 9 on holiday ... to Portugal

UNIT 56

56.1

- 2 get your jacket
- 3 get a doctor
- 4 get a taxi
- 5 gets the job
- 6 get some milk
- 7 get a ticket
- 8 gets a good salary
- 9 get a lot of rain
- 10 get a new computer

56.2

- 2 getting dark
- 3 getting married
- 4 getting ready
- 5 getting late

56.3

- 2 get wet
- 3 got married
- 4 gets angry
- 5 got lost
- 6 get old
- 7 got better

56.4

- 2 got to Bristol at 11.45.
- 3 I left the party at 11.15 and got home at midnight.
- 4 (Example answer) I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 10 o'clock.

56.5

- 2 got off
- 3 got out of
- 4 got on

UNIT 57

57.1

- 2 do 7 done 3 make 8 make 4 made 9 making
- 5 did 10 do
- 6 do 11 doing

57.2

- 2 They're/They are doing (their) homework.
- 3 He's/He is doing the shopping. *or* He is shopping.
- 4 She's/She is making a jacket.
- 5 They're/They are doing an exam. (or ... taking an exam.)
- 6 He's/He is making the/his bed.

- 7 She's/She is doing the washing-up. or
 She is washing up. /
 She is doing the dishes. /
 She is washing the dishes.
- 8 He's/He is making a (shopping) list.
- 9 They're/They are making a film.
- 10 He's/He is taking a photograph.

57.3

- 2 make 8 make 3 do 9 do 4 done 10 making 5 made 11 made
- 6 doing 12 make ... do
- 7 did

UNIT 58

58.

- 3 He hasn't got / He doesn't have
- 4 Gary had
- 5 Have you got / Do you have
- 6 we didn't have
- 7 She hasn't got / She doesn't have
- 8 Did you have

58.2

- 2 She's/She is having a cup of tea
- 3 He's/He is having a rest.
- 4 They're/They are having a good time.
- 5 They're/They are having dinner.
- 6 He's/He is having a bath.

58 3

- 3 Have a nice/good trip!
- 4 Did you have a nice/good weekend?
- 5 Did you have a nice/good game (of tennis)?
- 6 Have a nice/good time! or Have a nice/good evening! or Have fun!
- 7 Did you have a nice/good holiday?

- 2 have something to eat
- 3 had a glass of water
- 4 have a walk
- 5 had an accident
- 6 have a look

59.1

2	him	5	him
3	them	6	them
4	her	7	her

59.2

2 I ... them 6 she ... them 3 he ... her 7 they ... me 4 they ... us 8 she ... you 5 we ... him

59.3

2 I like him.

3 I don't like it.

4 Do you like it?

5 I don't like her.
6 Do you like them?

59.4

2 him 8 them 3 them 9 me 4 they 10 her 5 us 11 them 6 it 12 he ... it 7 She

59.5

2 Can you give it to him?

3 Can you give them to her?

4 Can you give it to me?
5 Can you give it to them?

6 Can you give them to us?

UNIT 60

60.1

2 her hands

3 our hands

4 his hands 5 their hands

6 your hands

60.2

2 They live with their parents.

3 We live with our parents.

4 Jane lives with her parents.

5 I live with my parents.

6 John lives with his parents.

7 Do you live with your parents?

8 Most children live with their parents.

60.3

2 their 6 their 3 his 7 her 4 his 8 their

5 her

60.4

2 his 8 her 3 Their 9 their 4 our 10 my 5 her 11 Its

6 my 12 His ... his 7 your

60.5

2 my key

3 Her husband

4 your coat

5 their homework

6 his name

7 Our house

UNIT 61

61.1

2 mine 6 yours 3 ours 7 mine 4 hers 8 his

5 theirs

61.2

2 yours

3 my ... Mine

4 Yours ... mine

5 her

6 My ... hers

7 their

8 Ours

61.3

3 of hers

4 friends of ours

5 friend of mine

6 friend of his

7 friends of yours

61.4

2 Whose camera is this? It's hers.

3 Whose gloves are these? They're mine.

4 Whose hat is this? It's his.

5 Whose money is this? It's yours.

6 Whose books are these? They're ours.

UNIT 62

62.1

2 Yes, I know her, but I can't remember her name.

3 Yes, I know them, but I can't remember their names.

4 Yes, I know you, but I can't remember your name.

62.2

2 He invited us to stay with **him** at his house.

3 They invited me to stay with **them at their** house.

4 I invited them to stay with me at my house.

5 She invited us to stay with her at her house.

6 Did you invite him to stay with you at your house?

62.3

2 I gave her my address, and she gave me **hers**.

3 He gave me his address, and I gave him mine.

4 We gave them our address, and they gave us theirs.

5 She gave him **her** address, and he gave **her his**.

6 You gave us your address, and we gave you ours.

7 They gave you their address, and you gave them yours.

62.4

2 them 6 us 3 him 7 her 4 our 8 their 5 yours 9 mine

UNIT 63

63.1
2 myself 6 himself
3 herself 7 yourself
4 themselves 8 yourselves
5 myself

63.2

2 When I saw him, he was by himself.

3 Don't go out by yourself.

4 I went to the cinema by myself.

5 My sister lives by herself.

6 Many people live by themselves.

- 2 They can't see each other.
- 3 They phone each other a lot.
- 4 They don't know each other.
- 5 They're/They are sitting next to each other.
- 6 They gave each other presents / a present.

63.4

- 3 each other 7 each other
- 4 yourselves 8 each other
- 5 us 9 them
- 6 ourselves 10 themselves

UNIT 64

64.1

- 3 Helen is Brian's wife.
- 4 James is Sarah's brother.
- 5 James is Daniel's uncle.
- 6 Sarah is Paul's wife.
- 7 Helen is Daniel's grandmother.
- 8 Sarah is James's sister.
- 9 Paul is Sarah's husband.
- 10 Paul is Daniel's father.
- 11 Daniel is James's nephew.

64.2

- 2 Andy's 5 Diane's
- 3 Dave's 6 Alice's
- 4 Jane's

64.3

- 3 OK
- 4 Simon's phone number
- 5 My brother's job
- 6 OK
- 7 OK
- 8 Paula's favourite colour
- 9 your mother's birthday
- 10 My parents' house
- 11 OK
- 12 OK
- 13 Silvia's party
- 14 OK

UNIT 65

65.1

- 2 a 5 a 8 an 3 a 6 an 9 an
- 4 an 7 a

65.2

- 2 a vegetable
- 3 a game
- 4 a tool
- 5 a mountain
- 6 a planet

- 7 a fruit
- 8 a river
- 9 a flower
- 10 a musical instrument

65.3

- 2 He's a shop assistant.
- 3 She's an architect.
- 4 He's a taxi driver.
- 5 He's an electrician.
- 6 She's a photographer.
- 7 She's a nurse.
- 8 I'm a/an ...

65.4

2-8

Tom never wears **a** hat. I can't ride **a** bicycle.

My brother is **an** artist.

Rebecca works in a bookshop.

Jane wants to learn a foreign language.

Mike lives in **an** old house. This evening I'm going to **a** party.

UNIT 66

66.1

- 2 boats
- 3 women
- 4 cities
- 5 umbrellas
- 6 addresses
- 7 knives
- 8 sandwiches
- 9 families
- 10 feet
- 11 holidays
- 12 potatoes

66.2

- 2 teeth 5 fish
- 3 people 6 leaves
- 4 children

66.

- with a lot of beautiful trees.
- 4 ... with two men.
- 5 OK
- 6 ... three children.
- 7 Most of my friends are students.
- 8 He put on his **pyjamas**
- 9 OK
- 10 Do you know many people ...
- 11 Î like your trousers. Where did you get them?

- 12 ... full of tourists.
- 13 OK
- 14 These scissors aren't ...

66.4

- 2 are 7 Do
- 3 don't 8 are
- 4 watch 9 them 5 were 10 some
- 6 live

UNIT 67

67.1

- 3 a jug
- 4 water
- 5 toothpaste
- 6 a toothbrush
- 7 an egg
- 8 money
- 9 a wallet
- 10 sand
- 11 a bucket
- 12 an envelope

67.2

- 3 ... a hat.
- 4 ... a job?
- 5 OK
- 6 ... **an** apple ...
- 7 ... a party ...
- 8 ... a wonderful thing.
- 9 ... an island.
- 10 ... a key.
- 11 OK
- 12 ... a good idea.
- 13 ... a car?
- 14 ... a cup of coffee?
- 15 OK
- 16 ... an umbrella.

67 3

- 2 a piece of wood
- 3 a glass of water
- 4 a bar of chocolate
- 5 a cup of tea
- 6 a piece of paper
- 7 a bowl of soup
- 8 a loaf of bread9 a jar of honey

UNIT 68

68

- 2 I bought a newspaper (or a paper), some flowers (or a bunch of flowers) and a pen.
- 3 I bought some stamps, some postcards and some bread (or a loaf of bread).

4 I bought some toothpaste, some soap (or a bar of soap) and a comb.

68.2

- 2 Would you like some coffee? (or ... a cup of coffee?)
- 3 Would you like a biscuit?
- 4 Would you like some bread? (or ... a piece of bread? / a slice of bread?)
- 5 Would you like a chocolate?
- 6 Would you like some cake? (or ... a piece of cake?)

68.3

- 2 some ... some
- 3 some
- 4 a ... some
- 5 an ... some
- 6 a ... a ... some
- 7 some
- 8 some
- 9 some ... a

68.4

- 2 eyes
- 3 hair
- 4 information
- 5 chairs
- 6 furniture
- 7 job
- 8 wonderful weather

UNIT 69

69.1

- 3 a
- 4 the
- 5 an
- 6 the ... the
- 7 a ... a
- 8 a ... a
- 9 ... a student ... a journalist ... an apartment near the college ... The apartment is ...
- 10 ... two children, a boy and a girl. The boy is seven years old, and the girl is three ... in a factory ... hasn't got a job ...

69.2

- 2 the airport
- 3 a cup
- 4 a nice picture
- 5 the dictionary
- 6 the floor

69.3

- 2 ... send me a postcard.
- 3 What is the name of ...
- 4 ... a very big country.
- 5 What is **the** largest ...
- 6 ... **the** colour of **the** carpet.
- 7 ... a headache.
- 8 ... an old house near the station.
- 9 ... **the** name of **the** director of **the** film ...

UNIT 70

70.1

- 3 ... the second floor.
- 4 ... the moon?
- 5 ... **the** best hotel in this town?
- 6 OK
- 7 ... the city centre.
- 8 ... the end of May.
- 9 OK
- 10 ... **the** first time I met her.
- 11 OK
- 12 **The** Internet is a good way of getting information.
- 13 OK
- 14 ... on the top shelf on the right.
- 15 ... in the country about ten miles from the nearest town.

70.2

- 2 the same time
- 3 the same age
- 4 the same colour
- 5 the same problem

70.3

- 2 the guitar
- 3 breakfast
- 4 television/TV
- 5 the sea
- 6 the bottom

70.4

- 2 the name
- 3 The sky
- 4 television
- 5 the police
- 6 the capital
- 7 lunch
- 8 the middle

UNIT 71

71.1

- 2 the cinema
- 3 hospital
- 4 the airport
- 5 home
- 6 prison

71.2

- 3 school
- 4 the station
- 5 home
- 6 bed
- 7 the post office

71.3

- 2 the cinema
- 3 go to bed
- 4 go to prison
- 5 go to the dentist
- 6 go to university/college
- 7 go to hospital / are taken to hospital

71.4

- 3 the doctor
- 4 OK
- 5 OK
- 6 OK
- 7 the bank
- 8 OK
- 9 OK
- 10 the city centre
- 11 the station
- 12 OK
- 13 OK
- 14 OK
- 15 the theatre

UNIT 72

72.1

Example answers:

- 2 I don't like dogs.
- 3 I hate museums.
- 4 I love big cities.
- 5 Tennis is all right.
- 6 I love chocolate.
- 7 I don't like computer games.
- 8 I hate parties.

72

Example answers:

- 2 I'm not interested in politics.
- 3 I'm interested in sport.
- 4 I don't know much about
- 5 I don't know anything about astronomy.
- 6 I know a little about economics.

- 2 any
- 8 no 3 any
- 9 any
- 4 no
- 10 no
- 5 any
- 11 None
- 6 no
 - 12 any
- 7 any

77.3

- 2 no money
- 3 any questions
- 4 no friends
- 5 no difference
- 6 any furniture
- 7 no answer
- 8 any heating
- 9 no queue

77.4

Example answers:

- 2 Three.
- 3 Two cups.
- 4 None.
- 5 None.

UNIT 78

78.1

- 2 There's nobody in the office.
- 3 I've got nothing to do.
- 4 There's nothing on TV.
- 5 There was no-one at home.
- 6 We found nothing.

- 2 There wasn't anybody on the bus.
- 3 I haven't got anything to
- 4 I haven't got anyone to help me.
- 5 She didn't hear anything.
- 6 We haven't got anything for dinner.

78.3

- 3a Nothing.
- 4a Nobody./No-one.
- 5a Nobody./No-one.
- 6a Nothing.
- 7a Nothing.
- 8a Nobody./No-one.
- 3b I don't want anything.
- 4b I didn't meet anybody/anyone.
- 5b Nobody/No-one knows the answer.
- 6b I didn't buy anything.
- 7b Nothing happened.

8b Nobody/No-one was late.

78.4

- 3 anything
- 4 Nobody/No-one
- 5 Nothing
- 6 anything
- 7 anybody/anyone
- 8 nothing
- 9 anything
- 10 anything
- 11 nobody/no-one
- 12 anything
- 13 Nothing
- 14 Nobody/No-one ... anybody/anyone

UNIT 79

79.1

- 2 something
- 3 somewhere
- 4 somebody/someone

79.2

- 2a Nowhere.
- 3a Nothing.
- 4a Nobody./No-one.
- 2b I'm not going anywhere.
- 3b I don't want anything.
- 4b I'm not looking for anybody/anyone.

79.3

- 3 anything
- 4 anything
- 5 somebody/someone
- 6 something
- 7 anybody/anyone ... nobody/ no-one
- 8 anything
- 9 Nobody/No-one
- 10 anybody/anyone
- 11 Nothing
- 12 anywhere
- 13 somewhere
- 14 anything
- 15 anybody/anyone

79.4

- 2 anything to eat
- 3 nothing to do
- 4 anywhere to sit
- 5 something to drink
- 6 nowhere to park
- 7 something to read
- 8 somewhere to stay

UNIT 80

80.1

- 2 Every day
- 3 every time
- 4 Every room
- 5 every word

80.2

- 2 every day
- 3 all day
- 4 every day
- 5 all day
- 6 all day
- 7 every day

80.3

- 2 every 6 all
- 3 all 7 every
- 4 all 8 all
- 5 Every 9 every

80.4

- 2 everything
- 3 Everybody/Everyone
- 4 everything
- 5 everywhere
- 6 Everybody/Everyone
- everywhere
- 8 Everything

80.5

- 2 is 6 was
- 3 has 7 makes
- 4 likes 8 Is ... Does
- 5 has

UNIT 81

81.1

- 3 Some 10 Most
- 4 Most of 11 most of 12 Some 5 most
- 13 All or All of 6 any of
- 7 all or all of 14 some of
- 8 None of 15 most of
- 9 any of

81.2

- 2 All of them.
- 3 Some of them.
- 4 None of them.
- 5 Most of them.
- 6 None of it.

- 3 Some people ...
- 4 Some of the questions ... or Some questions ...
- 5 OK
- 6 All insects ...
- OK (or ... all of these books)

Key to Exercises

- 8 Most of **the** students ... or Most students ...
- 9 OK
- 10 ... most of the night

UNIT 82

82.1

- 3 Both 9 Neither 4 Neither 10 either of
- 5 Neither 11 Both
- 6 both 12 neither of
- 7 Either 13 Both
- 8 neither of 14 either of

82.2

- 2 Both windows are open.
- 3 Neither man is wearing a hat. or Neither of them is wearing ...
- 4 Both men have (got) beards. or Both of them have ...
- 5 Both buses go to the airport. *or* ... are going to the airport.
- 6 Neither answer is right.

82.3

- 3 Both of them are students.
- 4 Neither of them has (got) a car.
- 5 Both of them live in London.
- 6 Both of them like cooking.
- 7 Neither of them can play the piano.
- 8 Both of them read newspapers.
- 9 Neither of them is interested in sport.

UNIT 83

83.1

- 2 many 8 many 3 much 9 How many
- 4 many 10 How much 5 many 11 How much
- 6 much 12 How many
- 7 much

83.2

- 2 much time
- 3 many countries
- 4 many people
- 5 much luggage
- 6 many times

83.3

- 2 a lot of interesting things
- 3 a lot of accidents
- 4 a lot of fun
- 5 a lot of traffic

83.4

- 3 a lot of snow
- 4 OK
- 5 a lot of money
- 6 OK
- 7 OK
- 8 a lot

83.5

- 3 She plays tennis a lot.
- 4 He doesn't use his car much. (or ... a lot.)
- 5 He doesn't go out much. (or ... a lot.)
- 6 She travels a lot.

UNIT 84

84.1

- 2 a few 5 a little
- 3 a little 6 a few
- 4 a few

84.2

- 2 a little milk
- 3 A few days
- 4 a little Russian
- 5 a few friends
- 6 a few times
- 7 a few chairs
- 8 a little fresh air

84.3

- 2 very little coffee
- 3 very little rain
- 4 very few hotels
- 5 very little time
- 6 Very few people
- 7 very little work

84.4

- 2 A few 5 few
- 3 a little 6 a little
- 4 little 7 little

84.5

- 2 ... a little luck
- 3 ... a few things
- 4 OK
- 5 ... a few questions
- 6 ... few people
- 7 OK

UNIT 85

85.1

- 2 I like that green jacket.
- 3 Do you like classical music?
- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.
- 5 We went to a Japanese restaurant.

85.2

- 2 black clouds
- 3 long holiday
- 4 hot water
- 5 fresh air
- 6 sharp knife
- 7 dangerous job

85.3

- 2 It looks new.
- 3 I feel ill.
- 4 You look surprised.
- 5 They smell nice.
- 6 It tastes horrible.

85.4

- 2 It doesn't look new.
- 3 You don't sound American.
- 4 I don't feel cold.
- 5 They don't look heavy.
- 6 Maybe, but it doesn't taste good.

UNIT 86

86.1

- 2 badly 5 fast
- 3 quietly 6 dangerously
- 4 angrily

86.2

- 2 work hard
- 3 sleep well
- 4 win easily
- 5 Think carefully
- 6 know her very well 7 explain things very
- clearly/well 8 Come quickly

86.3

- 2 angry 8 quiet
- 3 slowly 9 badly
- 4 slow 10 nice (See 5 careful Unit 85C.)
- 6 hard 11 quickly
- 7 suddenly

- 2 well 5 well
- 3 good 6 good ... good
- 4 well

87.1

- 2 bigger
- 3 slower
- 4 more expensive
- 5 higher
- 6 more dangerous

87.2

- 2 stronger
- 3 happier
- 4 more modern
- 5 more important
- 6 better
- 7 larger
- 8 more serious
- 9 prettier
- 10 more crowded

87.3

- 2 hotter/warmer
- 3 more expensive
- 4 worse
- 5 further
- 6 more difficult or harder

87.4

- 3 taller
- 4 harder
- 5 more comfortable
- 6 better
- 7 nicer
- 8 heavier
- 9 more interested
- 10 warmer
- 11 better
- 12 bigger
- 13 more beautiful
- 14 sharper
- 15 more polite
- 16 worse

UNIT 88

88.1

- 3 Liz is taller than Ben.
- 4 Liz starts work earlier than
- 5 Ben works harder than
- 6 Ben has got more money than Liz.
- 7 Liz is a better driver than Ben.
- 8 Ben is more patient than
- Ben is a better dancer than Liz. / Ben dances better than Liz.
- 10 Liz is more intelligent than Ben.

- 11 Liz speaks French better than Ben. / Liz speaks better French than Ben. / Liz's French is better than Ben's.
- 12 Ben goes to the cinema more than Liz. / ... more often than Liz.

- 2 You're older than her. / ... than she is.
- 3 You work harder than me. / ... than I do.
- 4 You watch TV more than him. / ... than he does.
- 5 You're a better cook than me. / ... than I am. or You cook better than me. / ... than I do.
- 6 You know more people than us. / ... than we do.
- 7 You've got more money than them. / ... than they
- 8 You can run faster than me. / ... than I can.
- 9 You've been here longer than her. / ... than she
- 10 You got up earlier than them. / ... than they did.
- 11 You were more surprised than him. / ... than he was.

88.3

- 2 lack's mother is much younger than his father.
- 3 My camera cost a bit more than yours. / ... than your camera. or My camera was a bit more expensive than ...
- 4 I feel much better today than yesterday. / ... than I did yesterday. / ... than I felt yesterday.
- 5 It's a bit warmer today than yesterday. / ... than it was yesterday.
- 6 Sarah is a much better tennis player than me / ... than I am. or Sarah is much better at tennis than me / ... than I Sarah plays tennis much better than me / ... than I

UNIT 89

- 2 A is longer than B, but not as long as C.
- 3 C is heavier than A, but not as heavy as B.
- 4 A is older than C, but not as old as B.
- 5 B has got more money than C, but not as much as A. or
- ... but less (money) than A. 6 C works harder than A, but not as hard as B.

89.2

- 2 Your room isn't as big as mine. / ... as my room.
- 3 I didn't get up as early as you. / ... as you did.
- 4 They didn't play as well as us. / ... as we did.
- 5 You haven't been here as long as me. / ... as I have.
- 6 He isn't as nervous as her. / ... as she is.

89.3

- 2 as 6 than
- 3 than 7 as
- 8 than 4 than
- 5 as

- 2 Julia lives in the same street as Laura.
- 3 Julia got up at the same time as Andy.
- 4 Andy's car is the same colour as Laura's.

UNIT 90

- 2 C is longer than A. D is the longest.
 - B is the shortest.
- 3 D is younger than C. B is the youngest.
 - C is the oldest.
- 4 D is more expensive than A.
- C is the most expensive. A is the cheapest.
- 5 A is better than C.
 - A is the best.
 - D is the worst.

- 2 the happiest day
- 3 the best film
- 4 the most popular singer
- 5 the worst mistake
- 6 the prettiest village
- 7 the coldest day
- 8 the most boring person

90.3

- 2 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
- 3-6
 - Brazil is the largest country in South America.
 - Alaska is the largest state in the USA.
 - The Nile is the longest river in Africa. / ... in the world.
 - Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

UNIT 91

91.1

- 2 enough chairs
- 3 enough paint
- 4 enough wind

91.2

- 2 The car isn't big enough.
- 3 His legs aren't long enough.
- 4 He isn't strong enough.

91.3

- 3 old enough
- 4 enough time
- 5 big enough
- 6 eat enough
- 7 enough space
- 8 tired enough
- 9 practise enough

91.4

- 2 sharp enough to cut
- 3 warm enough to go
- 4 enough bread to make
- 5 well enough to win
- 6 enough time to read

UNIT 92

92 1

- 2 too heavy
- 3 too low
- 4 too fast
- 5 too big
- 6 too crowded

92.2

- 3 enough 8 enough
- 4 too many 9 too
- 5 too 10 too many 6 enough 11 too much
- 6 enough 7 too much

- 92.3 3 It's too far.
- 4 It's too expensive.
- 5 It isn't/It's not big enough.
- 6 It was too difficult.
- 7 It isn't good enough.
- 8 I'm too busy.
- 9 It was too long.

92.4

- 2 too early to go to bed
- 3 too young to get married
- 4 too dangerous to go out at night
- 5 too late to phone Sue (now)
- 6 too surprised to say anything

UNIT 93

93.1

- 3 I like this picture very much.
- 4 Tom started his new job last week.
- 5 OK
- 6 Jane bought a present for her friend. or Jane bought her friend a present.
- 7 I drink three cups of coffee every day.
- 8 OK
- 9 I borrowed fifty pounds from my brother.

93.2

- 2 I bought a new computer last week.
- 3 Paul finished his work quickly.
- 4 Emily doesn't speak French very well.
- 5 I did a lot of shopping yesterday.
- 6 Do you know London well?
- 7 We enjoyed the party very much.
- 8 I explained the problem carefully.
- 9 We met some friends at the airport.

- 10 Did you buy that jacket in England?
- 11 We do the same thing every day.
- 12 I don't like football very much.

93.3

- 2 I arrived at the hotel early.
- 3 Julia goes to Italy every year.
- 4 We have lived here since 1988.
- 5 Sue was born in London in 1980.
- 6 Paul didn't go to work yesterday.
- 7 Helen went to a wedding last weekend.
- 8 I had my breakfast in bed this morning.
- 9 Barbara is going to university in September.
- 10 I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning.
- 11 My parents have been to the United States many times.
- 12 I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night.
- 13 Are you going to the cinema tomorrow evening?
- 14 I took the children to school this morning.

UNIT 94

94.1

- 2 He always gets up early.
- 3 He's/He is never late for work.
- 4 He sometimes gets angry.
- He rarely goes swimming.He's/He is usually at home in the evenings.

- 2 Susan is always polite.
- 3 I usually finish work at 5 o'clock.
- 4 Sarah has just started a new job.
- 5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.
- 6 The bus isn't usually late.
- 7 I don't often eat fish.
- 8 I will never forget what you said.
- 9 Have you ever lost your passport?

- 10 Do you still work in the same place?
- 11 They always stay in the same hotel.
- 12 Jane doesn't usually work on Saturdays.
- 13 Is Tina already here?
- 14 What do you usually have for breakfast?
- 15 I can never remember his name.

- 2 Yes, and I also speak French.
- 3 Yes, and I'm also hungry.
- 4 Yes, and I've also been to Ireland.
- 5 Yes, and I also bought some books.

94.4

- 1 They both play football.
 They're/They are both students.
 They're both got care.
 - They've both got cars. / They both have cars.
- They're/They are all married.
 They were all born in England.

They all live in New York.

UNIT 95

95.1

- 2 Do you still live in Clare Street?
- 3 Are you still a student?
- 4 Have you still got a motorbike? / Do you still have ...
- 5 Do you still go to the cinema a lot?
- 6 Do you still want to be a teacher?

95.2

- 2 He was looking for a job. He's/He is still looking (for a job). He hasn't found a job yet.
- 3 She was asleep.
 She's/She is still asleep.
 She hasn't woken up yet. /
 She isn't awake yet. or
 She hasn't got up yet. /
 She isn't up yet.

4 They were having dinner. /
They were eating.
They're/They are still
having dinner. / ... still
eating.
They haven't finished
(dinner) yet. / They
haven't finished eating yet.

95.3

- 2 Is Helen here yet? or Has Helen arrived/come yet?
- 3 Have you got your (exam) results yet? / Have you had your ... / Have you received your ...
- 4 Have you decided where to go yet? / Do you know where you're going yet?

95.4

- 3 She's/She has already gone/left.
- 4 I've already got one. / I already have one.
- 5 I've/I have already paid (it).
- 6 he already knows.

UNIT 96

96.1

- 2 He gave it to Gary.
- 3 He gave them to Sarah.
- 4 He gave it to his sister.
- 5 He gave them to Robert.
- 6 He gave it to a neighbour.

96.2

- 2 I gave Joanna a plant.
- 3 I gave Richard a tie.
- 4 I gave Emma some chocolates / a box of chocolates.
- 5 I gave Rachel some flowers / a bunch of flowers.
- 6 I gave Kevin a pen.

96.3

- 2 Can you lend me an umbrella?
- 3 Can you give me your address?
- 4 Can you lend me twenty pounds?
- 5 Can you send me some information?
- 6 Can you show me the letter?
- 7 Can you get me some stamps?

96.4

- 2 lend you some money
- 3 send the letter to me
- 4 buy you a present
- 5 pass me the sugar
- 6 give it to her
- 7 showed the policeman my identity card

UNIT 97

97.1

- 3 I went to the window and (I) looked out.
- 4 I wanted to phone you, but I didn't have your number.
- 5 I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.
- 6 I usually drive to work, but I went by bus this morning.
- 7 Do you want me to come with you, or shall I wait here?

97.2

Example answers:

- 2 because it was raining. / because the weather was bad.
- 3 but it was closed.
- 4 so he didn't eat anything. / so he didn't want anything to eat.
- 5 because there was a lot of traffic. / because the traffic was bad.
- 6 Sue said goodbye, got into her car and drove off/away.

97.3

Example answers:

- 3 I went to the cinema, but the film wasn't very good.
- 4 I went to a café and met some friends of mine.
- 5 There was a film on television, so I watched it.
- 6 I got up in the middle of the night because I couldn't sleep.

UNIT 98

- 2 When I'm tired, I like to watch TV.
- 3 When I phoned her, there was no answer.

Key to Exercises

- 4 When I go on holiday, I always go to the same place.
- 5 When the programme ended, I turned off the TV.
- 6 When I got to the hotel, there were no rooms.

98.2

- 2 when they heard the news
- 3 they went to live in New Zealand
- 4 while they were away
- 5 before they came here
- 6 somebody broke into the
- 7 they didn't believe me

98.3

- 2 I finish
- 3 it's
- 4 I'll be ... she leaves
- 5 stops
- 6 We'll come ... we're
- 7 I come ... I'll bring
- 8 I'm
- 9 I'll give ... I go
- 10 I'll tell ... I'm

98.4

Example answers:

- 2 you finish your work
- 3 I'm going to buy a motorbike
- 4 you get ready
- 5 I won't have much free time
- 6 I come back

UNIT 99

99.1

- 2 If you pass the exam, you'll get a certificate.
- 3 If you fail the exam, you can do it again.
- 4 If you don't want this magazine, I'll throw it
- 5 If you want those pictures, you can have them.
- 6 If you're busy now, we can talk later.
- 7 If you're hungry, we can have lunch now.
- 8 If you need money, I can lend you some.

99.2

- 2 I give
- 3 is
- 4 I'll call

- 5 I'll be ... get
- 6 Will you go ... they invite

Example answers:

- 3 ... you're busy.
- 4 ... you'll feel better in the morning.
- ... you're not watching it.
- 6 ... she doesn't study.
- 7 ... I'll go and see Chris.
- 8 ... the weather is good.
- 9 ... it rains today.

99.4

- 2 When
- 3 If
- 4 If
- 5 if
- 6 When
- 7 if
- 8 when ... if

UNIT 100

100.1

- 3 wanted
- 4 had
- 5 were/was
- 6 didn't enjoy
- 7 could
- 8 tried
- 9 didn't have

100.2

- 3 I'd go / I would go
- 4 she knew
- 5 we had
- 6 you won
- 7 I wouldn't stay
- 8 we lived
- 9 It would be
- 10 the salary was/were
- 11 I wouldn't know
- 12 would you change

100.3

- 2 I'd watch it / I would watch it
- 3 we had some pictures on the wall
- 4 the air would be cleaner
- 5 every day was/were the same
- 6 I'd be bored / I would be bored
- 7 we had a bigger house / we bought a bigger house
- we would/could buy a bigger house

100.4

Example answers:

- 2 I'd go to Antarctica
- 3 I didn't have any friends
- 4 I'd buy a house if I had enough money.
- 5 I'd try and help
- 6 there were no guns

UNIT 101

101.1

- 2 A butcher is a person who sells meat.
- 3 A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
- 4 A patient is a person who is ill in hospital.
- 5 A dentist is a person who takes care of your teeth.
- 6 A fool is a person who does stupid things.
- 7 A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
- 8 A liar is a person who doesn't tell the truth.

101.2

- 2 The woman who opened the door was wearing a vellow dress.
- 3 Most of the students who took the exam passed (it).
- 4 The policeman who stopped our car wasn't very friendly.

101.3

- 6 which 2 who
- 3 which 7 who
- 4 which 8 who 5 who 9 which
- that is also correct in all these sentences.

- 3 ... a machine that/which makes coffee.
- 4 OK (which is also correct)
- 5 ... people who/that never stop talking.
- 6 OK (who is also correct) 7 OK (that is also correct)
- 8 ... the sentences
 - that/which are wrong.
- 9 ... a car that/which cost ₹,40,000.

102.1

- 2 I've lost the pen you gave me.
- 3 I like the jacket Sue is wearing.
- 4 Where are the flowers I gave you?
- 5 I didn't believe the story he told us.
- 6 How much were the oranges you bought?

102.2

- 2 The meal you cooked was excellent.
- 3 The shoes I'm wearing aren't very comfortable.
- 4 The people we invited to dinner didn't come.

102.3

- 2 Who are the people you were talking to?
- 3 Did you find the keys you were looking for?
- 4 Where is the party you're going to?
- 5 What's the name of the film you were talking about?
- 6 What's that music you're listening to?
- 7 Did you get the letter you were waiting for?

102,4

- 2 What's the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?
- 3 How big is the village where you live?
- 4 Where exactly is the factory where you work?

UNIT 103

103.1

3	at	11	at
4	on	12	in
5	in	13	on
6	in	14	on
7	on	15	at
8	on	16	at
9	at	17	at
10	on	18	in

103.2

2	on	11	at
3	at	12	on
4	in	13	in
5	in	14	n#

6	in	15 in
7	on	16 on
8	on	17 in
9	in	18 at
10	at	19 at

103.3

- 2 on Friday
- 3 on Monday
- 4 at 4 o'clock on Thursday / on Thursday at 4 o'clock
- 5 on Saturday evening
- 6 at 2.30 on Tuesday (afternoon) / on Tuesday (afternoon) at 2.30

103.4

- 2 I'll call you in three days.
- 3 My exam is in two weeks.
- 4 Tom will be here in half an hour. / ... in 30 minutes.

103.5

- 3 in
- 4 (already complete)
- 5 (already complete)
- 6 in
- 7 at
- 8 (already complete)
- 9 (already complete)
- 10 or
- 11 in
- 12 at

UNIT 104

104.1

- 2 Alex lived in Canada until 1999.
- 3 Alex has lived in England since 1999.
- 4 Karen lived in France until 2003.
- 5 Karen has lived in Switzerland since 2003.
- 6 Clare worked in a hotel from 1998 to 2001.
- 7 Clare has worked in a restaurant since 2001.
- 8 Adam was a teacher from 1992 to 1998.
- 9 Adam has been a journalist since 1998.
- 11 Alex has lived in England for years.
- 12 Karen has lived in Switzerland for years.
- 13 Clare worked in a hotel for three years.
- 14 Clare has worked in a restaurant for years.

- 15 Adam was a teacher for six years.
- 16 Adam has been a journalist for years.

104.2

2	until	9	since
3	for	10	until
4	since	11	for
5	Until	12	until
6	for	13	Since
7	for	14	for
8	until		

UNIT 105

105.1

- 2 after lunch
- 3 before the end
- 4 during the course
- 5 before they went to Australia
- 6 during the night
- 7 while you are waiting
- 8 after the concert

105.2

- 3 while
- 4 for
- 5 while
- 6 during
- 7 while 8 for
- 8 IOI
- 9 during
- 10 while

105.3

- 2 eating
- 3 answering
- 4 having/taking
- 5 finishing/doing
- 6 going/travelling

105.4

- 2 John worked in a bookshop for two years after leaving school.
- 3 Before going to sleep, I read for a few minutes.
- 4 After walking for three hours, we were very tired.
- 5 Let's have a cup of coffee before going out.

UNIT 106

- 2 In the box.
- 3 On the box.
- 4 On the wall.
- 5 At the bus stop.
- 6 In the field.
- 7 On the balcony.

- 2 by
- 3 with
- 4 about
- 5 on
- 6 by
- 7 at
- 8 on
- 9 with
- 10 about grammar by Vera P. Bull

111.3

- 1 with 9 at 2 without 10 by
- 3 by 11 about
- 4 about 12 by
- 5 at 13 on
- 14 with 6 by
- 7 on 15 by
- 8 with 16 by

UNIT 112

112.1

- 2 in
- 3 to
- 4 at
- 5 with
- 6 of

112.2

- 2 at
- 3 to
- 4 about
- 5 of
- 6 of
- 7 from/to (You can also say different than ...)
- 8 in
- 9 for
- 10 about
- 11 of
- 12 for/about getting angry with you

112.3

- 2 interested in going
- 3 good at getting
- 4 fed up with waiting
- 5 sorry for/about waking
- 6 Thank you for waiting.

112.4

- 2 Sue walked past me without speaking.
- 3 Don't do anything without asking me first.
- 4 I went out without locking the door.

112.5

Example answers:

- 2 I'm afraid of the dark.
- 3 I'm not very good at drawing.
- I'm not interested in cars.
- 5 I'm fed up with living here.

UNIT 113

113.1

- 2 to
- 5 at 3 for 6 for
- 4 to

113.2

- 2 to
- 3 to
- 4 for
- 5 to
- 6 of/about
- 7 for
- 8 on
- 9 to
- 10 for
- 11 to
- 12 (already complete)
- 13 to
- 14 on
- 15 of/about

113.3

- 4 after 1 at
- 2 after 5 at
- 3 for 6 for
- 113.4

Example answers:

- 3 It depends on the programme.
- It depends (on) what it is.
- 5 It depends on the weather.
- 6 It depends (on) how much you want.

UNIT 114

114.1

- 2 went in
- 3 looked up
- 4 rode off/away
- 5 turned round/around
- 6 got off
- 7 sat down
- 8 got out

114.2

- 2 away
- 3 round/around
- 4 going out ... be back
- 5 down
- 6 over

- 7 back
- 8 in
- 9 up
- 10 going away ... coming back

114.3

- 2 Hold on
- 3 slowed down
- 4 takes off
- 5 getting on
- 6 speak up
- 7 broken down
- 8 fall over / fall down
- 9 carry on
- 10 gave up
- 11 went off

UNIT 115

115.1

- 2 She took off her hat. or She took her hat off.
- 3 He put down his bag. or He put his bag down.
- 4 She picked up the magazine. or She picked the magazine up.
- 5 He put on his sunglasses. or He put his sunglasses OIL
- 6 She turned off the tap. or She turned the tap off.

115.2

- 2 He put his jacket on. He put it on.
- 3 She took off her glasses. She took them off.
- 4 I picked the phone up. I picked it up.
- 5 They gave the key back. They gave it back.
- 6 We turned off the lights. We turned them off.

115.3

- 2 take it back
- 3 picked them up
- 4 switched it off
- 5 bring them back

- 3 knocked over
- 4 look it up
- 5 throw them away
- 6 tried on
- 7 showed me round
- 8 gave it up or gave up (without it)
- 9 fill it in
- 10 put your cigarette out

Key to Additional exercises

- 1
- 3 Kate is a doctor.
- 4 The children are asleep.
- 5 Gary isn't hungry.
- 6 The books aren't on the table.
- 7 The hotel is near the station.
- 8 The bus isn't full.

2

- 3 she's / she is
- 4 Where are
- 5 Is he
- 6 It's / It is
- 7 I'm/I am or No, I'm not. I'm a student.
- 8 What colour is
- 9 Is it
- 10 Are you
- 11 How much are they?

3

- 3 He's/He is having a shower.
- 4 Are the children playing?
- 5 Is it raining?
- 6 They're/They are coming now.
- 7 Why are you standing here? I'm/I am waiting for somebody.

4

- 4 Sam doesn't want
- 5 Do you want
- 6 Does Helen live
- 7 Sarah knows
- 8 I don't travel
- 9 do you usually get up
- 10 They don't go out
- 11 Tom always finishes
- 12 does Julia do ... She works

5

- 3 She's/She is a student.
- 4 She hasn't got a car.
- 5 She goes out a lot.
- 6 She's got/She has got a lot of friends.
- 7 She doesn't like London.
- 8 She likes dancing.
- 9 She isn't/She's not interested in sport.

6

- 1 Are you married? Where do you live? Have you got / Do you have any children? How old is she?
- How old is sne?

 2 How old are you?

 What do you do? / Where do you work? / What's your job?

 Do you like/enjoy your job?

 Have you got / Do you have a car?

 Do you (usually) go to work by car?
- 3 What's his name? / What's he called?
 What does he do? /
 What's his job?
 Does he live/work in London?

7

- 4 Sonia is 32 years old.
- 5 I've got / I have two sisters.
- 6 We often watch TV in the evening.
- 7 Jane never wears a hat.
- 8 A bicycle has got two wheels. / ... has two wheels.
- 9 These flowers are beautiful.
- 10 Mary speaks German very well.

8

- 3 are you cooking
- 4 plays
- 5 I'm going
- 6 It's raining
- 7 I don't watch
- 8 we're looking
- 9 do you pronounce

9

- 2 we go
- 3 is shining
- 4 are you going
- 5 do you go
- 6 She writes
- 7 I never read
- 8 They're watching
- 9 She's talking
- 10 do you usually have
- 11 He's visiting
- 12 I don't drink

10

- 2 went
- 3 found
- 4 was
- 5 had
- 6 told
- 7 gave
- 8 were
- 9 thought
- 10 invited/asked

11

- 3 He was good at sport.
- 4 He played football.
- 5 He didn't work hard at school.
- 6 He had a lot of friends.
- 7 He didn't have a bicycle.
- 8 He wasn't a quiet child.

12

- 3 How long were you there? / How long did you stay there?
- 4 Did you like/enjoy Amsterdam?
- 5 Where did you stay?
- 6 Was the weather good?
- 7 When did you get/come back?

13

- 3 I forgot
- 4 did you get
- 5 I didn't speak
- 6 Did you have
- 7 he didn't go
- 8 she arrived
- 9 did Robert live
- 10 The meal didn't cost

14

- 2 were working
- 3 opened
- 4 rang ... was cooking
- 5 heard ... looked
- 6 was looking ... happened
- 7 wasn't reading ... was watching
- 8 didn't read
- 9 finished ... paid ... left
- 10 saw ... was walking ... was waiting

15

- 3 is playing
- 4 gave
- 5 doesn't like
- 6 did your parents go
- 7 saw ... was driving
- 8 Do you watch
- 9 were you doing
- 10 goes
- 11 'm/am trying
- 12 didn't sleep

16

- 3 it's/it has just finished/ended.
- 4 I've/I have found them. or I've got them.
- 5 I haven't read it.
- 6 Have you seen her?
- 7 I've/I have had enough.
- 8 Have you (ever) been to Sweden?
- 9 We've/We have (just) been to the cinema.
- 10 They've/They have gone to a party.
- 11 He's/He has (just) woken up.
- 12 How long have you lived here? or ... have you been living here?
- 13 we've/we have known each other for a long time.
- 14 It's/It has been raining all day. or It has rained all day. or It has been horrible/bad all day.

17

- 3 's/has been
- 4 for
- 5 since
- 6 has he lived / has he been / has he been living
- 7 for
- 8 've been/have been

18

Example answers:

- 3 I've just started this exercise.
- 4 I've met Julia a few times.
- 5 I haven't had dinner yet.
- 6 I've never been to Australia.
- 7 I've lived here since I was born.
- 8 I've lived here for three years.

19

- 3 bought/got
- 4 went
- 5 've/have read or read or
- 've/have finished with 6 haven't started (it) or
- haven't begun (it)
- 7 was
- 8 didn't see
- 9 left
- 10 's/has been
- 11 was
- 12 've/have never made

20

- 3 He's/He has already gone.
- 4 she left at 4 o'clock.
- 5 How many times have you been there?
- 6 I haven't decided yet.
- 7 It was on the table last night.
- 8 I've eaten there a few times.
- 9 What time did they arrive?

21

- 1 When was the last time? or When did you go the last time?
- 2 How long have you had it?
 - I bought/got it yesterday.
- 3 How long have you lived there / have you been there / have you been living here?
 Before that we lived in Mill Road.
 How long did you live in
- 4 How long have you worked there / have you been working there? What did you do before that?
 - I was a taxi driver. or I worked as a taxi driver.

22

Example answers:

Mill Road?

- 2 I didn't go out last night.
- 3 I was at work yesterday afternoon.
- 4 I went to a party a few days ago.
- 5 It was my birthday last
- 6 I went to America last year.

23

- 2 B 9 C 3 D 10 D 4 A 11 A
- 5 A 12 C
- 6 D 13 B 7 C 14 C
- 8 B 15 A

24

- 1 was damaged ... be knocked down
- 2 was built ... is used ... is being painted
- 3 is called ... be called ... was changed
- 4 have been made ... are produced

25

- 2 is visited
- 3 were damaged
- 4 be built
- 5 is being cleaned
- 6 be forgotten
- 7 has already been done
- 8 be kept
- 9 Have you ever been bitten
- 10 was stolen

26

- 2 My car was stolen last week.
- 3 You're/You are wanted on the phone.
- 4 All the bananas have been
- 5 The machine will be repaired.
- 6 We're/We are being watched.
- 7 The housework has to be done.

27

- 3 pushed
- 4 was pushed
- 5 has taken
- 6 is being repaired
- 7 invented
- 8 was the camera invented
- 9 have been washed or were washed
- 10 I've/I have washed them.
- 11 did they send or have they sent
- 12 be sent

Key to Additional exercises

dditional exercises		
28 2 B 8 B 3 A 9 B 4 C 10 A 5 B 11 B 6 C 12 C 7 C 29 1 I stayed did you do I watched Are you going I'm going are you going to see I don't know. I haven't decided 2 have you been We arrived are you staying / are you going to stay do you like we're having 3 I've just remembered — Karen phoned She always phones Did she leave she wants I'll phone Do you know I'll get 4 I'm going Do you want are you going Have you ever eaten I've been I went 5 I've lost Have you seen You were wearing I came I'm not wearing Have you looked / Did you look	2 we're staying 3 we enjoyed 4 We watched 5 slept 6 I don't sleep 7 we're not doing / we're not going to do 8 we're going 9 to see 10 We haven't decided 11 wants 12 to go 13 I'll send 14 you're having 15 are working / have been working 16 he had 17 he needs 18 We've been 19 We got 20 seeing 21 I liked 22 we went 23 we left 24 had 25 he wasn't injured 26 was damaged 27 We've changed / We changed 28 we're leaving 29 We're staying / We're going to stay / We'll stay 30 flying 31 That will be / That's going to be 32 finished 33 I'll let 34 we get 35 are looking 36 We're going 37 we'll send	2 a car 3 the fridge 4 a teacher 5 school 6 the cinema 7 a taxi 8 the piano 9 computers 10 the same 34 4 a horse 5 The sky 6 a tourist 7 for lunch (-) 8 the first President of the United States 9 a watch 10 remember names (-) 11 the next train 12 sends emails (-) 13 the garden 14 the Majestic Hotel 15 ill last week (-) to work (-) 16 the highest mountain in the world 17 to the radio having breakfast (-) 18 like sport (-) is basketball (-) 19 a doctor an art teacher 20 the second floor the top of the stairs on the right 21 After dinner (-) watched television (-) 22 a wonderful holiday in the south of France (-) 35
I'll go 30 1 we met 2 we sat / we were sitting 3 We didn't know 4 we became 5 we liked 6 we spent 7 We left 8 we meet 9 has been 10 she's working 11 She's coming 12 she comes	32 2 A 11 B 3 B 12 A 4 C 13 C 5 B 14 B 6 C 15 C 7 B 16 A 8 A 17 C 9 C 18 B 10 A	2 in 12 at 3 on 13 at 4 at 14 in 5 on 15 at 6 in 16 on 7 since 17 by 8 on 18 for on 9 by 19 to in 10 in 20 at in 11 for

12 she comes

have 14 It will be

13 we'll have / we're going to

Key to Study guide

Present

1.1	В
1.2	A
1.3	C

Past

2.1	В
2.2	E

2.9

C Present perfect

LICSC	111	he	110
3.1	E	,E	

Passive

4.1	D
200	

Verb forms

5.1 D B 5.2

Future

6.1	A
6.2	A

6.6 C

Modals, imperative etc.

MOU	413, 1111
7.1	C, D
-	

There and it

8.1	В
22	E

Auxiliary verbs

Questions

10.1	D
10.2	D

10.12 A, C

Reported speech

-ing and to ... B

- 12.1 12.2 D
- 12.3 B
- 12.4 C
- 12.5 B, C
- 12.6

12.7 A 12.8 D

Go, get, do, make and have

- 13.1 A, D
- 13.2 C
- C, D 13.3
- 13.4 A.D
- 13.5 B 13.6 D

Pronouns and possessives

- 14.1 A
- 14.2 C14.3 D
- 14.4 B
- 14.5 B, C 14.6 A
- 14.7
- 14.8 A
- 14.9 D 14.10 C

A and the

- 15.1 C
- 15.2 B 15.3 A, C
- 15.4 B
- 15.5 B
- 15.6
- 15.7 D 15.8 C
- 15.9
- 15.10 B
- 15.11 E 15.12 D
- 15.13 B
- 15.14 A

Determiners and pronouns

- 16.1 C
- C 16.2
- 16.3 В
- 16.4 B 16.5 C
- A, C 16.6
- 16.7 D
- 16.8 B, D 16.9 A
- 16.10 B
- 16.11 E
- 16.12 B, D 16.13 A
- 16.14 A, B
- 16.15 D 16.16 A, C
- 16.17 D 16.18 B
- 16.19 A

Key to Study Guide

Adjectives and adverbs

1001	Sect of Sector 5
17.1	A
17.2	C
17.3	C
17.4	D
17.5	В
17.6	В
17.7	A, C

17.8 E 17.9 A 17.10 B

17.11 D 17.12 A

17.13 D 17.14 C

Word order

18.1	В
18.2	C
18.3	В

18.4	Α
18.5	A D

Conjunctions and clauses

19.1	C
19.2	A
19.3	D
19.4	E
19.5	B, C
19.6	A, B
19.7	B, D
19.8	A

Prepositions

1 1 - 1	31110113
20.1	D
20.2	E
20.3	C, D
20.4	В
20.5	A, D
20.6	Α

20.10	D
20.11	D
20.12	A
20.13	C
20.14	D
20.15	Α
200	

20.18	В
20.19	D
20.20	D

Phrasal verbs

1 111 03	al vert
21.1	C
21.2	A, B
21.3	

Index

any and no 77

any (of) 81

The numbers are unit numbers anybody/anyone/anything better 87D (not page numbers). 76D, 78-79 between 109A anywhere 79 bit (a bit older/bigger etc.) 88D apostrophe (I'm, it's etc.) born 21C a/an 65 a and some 67-68 both 82 Appendix 4 apostrophe's (my brother's car) 64 word order 94 a/an and the 69 about 111E are see am/is/are but 97 above 109E around 110, 114-115, by 111C active and passive Appendix 1 Appendix 7 by after the passive (I was bitten by across 110 arrive 108C a dog.) 21D articles (a/an/the) 65-73 adjectives 85 by myself / by yourself etc. 63C adjectives and adverbs a/an 65, 67-68 by (= beside) 109C a/an and the 69 (quick/quickly) 86 the 70-73 can/can't 30 comparatives (older / more expensive) 87-89 as (not as ... as) 89 comparative (older / more superlatives (the oldest / the most expensive etc.) 87-89 expensive) 90 ask somebody to ... 53B conditional (if ...) get + adjective (get tired etc.) ask somebody for ... 113A if I do ... 99 if I did ... 100 possessive adjectives (my/your/her at 8 o'clock / at night etc. 103 conjunctions 97-100 at the bus stop / at work etc. and/but/or/so/because 97 etc.) 60, 62 106-107 something/anybody etc. + adjective when/before/while/after/until 98 at and to 108 if 99-100 adjectives + preposition (afraid of at the age of ... 111B continue (continue to ... or auxiliary verbs 23, 40-42 etc.) 112A continue -ing) 52C adverbs 86 **contractions** (short forms -I'm, word order (always/usually/often run away / throw away etc. it's, you've etc.) Appendix 4 etc.) 94 (phrasal verbs) 114-115, could/couldn't 30C-D advise (advise somebody to ...) 53B Appendix 7 countable and uncountable afraid (of) 112A nouns 67-68 after 98, 105 back ago 19B come back / give back etc. (phrasal depend (on) 113C all verbs) 114-115, Appendix 7 didn't in negatives 12, 23D, 40C, all and every etc. 80 be (infinitive of am/is/are) all (of) 81 am/is/are 1-2 43B, 51A word order 94 am/is/are + -ing (present did in questions 12, 23D, 40C, along 110 continuous) 3-4, 23A, 25, 51C 44B, 51A already 95C was/were 10 different (from) 112A already + present perfect 16B was/were + -ing (past continuous) direct speech and reported word order 94 13, 23A, 51C speech 50 also (word order) 94 have/has been (present perfect) do and make 57 always 15 - 18don't/doesn't in negatives 6, 23D, always + present simple 5C passive 21-22, Appendix 1 40C, 43B, 51A word order 94 will be 27 do/does in questions 7, 23D, because 97 am/is/are 1-2 40C, 44B, 51A am/is/are -ing (present been don't go / don't fall etc. continuous) 3-4, 23A, 25, 51C have/has been (present perfect) (imperative) 35B there is / there are 37 down 110 an see a been and gone 17C sit down / put down etc. (phrasal and 97 there has/have been 38B verbs) 114-115, Appendix 6-7 before 98, 105 angry (with/about) 112A during 105 another 65B begin (begin to ... or begin -ing) 52C any any and some 76 behind 109A not + any 77 belong (to) 113A

below 109E

beside 109A best 90B each other 63D

either verbs) 115, Appendix 6-7 etc.) 35 either and too 42A go 55 either (of) 82 go -ing (go swimming etc.) 55D in April / in summer etc. 103 embedded questions (Do you go home / go to work / go to the in a room / in hospital etc. know what ... ? etc.) 49 cinema 71 106 - 107end (at the end of) 103B, 106B go in / go back etc. (phrasal verbs) in five minutes / in three years etc. enjoy 114 enjoy -ing 52B going to (I'm going to do in and to 108 enjoy myself/yourself etc. 63A put something in 110 something) 26 enough 91 gone and been 17C go in / fill in etc. (phrasal verbs) enough and too 92D good 114-115, Appendix 7 good and well 86D ever infinitive (do/see/play etc.) Have you ever ... ? 17 good at 112A infinitive (do/see etc.) and to + superlative + ever 90E got infinitive (to do / to see etc.) word order 94 past of get 11C, 56 51,53 every 80 can/will/should etc. + infinitive have/has got 9,58A everybody/everyone/ 51A everything/everywhere 80C had verbs + to + infinitive (I want to past of have 11C expect 52A, 53B go etc.) 51B, 52-53 had to 33B infinitive and -ing (do/doing etc.) He said he had (done something) 51 - 52How far is it? 39A, 47D 50, Appendix 1.1 I went to the shop to buy ... far → further 87B happen (to) 113A (infinitive for purpose) 54 fast 86C hard 86C infinitive and for ... 54B fed up (with) 112A has see have adjective + infinitive (it's easy to few / a few 84 hate 52C-D ...) 39B finish (finish -ing) 52B have 9,58 something to eat / nowhere to go have got / has got 9,58A etc. 79D for ten minutes / for three years etc. have done / have been etc. (present -ing (doing/playing/going etc.) 19, 104D perfect) 15-18, 23C am/is/are + -ing (present for and to ... 54B have to 33 continuous) 3-4, 23A, 25, 51C go for a walk etc. 55C have a nice time / have fun etc. was/were + -ing (past continuous) for and during 105C 35A 13, 23A, 51C there has/have been 38B from 104A, 110 -ing and infinitive (do/doing etc.) front (in front of) 109A-B have breakfast / have a shower etc. 51 - 52full (of) 112A 58B verbs + -ing (enjoy -ing etc.) further 87B her 59-60, 62 52B-C future 25-28 hers 61-62 go -ing (go swimming etc.) 55D I'm working tomorrow. (present herself 63 prepositions + -ing 105D, 112B continuous) 25 him 59,62 interested (in) 112A himself 63 The concert starts at 7.30. (present into 110 his 60-62 simple) 25C irregular verbs 11C, 24B, holiday (on holiday) 55B, 111A (I'm) going to (do something) 26 Appendix 2-3 will 27-28 home 55A, 71A, 108B is see am/is/are it 39,59B shall 27D, 28C get home 56C, 108C future after when/before/while etc. it is and there is 37B, 39A how 47 98B How long have you ... ? (present it's and its 60C future after if 99B its 60 perfect) 18 how big? / how old? / how far? etc. geographical names with and without the 73 How long does it take? 48 just + present perfect 16A gerund see -ing how much? / how many? 83A word order 94 get 56 get to (a place) 56C, 108C kind (kind to somebody / kind of I/you/he/she etc. (personal get on / get up etc. (phrasal verbs) pronouns) 59, 62 somebody) 112A 114, Appendix 6 if 99-100 know (Do you know where ... ?) if we go / if you see etc. 99 49 give give something to somebody / give if and when 99C somebody something 96 if I had / if we went 100

Do you know if ... ? 49C

give up / give back etc. (phrasal

imperative (do this / don't do that

learn (learn to) 52A	my/your/his etc. (possessive	ourselves 63
left (on the left) 109A	adjectives) 60, 62	out
lend (lend something to somebody)	myself/yourself etc. (reflexive	out of 110
96	pronouns) 63	go out / put out etc. (phrasal
less 88C		verbs) 114-115, Appendix 6-7
let 53D	need	over 110
let's (let's go / let's dance etc.) 35C,	don't need to 31D	climb over / knock over (phrasal
53D	need to 52A	verbs) 114-115, Appendix 6-7
like (What is it like?) 46B	negatives 43	,
like (verb)	negative questions 44C	pair (a pair of) 66B
would like 34, 52D, 53A	no and none 77	passive 21-22, 23B, Appendix 1
do you like? and would you like?	not + any 77–78	present simple (is done) and past
34C	neither	simple (was done) 21
5500 MAIL 1800 M	Neither am I / Neither do I etc.	
like to or like -ing 52C		present continuous (is being done)
listen (to) 113A	42B	and present perfect (has been
little / a little 84	neither (of) 82	done) 22
look	never	will/can/must (etc.) be done
look + adjective (look tired etc.)	never + present simple 5C	Appendix 1.2
85C	never + present perfect 17B	past (Go past the cinema) 110
look at/for/after 113B	word order 94	past continuous (was/were +
lot (a lot of) 83	next to 109A	-ing) 13–14, 23A, 51C
love 52C-D	nice (nice to somebody / nice of	past continuous (I was doing) and
	somebody) 112A	past simple (I did) 14
make 57	no (no money / no friends etc.)	past continuous passive,
make somebody do something 53D	77A-B, 81B	Appendix 1.1
make and do 57	nobody/no-one/nothing	past participle (cleaned/done/seen
many	78–79	etc.) 24A
many and much 83	no-one and none 77C	present perfect (I have cleaned)
not as many (as) 89B	none 77B-C, 81B-C	15, 23C
too many 92C	nor (Nor am I / Nor do I etc.)	passive (the room was cleaned)
married	42B	21-22, 23B, Appendix 1
married to 112A	nouns (countable and	regular (cleaned) and irregular
get married 56B	uncountable) 67–68	(seen) 24B, Appendix 2–3
may 29D	nowhere 79	past perfect
me/you/him etc. (personal	nowhere 75	He said he had (done something)
	of	50
pronouns) 59, 62 middle (in the middle of) 107A,		
	the roof of the building etc. 64C	active and passive Appendix 1.1
109A	the of 73E	past simple (did/cleaned/saw etc.)
might 29	off 110	11-12
mind (I don't mind -ing) 52B	get off / turn off etc. (phrasal	negative (didn't) 12, 43B
mine/yours/hers etc. (possessive	verbs) 114-115, Appendix 6	questions (did?) 12, 44B
pronouns) 61–62	offer (to do something) 52A	was/were 10
modal verbs (will/can/might etc.)	often	regular (cleaned) and irregular
27–34, 51A	often + present simple 5C	verbs (saw) 11B-C, Appendix
more 87C, 88	word order 94	2–3
most	on	past simple + ago 19B
most (of) 81	on Monday / on 25 April etc. 103	past simple (I did) and present
the most expensive / the most	on the table / on the wall 106-107	perfect (I have done) 20
difficult etc. 90	on the left/right 109A	past simple (I did) and past
much	on holiday / on television etc.	continuous (I was doing) 14
much and many 83	111A	past simple passive (the room was
much bigger / much more expensive	go on (holiday/ a trip etc.) 55B	cleaned) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1
88D	get on /put on etc. (phrasal verbs)	if + past simple (if I had / if we
not as much (as) 89B	114-115, Appendix 6-7	went) 100
too much 92C	one/ones 75	people 66C-D
must 31	opposite 109B	personal pronouns (I/me/you
mustn't 31C	or 97A-B	etc.) 59, 62
must and should 32E	ought to 32F	persuade (persuade somebody to)
must and have to 33D	our 60, 62	53B
	ours 61–62	

phrasal verbs (get up / put on present perfect passive 22B, relative pronouns (who/which/ etc.) 114-115, Appendix 6-7 Appendix 1.1 that) 101-102 plural ($cup \rightarrow cups / man \rightarrow men$ regular and irregular verbs 15B, reply questions (Have you? / Are 24, Appendix 2-3 you?) 41A etc.) 66 police (plural) 66D present simple (I work / she reported speech works etc.) 5-7, 23D possessive adjectives He said that ... / He told me that (my/your/his etc.) 60,62 negative (don't/doesn't) 6, 43B ... 50 possessive pronouns questions (do/does ... ?) 7, 44B He told me to ... 53B-C (mine/yours/his etc.) 61-62 present simple + always/usually/ right (on the right) 109A prefer 52C-D never etc. 5C round 110 prepositions 103-113 present simple (I do) and present turn round / show round (phrasal at/on/in (time) 103 continuous (I am doing) 8 verbs) 114-115, Appendix 7 for/since 19, 104 present simple passive (the room is until 104A-B cleaned) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1 's (apostrophe 's) 64, Appendix before/after/during/while 105 present simple for the future 4.5 in/at/on (places) 106-107 (The concert starts at 7.30.) 25C same 70B, 89E to/in/at (places) 108 present simple after when/while say/said on 103, 106-107, 109A, 111A etc. 98B He said that ... (reported speech) at 103, 106-108, 111B present simple after if 99B under/behind/opposite etc. say and tell 50B promise (promise to ...) 52A (position) 109 pronouns shall 27D, 28C up/over/through etc. (movement) personal pronouns (I/me/you short forms (I'm / it's / you've etc.) Appendix 4 110 etc.) 59,62 by 109C, 111C possessive pronouns (mine/yours should 32 with/without 111D, 112B etc.) 61-62 simple past see past simple about 111E reflexive pronouns (myself/yourself simple present see present prepositions + -ing (in -ing / etc.) 63 simple without -ing etc.) 105D, 112B one/ones 75 since 19A, 104C adjective + prepositions (afraid of relative pronouns (who/which/ singular and plural (flower → that) 101-102 etc.) 112A flowers) 66 verb + preposition (listen to / wait for etc.) 113 put something in ... 110 so am I / so do I etc. 42B prepositions at the end (Who is I was tired, so I went to bed. 97 put on / put out etc. (phrasal she talking to?) 46 verbs) 115, Appendix 7 some some and a/an 67-68 prepositions in relative clauses (the man she is talking to) 102B questions 44-47 some and any 76 present continuous (am/is/are + am/is/are ... ? 2 some (of) 81 -ing) 3-4, 23A, 51C do/does ... ? (present simple) 7, somebody/someone/ negative (I'm not -ing) 3 something/somewhere 76,79 questions (are you -ing?) 4 did ... ? (past simple) 12, 44B sometimes present continuous (I am doing) Why don't ... ? / Why isn't ... ? and present simple (I do) 8 sometimes + present simple 5C etc. 44C present continuous passive 22A, Who saw you? / Who did you see? word order 94 Appendix 1.1 sorry (sorry about and sorry for) 112A present continuous for the future preposition at the end (Who is speak (to) 113A (What are you doing tomorrow?) she talking to?) 46 What / Which / How ... ? 47 spelling Appendix 5 How long does it take? 48 present perfect (I have done) start (start to ... and start -ing) 15-20, 23C Do you know where ... ? 52C present perfect + just 16A (embedded questions) 49 still 95 present perfect + already 16B reply questions (Have you? / Are word order 94 stop (stop -ing) 52B present perfect + yet 16C, 95B you? etc.) 41A Have you ever ... ? 17 question tags (... do you? / ... suggest (suggest -ing) 52B gone and been 17C isn't it? etc.) 41B superlative (the biggest / the most How long have you ... ? 18 expensive etc.) 90 present perfect + for/since 18-19 reflexive pronouns (myself/ present perfect continuous (I have yourself etc.) 63 been -ing) 18B regular and irregular verbs 11,

24, Appendix 2-3

relative clauses 101-102

present perfect (I have done) and

past simple (I did) 20

tags (question tags) 41D	10	were see was
take (How long does it take?) 48	time 104A	what
talk (to) 113A	places 108, 110	What ? and Who ? 45C
tell/told	go to 55A, 108A	What like? 46B
He told me that 50	get to 56C, 108C	What ? 47
tell and say 50B	to + infinitive (to go / to be etc.)	What ? and Which ? 47C
Can you tell me where? 49A	see infinitive	when 98
He told me to 53B-C	too 92	when and if 99C
tenses	too and either 42A	whether 49C
active and passive Appendix 1.1	turn (turn round / turn on etc.)	which
present continuous (I am doing)	(phrasal verbs) 114-115,	Which ? 47
3-4, 23A, 25, 51C	Appendix 7	Which ? and What ? 47C
present simple (I do) 5-7, 23D,		Which one/ones? 75B
25C	uncountable nouns	a thing which (relative clauses)
past simple (I did) 11-12, 14, 20,	(salt/water/music etc.) 67-68	101
23D	under 109D, 110	while 98, 105
past continuous (I was doing)	until 98B, 104A-B	who
13-14, 23A, 51C	up 110	Who ? 45
present perfect (I have done)	get up / pick up etc. (phrasal	a person who (relative clauses)
15-20, 23C	verbs) 114-115, Appendix 6-7	101
be/have/do in present and past	us 59,62	whose (Whose is this?) 61D
tenses 23	used (I used to) 36	will 27-28
than 88-89	usually	will and shall 27D, 28C
that 74	usually + present simple 5C	won't 27A
He said that (reported speech)	word order 94	there will be 38C
50C	verbs	with/without 111D
that and this 74	present tenses 1-9, 23, 25	with/without + -ing 112B
a thing that (relative clauses)	past tenses 10-14, 20, 23	won't (= will not) 27A
101	present perfect 15-20, 23	word order
the 69–73	passive 21-22, Appendix 1	questions 44-46
the and a/an 69	regular and irregular verbs 24,	present continuous questions 41
the same 70B	Appendix 2–3	present simple questions 7B
the sun / the sky etc. 70C	future 25-28	past simple questions 12D
the cinema / the theatre / the bank	modal verbs (will/can/should etc.)	passive 21-22
etc. 71B	27–34, 51A	Do you know where ?
flowers / the flowers 72	negatives 43	(embedded questions) 49
the in names of places 73	questions 44-47	verb + object 93A
the biggest / the most expensive etc.	reported speech 50	place and time 93B
90	verbs + -ing 51-52	always/usually/often etc. 94
their 60, 62	verbs + to (infinitive) 51–53	after give/lend/send etc. 96
theirs 61, 62	verbs + preposition (look at /	worse 87D
them 59, 62	speak to etc.) 113	worst 90B
themselves 63	phrasal verbs (get up / put on etc.)	would
there	114–115, Appendix 6–7	I'd like / would you like? 34
there is/are 37		would like/love etc. 52D
there was/were 38A	wait (for) 54C, 113A	He would buy a car if he had the
there has/have been 38B	want	money. 100
there will be 38C	want to 52A	write (to) 113A
there is and it is 37B	want somebody to 53A	H 09/0027
these 74	was/were 10	yet 95B
think (think about / think of)	was/were + -ing (past continuous)	yet + present perfect 16C
113A	13, 23A, 51C	you 59, 62
this 74	was/were done (passive) 21, 23B	your 60, 62
those 74	there was/were 38A	yours 61-62
through 110	if I was/were 100B	yourself/yourselves 63
till (= until) 104B	well 86D	

Essential Grammar in Use

With answers and CD-ROM Third Edition

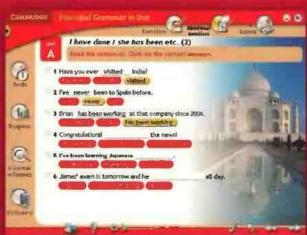
A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students

Using clear examples and easy-to-follow exercises, this new, full-colour edition of the best-selling *Essential Grammar in Use* makes learning easy, covering all the areas of grammar that an elementary-level student needs.

- Two-page units with clear explanations on the left page and practice exercises on the right.
- NEW! Study Guide helps you find the most useful language points for you, making this book ideal for self-study.
- NEW! Even more 'Additional Exercises' give you extra practice of difficult areas.

The new CD-ROM gives you hundreds of practice exercises, providing further practice for every unit.

- A variety of games and exercises make learning fun.
- Make your own tests: Choose from over 600 grammar questions to test the areas that YOU want to practise.
- Audio recordings provide extra listening and pronunciation practice.
- The built-in dictionary gives you instant definitions of any new vocabulary.
- Interactive speaking exercises
 provide extra practice at the end of each section.



CD-ROM for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 or XP

IELTS POP

Also available: Essential Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises Second Edition with answers

Cambridge Essential English Dictionary

English Grammar in Use Third Edition with answers and CD-ROM









